LEARN JAPANESE WITH MANGA

A SELF-STUDY LANGUAGE GUIDE

Volume Two



Marc Bernabé

FREE Online Audio Recordings

TUTTLE



To Access the Online Materials:

1. Check to be sure you have an internet connection.
2. Type the URL below into your web browser.

   www.tuttlepublishing.com/learn-japanese-with-manga-volume-2

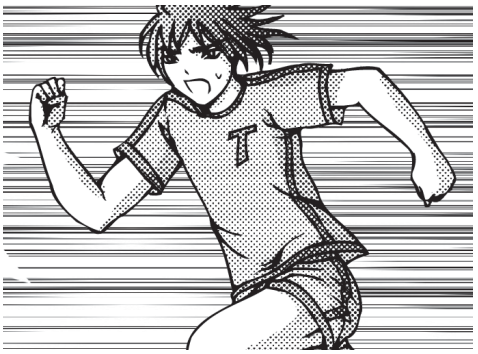
For support, you can email us at info@tuttlepublishing.com.

LEARN JAPANESE WITH MANGA

AN INTERMEDIATE SELF-STUDY LANGUAGE GUIDE

Volume Two

Marc Bernabé



TUTTLE Publishing

Tokyo | Rutland, Vermont | Singapore

Marc Bernabé, the author of the two-volume course *Learn Japanese with Manga*, is a manga and anime translator who teaches Japanese language and etiquette courses for non-Japanese. He is the co-founder of the manga- and anime-specialized translation agency Daruma Serveis Lingüístics SL and the Japan culture center Espai Daruma. He has also published several Japan-related books.

Ken Niimura is the illustrator of the manga story ***Kage***, co-written with Marc Bernabé. A Spanish-Japanese cartoonist and illustrator, he has a unique style informed by his international background. He has worked with clients such as Amazon, Google, McDonald's, Marvel Comics, Apple, L'Oreal, DC Entertainment, Shogakukan, Slate, The Apatow Company, Tezuka Pro, Image Comics, Kodansha and NHK Broadcasting Station among others. His book *I Kill Giants*, written by Joe Kelly, won the International Manga Award and was adapted into a film in 2019 starring Zoe Saldana. His series *Umami* earned him an Eisner Award to the Best Digital Comic. Ken Niimura's work has been translated into twelve languages. He lives and works between Japan and Europe. **www.niimuraweb.com**

Other illustrations in volume 2:
Studio Kōsen
Xian Nu Studio
Gabriel Luque

Translation: **Olinda Cordukes**

Table of Contents

Introduction 4
Glossary of abbreviations 7

Lesson 36: At a Hotel or Ryokan 8
Lesson 37: Particles (1) *wa* / *ga* / *mo* 18
Lesson 38: Particles (2) *ni* / *de* / *e* 29
Lesson 39: Transport in Japan 39
Lesson 40: Particles (1) *no* / *o* 49
The Kage Story 59
***Kage** Manga Episode 2* **60**
Review for Lessons 36–40 66

Lesson 41: Particles (4) *to* / *kara* / *made* 80
Lesson 42: Shopping 90
Lesson 43: Suppositions and Conjectures 97
Lesson 44: Transitive and Intransitive Verbs 106
Lesson 45: To Give and to Receive 116
***Kage** Manga Episode 3* **125**
Review for Lessons 41–45 131

Lesson 46: Compound Sentences (1) 144
Lesson 47: At a Restaurant 154
Lesson 48: Compound Sentences (2) 164
Lesson 49: Compound Sentences (3) 174
Lesson 50: Relative Clauses 185
***Kage** Manga Episode 4* **195**
Review for Lessons 46–50 201

Lesson 51: Unexpected Events and Accidents 214
Lesson 52: Formal Language 224
Lesson 53: Casual Speech 233
Lesson 54: Comparatives 243
Lesson 55: Sightseeing 253
***Kage** Manga Episode 5* **263**
Review for Lessons 51–55 269

Lesson 56: The Conditional Form 282
Lesson 57: *Koto* and *Mono* 292
Lesson 58: Grammar Scramble 302
Lesson 59: Dialects and Proverbs 312
Lesson 60: The Passive and Causative Forms 322
***Kage** Manga Episode 6* **332**
Review for Lessons 56–60 338

Introduction

It is possible that some readers, not acquainted with the manga and anime world, will wonder why Japanese manga comic strips have been chosen to illustrate the lessons in these two volumes of books *Learn Japanese with Manga*.

The first reason is that the lessons that make up this course were originally published in a well-known Japanese comic book and anime magazine in Spain. When the magazine's editor-in-chief at the time asked me to produce a monthly Japanese course, I thought this should somehow be in line with the general subject matter of the magazine. Drawing inspiration from the lessons in the now defunct American magazine *Mangajin*, where every month a linguistic subject was explained using manga as examples, I managed to find a formula, which involved developing a course in Japanese with a fixed structure. This structure consisted of a page of theory with vocabulary and grammar tables and a page of examples taken directly from Japanese manga, to illustrate and expand what had just been explained. To my surprise, the idea worked perfectly well, allowing the course to be published without a break for thirty issues of the magazine (almost three years). All this allowed for the publication of these books, a largely improved compilation of the contents in the magazine.

The second reason we use manga to teach Japanese in these two volumes is because manga is a big phenomenon, not only in Japan, but throughout the world. Manga, with its enormous subject variety, is an ideal window through which to observe Japanese society and its mentality.

The word *manga* literally means "spontaneous and meaningless drawings." By extension, the West has adopted this word with the meaning of "Japanese comic-book." However, the popularity of manga in Japan is incomparable to similar genres in Western countries. If a comparison must be made, the manga phenomenon could possibly meet its match in the movie industry. A successful manga author is able to charge a real fortune and, in fact, the best-known authors are among the wealthiest people in Japan.

Here are some facts you may not know about the Japanese manga industry:

a) The sales value of comics, or manga, in Japan was estimated at almost 676 billion Japanese yen in 2021, up by more than 10 percent compared to the previous year. The market size increased for the fourth year in a row (*Annual Report on the Publication Market 2022*).
b) Weekly manga magazines and manga serials have amazing sales figures in Japan. The manga series *Jujutsu Kaisen* (lit. "Sorcery Fight") sold approximately 30.9 million volumes in Japan from November 2020 to November 2021, making it the best-selling manga series in the country during that time period (statista.com).
c) In Japan there are manga of all genres, for all ages and social strata, including children, teenagers, older women, laborers, office workers, etc. There are even erotic and pornographic manga.

In Japan manga tend to be published initially in thick and cheap weekly magazines, in the form of serials of about twenty pages per episode. When a weekly series is successful, it's usually then compiled in a volume of about two-hundred pages called a 単行本 ***tankōbon***. This ecosystem is maintained in digital form. Actually, in 2021, the digital manga market size was already almost double than the traditional printed book market.

All in all, manga is a very important phenomenon in Japan. Through these comic books—with a degree of caution and an analytical spirit—we can study not just the Japanese language but Japanese culture and idiosyncrasies too!

Be sure to read through the next section carefully to get an idea of how this method works and how this two-volume course is structured. I hope *Learn Japanese with Manga* will help you to learn about Japanese language culture. It is a great honor for me to be your ***sensei***.

How to use *Learn Japanese with Manga*

This two-volume series is designed for the self-study of the spoken, colloquial Japanese used in manga, so that you will be able to understand a Japanese comic book or anime series in the original, with the help of a dictionary.

With the focus on the informal oral language of manga, you will study many aspects of Japanese not usually taught in conventional courses or textbooks. Difficulty increases as the lessons progress, so I recommend studying the lessons in order, starting with Volume 1, and moving on to the next lesson only when you are familiar with the contents of the previous lessons.

The Volume 2 course

Volume 1 consists of lessons 1–35, and this Volume 2 contains lessons 36–60. The content of the lessons in Volume 2 builds on what was taught in Volume 1, so I recommend completing the Volume 1 course of study before starting with this book. However, you can still study the lessons in this book even if you haven't studied Volume 1, as long as you have mastered the basics of elementary level Japanese grammar, including the hiragana and katakana alphabets.

As in Volume 1, each chapter in Volume 2 is divided into the following sections:

a) **theory:** a detailed explanation of the lesson's subject matter often with grammar or vocabulary tables which help summarize and reinforce what has been explained.
b) **manga examples:** from real Japanese manga, to illustrate and expand what has been explained in the theory pages. The system used to analyze each sentence is the following:

Chiaki: ただいま川井(かわい)が参(まい)りますので…
now Kawai SP come because . . .
Kawai will come right away . . .

First line:	exact transcription of the original Japanese text including ***furigana*** (hiragana transcriptions that give the Japanese reading of the kanji).
Second line:	literal translation, word for word. (The meaning of abbreviations such as **SP** and others can be found in the glossary on page 7.)
Third line:	translation of the text into natural-sounding English.

c) **exercises:** these are always related to the lesson's subject matter, and the answers can always be obtained or deduced from the content of the lesson they belong to. The answers to the exercises can be found online by following the link on page 7.

On translations

There are many example sentences throughout the book, as well as many manga examples, with their corresponding word-for-word translations into English. Sometimes, the sentences we offer may not sound very natural, since we have chosen more literal translations for an easier understanding of their formation. Trying to create a more natural English translation of every sentence would be a good exercise: it would help you consolidate concepts, make and in-depth analysis of the Japanese sentence, and think about it as a whole rather than a mere group of words and grammatical patterns.

Online materials

This book comes with comprehensive online materials which can be accessed using the link on page 7:

1 **Answers to the Exercises:** detailed answers to all the exercises included in the book.
2 **Kanji Compilation:** a compilation of 260 kanji characters, with stroke order and example word. The study of these characters is essential to acquire a sound basis for a subsequent, more in-depth study of the language.
3 **Glossary of Onomatopoeia:** a useful reference tool for readers of manga in their original version.
4 **Vocabulary Index:** an index of the Japanese vocabulary words that appear throughout the book, in alphabetical order.
5 **Audio Files:** Key words and sentences recorded by native Japanese speakers to help you achieve authentic pronunciation. Sections of the text that have online audio recordings are indicated by the headphones logo.
6 ***Kage*, Episode 1:** The manga serial ***Kage*** runs throughout this book, an exciting read that will reinforce and consolidate the language points you have been studying. The first of the six episodes was at the end of Volume 1, and is also accessible online for your convenience. I recommend reading Episode 1 before starting Episode 2 on page 60 of this book.

略称集 Glossary of abbreviations

CP: Companion Particle, (who with), for example と
DOP: Direct Object Particle (what), for example, を
DP: Direction Particle (where to), for example, へ
EP: Emphatic Particle. Most end-of-sentence particles state emphasis or add a certain nuance, for example, ね, よ, ぞ, etc.
IOP: Indirect Object Particle, for example, に
IP: Instrument Particle (what with), for example, で
NOM: Nominalizer, a word such as こと or の that is used to turn a group of words into a noun phrase (Lesson 40)
POP: Possessive Particle (whose), for example, の
PP: Place Particle (where), for example, で, に
Q?: Question particle. Shows that the sentence is a question, for example, か
SBP: Subordinate Sentence Particle. This particle is used as a link between a subordinate sentence and the main sentence, for example と
SP: Subject Particle (who or what), for example, が
SUF: Suffix for a person's name, for example, さん, くん, etc.
TOP: Topic Particle. Shows that the previous word is the topic, for example, は
TP: Time Particle (when), for example, に



To Access the Online Materials:

1. Check to be sure you have an internet connection.
2. Type the URL below into your web browser.

www.tuttlepublishing.com/learn-japanese-with-manga-volume-2

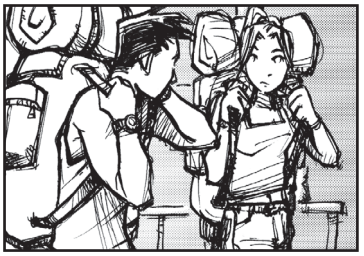
For support, you can email us at info@tuttlepublishing.com.

Lesson 36 • 第 36 課

At a Hotel or Ryokan

You probably remember we arrived in Japan in Lesson 33 of Volume 1: we concluded the lesson just as we left the airport. This lesson is devoted to accommodation and possible situations that can come up at the place where you are staying.

The booking



Hotels staff probably speak at least a little English. But at some places, like the traditional Japanese-style inns called ryokan, you may need to communicate in Japanese. Let's take the first step, and book a room. **Note:** The suffix ～付き ***tsuki*** after a noun means "included," for example, ご飯付き ***gohan tsuki*** (meal included). The opposite expression, that is, "not included" is ～なし. For example, 朝食なし ***chōshoku nashi*** (breakfast not included).

- 今夜(こんや)、部屋(へや)を予約(よやく)したいんですが I would like to book a room for tonight.
- 一泊(いっぱく)、いくらですか？ How much is it for a night?
- 朝食付(ちょうしょくつ)きですか？ Is breakfast included?
- もう少(すこ)し安(やす)い部屋(へや)はありますか？ Do you have a cheaper room?
- その部屋(へや)にします I'll take that room.
- お名前(なまえ)と国籍(こくせき)をお願(ねが)いします Can I have your name and nationality, please?

Check-in

You're checking in at your accommodation. These sentences will help you:

- ケントと言(い)いますが、予約(よやく)を入(い)れています My name's Kent, I have a booking.
- チェックインしたいんですが I would like to check in. (Lesson 31)
- 国際(こくさい)ユースホステルの会員証(かいいんしょう)で割引(わりびき)はありますか？ Do I get a discount with my international youth hostel card?
- 部屋(へや)を見(み)てもいいですか？ Can I see the room? (Lesson 32)
- 今日(きょう)から５泊(ごはく)の宿泊(しゅくはく)ですね You are staying for five nights from today, right?
- 宿泊(しゅくはく)カードに記入(きにゅう)してください Please fill in the registration card. (Lesson 35)

Booking and check-in					
bunk bed	二段ベッド	no rooms available	空室なし	reservation	予約
to cancel	キャンセルする	price	宿泊料	rooms available	空室あり
cash	現金	shared bathroom	共用トイレ	x nights	～泊
curfew	門限	shared room	共同部屋	with bathroom	トイレ付き
credit card	クレジットカード	signature	署名	with breakfast	朝食付き
double room	二人部屋	single room	一人部屋	with shower	シャワー付き
nationality	国籍	triple room	三人部屋	youth-hostel card	ユースホステルカード

Services

Next, let's interact with the hotel staff, either to ask for a service or how something works.

- 部屋番号は２０６です My room number is 206.
- ３１２号室の鍵をください Can I have the key for room number 312, please?
- 貴重品を預けたいんですが I'd like to put some valuable objects away (Lesson 31)
- インターネット（WiFi）のパスワードを教えてください Can you tell me the Internet password, please.
- ロッカーはありますか？ Do you have any lockers?
- 朝８時にモーニングコールをお願いします Could I have an 8am morning call?
- ドライヤーを貸してください Could I borrow a hairdryer, please?
- お風呂は何時から何時までですか？ What are the opening hours for the bath?

Requests and problems

Lost keys, broken air-conditioning or heating, noisy neighbors, accidents . . . All kinds of problems can arise in a hotel, and in this lesson we will deal with the most typical.

- すみません、ちょっと困っているんですが . . . Excuse me, I have a problem . . .
- 部屋の鍵をなくしてしまいました I've lost my room key. (Lesson 35)
- 鍵を部屋の中に忘れました I've left my key in the room.
- 部屋がうるさくて眠れません The room is so noisy I can't sleep. (Lessons 32, 35)

- お湯が出ません There is no hot water.
- エアコン・電気・テレビがつきません The air-con / light / TV isn't working.
- 部屋の掃除をしてください Could you clean the room, please?

🎧 Check out

It's time to leave. On checking out, we pay our bill and we say thank you.

- チェックアウトをしたいんですが I would like to check out . . . (Lesson 31)
- お支払いは現金ですか、カードですか？ Will you pay by cash or credit card?
- カードでお願いします Credit card. | 現金でお願いします Cash.
- いろいろお世話になりました Thank you very much for everything.

🎧 Hotel		🎧 Room			
bar	バー	air conditioning	エアコン | 冷房	local call	市内電話
coffee shop	コーヒーショップ	alarm clock	目覚まし時計	morning call	モーニングコール
elevator	エレベータ	bath	バス	plug / socket	コンセント
emergency exit	非常口	bed	ベッド	sheet	シーツ
lobby	ロビー	chair	いす	sink	流し
to pay	支払う	door	ドア	sofa	ソファ
reception	フロント	faucet	蛇口	table	テーブル | 机
restaurant	レストラン	fridge	冷蔵庫	television	テレビ
safe	セーフ | 金庫	hairdryer	ヘアドライヤー	toilet	トイレ
stairs	階段	heating	暖房	toilet bowl	便器
valuable objects	貴重品	international call	国際電話	towel	タオル
x floor	～階	key	鍵	wardrobe	たんす
room x	～号室	lamp	照明 | ランプ	window	窓

At a ryokan

If you are staying at a traditional Japanese ryokan there are certain customs to observe (see Cultural Note, page 12). Check-in takes place in your room, over a cup of tea.

- いらっしゃいませ。靴を脱いでください Welcome! Take your shoes off, please.
- この書類に記入してください Could you fill in this document, please?
- 夕食は七時から八時までです Dinner is from 7 to 8 pm.
- お風呂は１階にありますが、露天風呂もあります The bath is on the first floor, but we also have an open-air bath.
- どうぞ、浴衣を着て、くつろいでください You may put your yukata on and enjoy your stay.
- 食事後に仲居さんは布団を敷きます After dinner, the maid will lay out your futon.

Ryokan	
女将さん	landlady and owner of the ryokan
お風呂	Japanese-style deep bath
障子	translucent rice paper placed on doors and windows
スリッパ	slippers
畳	tatami mat
仲居さん	parlor maid or waitress
庭	garden
番頭さん	head clerk
ふすま	sliding door used as a partition between rooms
布団	futon
浴衣	light kimono used after a bath or to relax
洋式トイレ	Western style seated toilet
露天風呂	open-air bath, usually a spa
和式トイレ	Japanese-style squat toilet
和室	Japanese-style room

Cultural Note: The Ryokan

The 漢字 ***kanji*** that make up the word 旅館 ***ryokan*** give a clear hint about its meaning: travel (旅) house (館). The 旅館 is what we could call a "Japanese-style hotel," radically different in character to Western-style hotels, which are called ホテル in Japanese, an obviously foreign word, indicating that this latter style of accommodation was only introduced to Japan relatively recently.



Picture of a traditional ryokan in Futami, Mie Prefecture (Photo: M. Bernabe)

In the 旅館, we can enjoy the pleasure of staying at a typical Japanese inn, with all that this involves. We must comply with certain rules, such as taking off our shoes when entering the building, and we have to be willing to take part in traditional customs such as bathing in the お風呂 ***ofuro*** (communal bath) with other guests. However, the opportunity to experience the pleasure of sleeping in a typical 和室 ***washitsu*** (Japanese-style room), wrapped up in a 浴衣 ***yukata*** (light, dressing-gown style kimono), on a soft 布団 ***futon***, placed on a floor covered with elegant 畳 ***tatami*** mats is well worth it. The only inconvenience is that some 旅館 only have 和式トイレ ***washiki toire*** (Japanese-style squat toilets). This is, though, changing at a fast pace, and at most 旅館 you can now choose between Western-style or Japanese-style toilets.

Nowadays, many of the most traditional and authentic 旅館 are in rural tourist areas, especially in towns and villages with natural hot springs, such as 箱根 ***Hakone*** (神奈川 ***Kanagawa*** Prefecture), 熱海 ***Atami*** (静岡 ***Shizuoka*** Prefecture), 別府 ***Beppu*** (大分 ***Ōita*** Prefecture), or 有馬 ***Arima*** (兵庫 ***Hyōgo*** Prefecture). The Japanese usually combine a stay at a 旅館 with visits to local restaurants or with relaxing hot-spring baths (most of the 旅館 in these areas have their own hot-spring facilities), especially open-air baths, which are called 露天風呂 ***rotenburo***. Bathing outdoors, in natural hot water, is an unforgettable experience, especially when surrounded by snow!

Although staying in a 旅館 can be expensive, it is a highly recommended experience—a true immersion in the Japanese ocean of culture. Don't miss it!

漫画例 Manga Examples

As usual, the manga examples on these pages will illustrate the usage of the language of hotels and inns that we have studied in this chapter.

Manga Example 1: Before checking in

This is a variation of the example sentence on page 8 (ケントと言いますが、予約を入れています ***Kento to iimasu ga, yoyaku o irete imasu***), although it has exactly the same meaning. Tanaka introduces himself as a member of Fiction Constructions, and then gives his surname (in Japan the group one belongs to is more important than the individual). He uses the verb 取る ***toru*** (to take) after 予約 (booking), while we used the verb 入れ (to put) in our example. The overall meaning of the sentences is the same. Also notice the 取ってある used by Tanaka, which we saw in Lesson 35 (〜てある), to refer to an action that is already finished. Also remember the customer is a god in Japan, and receptionists address the customer using the honorific 〜様 (Lesson 15).



Tanaka: フィクション建設(けんせつ)の田中(たなか)で予約(よやく)とってあるんですが。

Fiction Constructions* POP *Tanaka booking take (finished action) (softener)

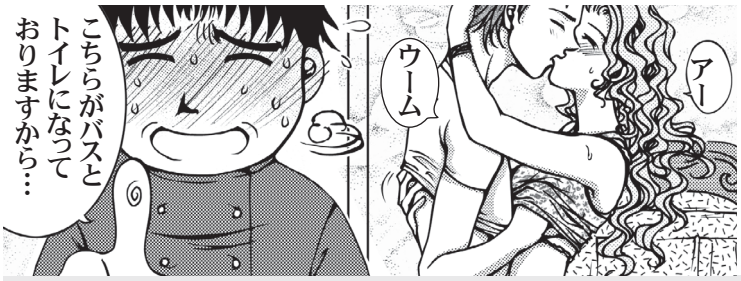
I'm Tanaka, from Fiction Constructions, and I have a booking.

Receptionist: はい、田中(たなか)さまですね。

***yes, Tanaka* SUF *be* EP**

Oh, yes, that's right: Mr. Tanaka.

Manga Example 2: "Seeing" the room



Bellboy: こちらがバスとトイレになっておりますから…

here SP bath CP sink be (formal) because . . .

And here are the bath and the toilet, so . . .

If we want to see the room before deciding on a hotel, you can use the sentence 部屋を見てもいいですか？ ***Heya o mitemo ii desu ka?*** Here the bellboy shows the room to some guests who are anxious to start "using" it and gets very embarrassed!

Note: The construction なっております is a humble form of the verb "to be." We will look at forms like these in Lesson 51.

Manga Example 3: The fearsome bill



This example shows how to check out and pay the bill. The receptionist uses the verb 含める to say that the price (代 ***dai***) for last night's (昨晩 ***sakuban***) meal (お食事 ***oshokuji***) has been included in the bill. He also uses the ***-te*** form (Lesson 35) to link the two clauses "including last night's meal" and "the total comes to 57,850 yen." The guest says he will pay (支払う) by credit card (カードで). By the way, don't worry! A regular hotel in Japan is in no way as expensive as the one in this example!

Receptionist: 昨晩(さくばん)のお食事代(しょくじだい)を含(ふく)めまして、５７８５０円(ごまんななせんはっぴゃくごじゅうえん)です。

last night POP meal price DOP include, 57,850 yen be

Including last night's meal, the total comes to 57,850 yen.

Guest: ああ、支払(しはら)いはカードで…

oh, payment SP card with . . .

Oh, I'll pay by credit card . . .

Manga Example 4: Asking for something at reception



Gabriel Luque

The guest calls reception (フロント) to ask for a can opener (缶切り ***kankiri***). The woman uses a casual style of speech indicating that as she is staying in a suite, she feels superior to the staff. The polite sentence would be 缶切りをお願いします ***kankiri o onegai shimasu***.

Typical things we can ask for might be a hairdryer (ドライヤー), soap (石けん ***sekken***), or a towel (タオル).

Guest: …カン切り(きり)お願(ねが)い… そ、２９０３(にきゅうゼロさん)のスイートよ

. . . can opener please . . . that's right, 2903 POP suite EP

Bring me a can opener, please . . . Yes, it's suite #2903.

Manga Example 5: Welcome to the ryokan

In this example the ryokan landlady introduces herself as ここの女将 ***okami*** (the landlady here). The kanji 女将 , literally "woman-leader," (i.e., "boss") is called an ***ateji*** or "arbitrary kanji": the reading of the kanji doesn't agree with the pronunciation it should have (じょしょう). The 女将さん greets us with いらっしゃいませ, a word used to welcome guests at a commercial establishment (Lesson 27). She speaks formally, using the verb でございます (formal equivalent of です), and the formal sentence structure "お + verb root + する" Notice, too, how she uses the invitation form ***-ō*** (Lesson 34).



Xian Nu Studio

Landlady: いらっしゃいませ。私(わたし) ここの女将(おかみ)でございます

welcome. I here SP landlady be (formal)

Welcome, I'm the landlady of this ryokan.

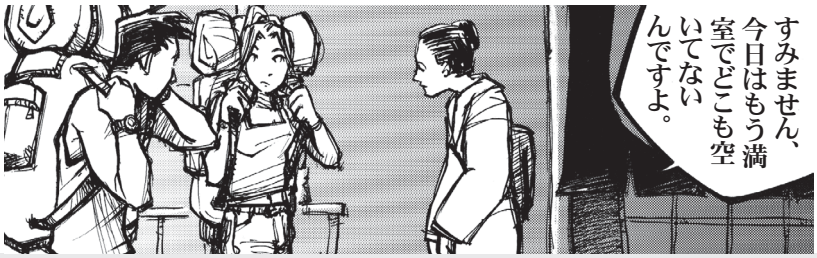
お荷物(にもつ) お持(も)ちしましょう

bags pick up (invitation)

Let me take your bags.

Manga Example 6: Fully booked

The guests arrive at the 旅館 ***ryokan*** late, and ask the 女将さん ***okami-san*** if any rooms are available. She says all rooms are taken, using the word 満室 ***manshitsu*** (満 full, 室 room), and then says *all* (どこも) are "not empty" (空いてない ***aitenai***). In Japanese, repeating the same idea in two different ways in one sentence is common.



J.M. Ken Niimura

Landlady: すみません、今日(きょう)はもう満室(まんしつ)でどこも空(あ)いてないんですよ。

I'm sorry, today SP already full all empty not be

I'm sorry, but today all the rooms are full and there are no openings.

Manga Example 7: In the communal bath

Communal baths are found in 旅館 ***ryokan***, in 温泉 ***onsen*** (hot springs) or in a 先頭 ***sentō*** (public bath) and have several big bathtubs where people can soak together. Be sure to soap and rinse in the shower before getting into the bath! In the text of this manga Shinji uses the permission form ～てもいい, which we studied in Lesson 32.



Xian Nu Studio

Kenji: うわ～っいろんなおふろがある～！

wow! several bathtubs SP are!

Wow, there are plenty of bathtubs!

Shinji: 好(す)きな所(ところ)に行(い)っていいよ

like place go (permission) EP

You can go to any one you like.

Exercises 練習

1 Write the following words and phrases in Japanese: “price,” “to cancel,” “rooms available,” and “breakfast included.”

Translate the words: 署名(しょめい)，バス，階段(かいだん)，クレジットカード，レストラン and ～泊(はく). **2**

3 Write in Japanese the sentence: “What is the price for a night?”

Translate: お支払(しはら)いはカードですか、 現金(げんきん)ですか？ **4**

5 Give the Japanese words for at least five objects you can find in a hotel room.

Go to the hotel reception and ask for a morning call at 7am. **6**

7 Go to the hotel reception and complain about there being too much noise and not being able to sleep.

What exactly is a 浴衣(ゆかた) and in which situations do you use it? **8**

9 Translate: いらっしゃいませ！ 京都(きょうと) 旅館(りょかん) へようこそ。靴(くつ)を脱(ぬ)いでください。(京都 Kyoto; ようこそ welcome)

Translate: “You can get in the bath you prefer.” (入(はい)る to get in) **10**

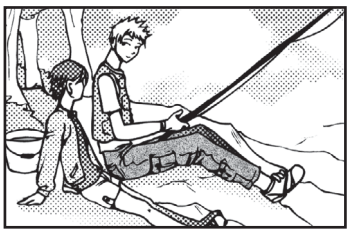
— Answers to all the exercises can be found online by following the link on page 7. —

Lesson 37 • 第 37 課

Particles (1) wa / ga / mo

In Lesson 16 we had a quick look at grammatical particles, and in this chapter we will study them in greater detail. Let's begin with は , が and も .

Topic particles



Let's clarify what we mean by the grammatical concept "topic." The dictionary definition of "topic" is: "a subject written or spoken about." Consider the following two sentences: "John is eating the bread," and "The bread, John is eating it." The topic in the first sentence is John, who is eating the bread. In the second sentence the topic is the bread that John is eating. In English, the topic is usually the grammatical subject of the sentence (as in the first sentence), and sentences like the second one are somewhat unnatural, or they belong to the spoken language. But in Japanese the topic doesn't always coincide with the grammatical subject.

The particle は

The particle は, (read ***wa*** and not ***ha*** when used as a grammatical particle), indicates the topic of a sentence. As the topic is usually the grammatical subject, it is often mistaken for the subject particle; but it isn't. So, commit this concept to memory: は = topic particle.

- この太郎(たろう)は学生(がくせい)です
  "Talking about this Taro," he is a student. (This Taro is a student.)
- この学生(がくせい)は太郎(たろう)です
  "Talking about this student," he is Taro. (This student is Taro.)

Notice these two sentences are similar but have different connotations. In the first, the "topic" we are talking about is 太郎 ***Tarō***, whereas in the second one it is 学生 ***gakusei***.

Basic usages of は

The simplest structure using は is "X は Y です"

- 花子(はなこ)は学生(がくせい)です "Talking about Hanako," she is a student. (Hanako is a student.)
- 大学(だいがく)はつまらないです "Talking about university," it's boring. (University's boring.)

The basic rule for は is that we use it to offer information the person we are speaking to already know, for example identifiable names, such as sun, star or fire, or generic names, such as house, truck or cat. Look at the categories and examples below:

- **Information that has just been given:** 池(いけ)に亀(かめ)がいます。亀(かめ)はのろいです
  There is a turtle in the pond. The turtle is slow.
- **Proper names:** 美奈子(みなこ)さんは来(こ)ないの？ Isn't Minako coming?
- **Identifiable names:** 空(そら)は曇(くも)っています The sky is cloudy.
- **Generic names:** イルカは頭(あたま)がいいです Dolphins (generally) are intelligent.

In the first example above, the first time the word 亀 (turtle) appears, we introduce it with the subject particle が, and the second time, being information the person we are speaking to already knows (since it has become the "topic" of the conversation), we introduce it with the topic particle は. We could say that in English が = "a" and は = "the."

In the second example the person we are speaking to knows Minako. In the third, there's only one sky, so there's no possible confusion. In the fourth, we are talking about dolphins in general. Therefore, all three sentences use は.

🎧 Contrast and emphasis with は:

The topic particle は can also be used to indicate contrast between two objects or ideas, both of which are marked by は:

- イワンは日本酒(にほんしゅ)は飲(の)めるけど、ウオッカは飲(の)めない
  Ivan can drink sake, but not vodka.
- 夏子(なつこ)さんは優(やさ)しいけど、麗子(れいこ)さんは冷(つめ)たいです
  Natsuko is kind, but Reiko is cold.

The particle は is also used as an emphatic marker. Let's see an example:

- 私(わたし)はグッチは嫌(きら)いだ I hate Gucci.

In this sentence, the meaning implicit in は goes beyond a simple assertion of the kind "I hate Gucci (and that's it)." With は, the speaker is implying that the brand Gucci <u>in particular</u> is what he doesn't like. This might make it clearer:

- 私(わたし)はグッチは嫌(きら)いだ（けどプラダは好(す)きだ） I hate Gucci (but I like Prada).

Let's look at another group of sentences to clarify this usage of は.

- 私(わたし)は昨日(きのう)、日本語(にほんご)を勉強(べんきょう)しなかった
  I didn't study Japanese yesterday. (No emphasis)
- 私は昨日は日本語を勉強しなかった
  I didn't study Japanese yesterday. (Emphasis on "yesterday")
- 私は昨日、日本語は勉強しなかった
  I didn't study Japanese yesterday. (Emphasis on "Japanese")
- 私は昨日、日本語を勉強はしなかった
  I didn't study Japanese yesterday. (Emphasis on "study")

The second sentence implies "yesterday" I didn't study (but I did on another day). The third implies I didn't study "Japanese" (I studied something else). The fourth implies I didn't "study" Japanese (but I did something else with the language, such as speak it, write it, etc.).

The particle が

We have said that は is not a subject particle, but a "topic" one. The particle that indicates the subject in a sentence is が. It is used to mark a subject being introduced for the first time, as in the sentence こちらが三穂です ***kochira ga Miho desu*** (This is Miho), or in the sentence we saw earlier 池に亀がいます ***ike ni kame ga imasu*** (There is a turtle in the pond), i.e., when the subject is new information.

Generally, verbs of existence, such as ある or いる (Lesson 18), always require が to indicate the subject, as is the case in the sentence 池に亀がいます, except when we want to emphasize something, or the information is already known, in which case we will use は.

- **Normal:** 机(つくえ)に手紙(てがみ)がありません There isn't a letter on the table.
- **Emphasis:** 机に手紙はありません There isn't a letter on the table (but something else).
- **Known information:** 手紙は机にありません The letter (we know which one) isn't on the table.

Further usages of が

Let's look briefly at other usages of が:

a) Interrogatives like何 (what?), 誰 (who?) or どこ (where) (Lesson 34) always go with が. This is logical, since we are always asking about new information.

- 誰(だれ)が来(き)たの？
  Who came?

何(なに)がおもしろい？
What is interesting?

b) The subject in subordinate clauses is always introduced with が.

- ジョンが来(き)た時(とき)、私(わたし)は買(か)い物(もの)に出(で)かけていた When John came, I'd gone shopping.

c) The particle が is always used with certain verbs and adjectives, shown in the table below. The exception is when we want to emphasize something, when we use は.

- 牛乳(ぎゅうにゅう)が好(す)きだ I like milk | 牛乳は好きだ I like milk *(but not cheese, for example)*.

🎧 **Usages of *ga* with certain verbs and adjectives**		
Verbs and adjectives of ability		
出来(でき)る	to be able to (Lesson 32)	英語(えいご)が出来(でき)る
分(わ)かる	to understand	英語(えいご)が分(わ)かる
上手(じょうず)な	skilled	英語(えいご)が上手(じょうず)だ
下手(へた)な	unskilled	英語(えいご)が下手(へた)だ
～られる	potential form (Lesson 32)	英語(えいご)が話(はな)せる
Verbs of sense		
見(み)える	to see (involuntary)	海(うみ)が見(み)える
聞(き)こえる	to hear (involuntary)	海(うみ)が聞(き)こえる
Verbs and adjectives of need		
要(い)る	to be necessary	お金(かね)が要(い)る
必要(ひつよう)な	necessary (2)	お金(かね)が必要(ひつよう)だ
Adjectives of desire		
欲(ほ)しい	to want (Lesson 31)	お金(かね)が欲(ほ)しい
～たい	to want (Lesson 31)	英語(えいご)が話(はな)したい *
Verbs and adjectives of emotion		
好(す)きな	like	海(うみ)が好(す)きだ
嫌(きら)いな	dislike	海(うみ)が嫌(きら)いだ
怖(こわ)い	frightening, scary	海(うみ)が怖(こわ)い
悲(かな)しい	sad	海(うみ)が悲(かな)しい
* Often with を (Lesson 31) 英語: English | 話す: to speak | 海: sea | お金: money		

But

The particle が has another usage, meaning "but," to link two clauses (see Lesson 49):

- 私は本を読んだが、彼氏は読まなかった I read the book, but my boyfriend didn't.
- 河野君は金持ちだが、不幸です Kawano is rich but unhappy.

This が is also used to connect clauses without meaning "but":

- 今日は外食するが、一緒に行きたいの？ I'm going out for lunch, will you join me?

Also が is used at the end of a spoken sentence as a softener, especially for requests:

- 先生の本を借りたいんですが I'd like to borrow your (the teacher's) book.

は vs. が

As we have seen, the particles は and が are closely related and often even appear together in the same sentence, as in the construction "X はYが Z."

- 象は鼻が長い The elephant's (X) trunk (Y) is long (Z).
- サムは背が低い Sam's (X) height (Y) is short (Z). (Sam is short.)

Likewise, many of the sentences formed with verbs or adjectives in the table on page 21 also have the structure "X は Y が Z."

- 彼はサッカーが下手だ He (X) at soccer (Y) is unskilled (Z). (He isn't good at soccer.)
- 田中さんは猫が怖い Tanaka (X) cats (Y) are scary (Z). (Tanaka is afraid of cats.)

The particle も

Let's leave は and が aside for a moment, and look at も, meaning "also," "too," "as well," or "neither," if it is a negative sentence. も can totally substitute particles は, が and を.

- 池に亀がいる。魚もいる There are turtles in the pond. There are fish too.
- 彼は先生ではない。私も先生ではない He's not a teacher. Neither am I.
- 靴を買ったが、シャツも買った I bought a pair of shoes and I also bought a shirt.

The particleも is also used to indicate "very much," "very many" or "no less than . . ." In negative situations, the meaning of this last kind of sentence is "not even."

- 私(わたし)は彼女(かのじょ)を何時間(なんじかん)も待(ま)っていました I waited for her for many hours.
- 彼(かれ)は本(ほん)を２万冊(にまんさつ)も持(も)っている He has no less than 20,000 books.
- 彼女(かのじょ)は本(ほん)を５冊(ごさつ)も持(も)っていない She doesn't even have 5 books.

The words 何も (nothing), 誰も (nobody), as well as the expression "not one," which is formed by "一 + counter + も"(Lesson 25), for example: 一枚も (not one page); 一人も (not one person), always go with negative sentences.

- 映画館(えいがかん)には誰(だれ)もいない There is nobody in the cinema.
- あの人(ひと)はテレビを一台(いちだい)も持(も)っていない That person has not even one TV set.

The words いつも (always / never) and どこも (everywhere / nowhere) can go with affirmative or negative sentences, as we will see in the manga examples.

漫画例 Manga Examples

You are probably able to understand by now the differences and similarities between particles は and が. Native-English speakers always have trouble learning to use them properly, because in our language the "topic" and the "subject" in a sentence are usually the same. Let's study some examples.

Manga Example 1: The most basic usage of *wa*

As we have already said, は is the particle that marks the topic of a sentence. Until now we have identified it in the manga examples as SP (Subject Particle), to simplify matters. However, now that we know exactly how it works, we will call it the TOP (Topic Particle). In this lesson we have studied the general guidelines for the usage of particles は and が, which will help us use these particles with relative confidence, knowing most times we won't be wrong.



J.M. Ken Niimura

Yamazaki: 恐怖(きょうふ)は人間(にんげん)を壊(こわ)す

fear* TOP *people* DOP *destroy

Fear destroys people.

Anyhow, don't despair if you can't fully understand some of their usages or if you do make a mistake every now and then. It's quite normal, and only time and practice will help. We will now show some specific examples that will give you a better understanding of the "real" usage of these particles.

This first example is a simple sentence where we find the most basic usage of は: its function as the topic particle. In this sentence, the topic Yamazaki is talking about is fear (恐怖), which is, moreover, an identifiable concept (there is only one concept called "fear" and we all know it). It is natural, then, that the particle は goes with 恐怖, because it indicates that this word is the "topic" and that it is an identifiable or generic concept as well.

Manga Example 2: Emphatic usage of *wa*

Another much more subtle usage of the topic particle is its function as an emphatic marker. は can replace the particles が and を or combine with the particles に and へ (Lesson 38) to emphasize the word it is identifying.



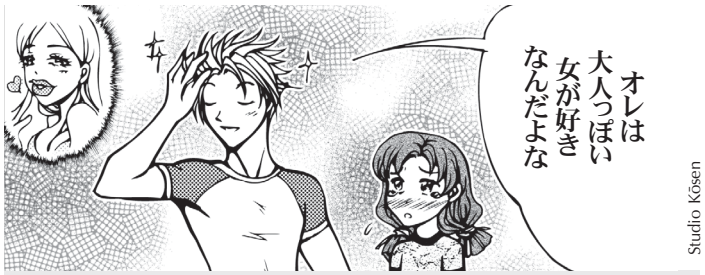
Gabriel Luque

If this example was a neutral sentence, with no implicit or special meaning, it would be 解放をしてやる ***kaihō o shite yaru*** (I will release you). However, by replacing the direct object particle を with は we emphasize the word 解放. Thus, the implicit meaning of our sentence is something like "I am going to release you, but I can't guarantee anything else," or, as we suggest in the translation, "I will release you (but) . . ."

Yaguro: 解放(かいほう)はしてやる
release* TOP *do (give)
I will release you (but) . . .

Manga Example 3: A typical *wa - ga* sentence

You probably realize by now that the distinction between は and が can fill pages and pages of books and doctoral theses on Japanese linguistics. One of the clearest usages is the combination of both particles in sentences that we call "***wa-ga*** sentences," where the topic is introduced first with は and then a characteristic or feeling related to this topic is developed using が. In this manga example sentence, the topic is "I" and the feeling described is liking something. Besides, we know the noun modified by the adjective 好きな ***suki-na*** (in this case the word 女 ***onna*** "woman") always requires が. It is, then, a very clear example. **Note:** One of the usages of the (rather colloquial) suffix っぽい, which is added to nouns and adjectives, is to convey the meaning "liable to" or "seems," for example, 怒りっぽい ***okorippoi*** (he is liable to get angry): しめっぽい (dampish) (Lesson 44).



Studio Kōsen

Hide: オレは大人(おとな)っぽい女(おんな)が好(す)きなんだよな
***I* TOP *adult (seem) woman* SP *like be* EP EP**
I like more mature girls.

Manga Example 4: A subordinate clause

We mentioned earlier that in a subordinate clause (a secondary clause within a sentence that is dependent on the main clause) the subject is indicated with the particle が. It is quite logical, then, that since the "topic" (the thing we are talking about) will always be in the main sentence, there can't be any possible confusion as to what the "subject" of the sentence is. In our example, the main sentence is あんたは怖くてしょうがないんだ ***anta wa kowakute shōganai n da*** (You are terribly afraid). The topic is obviously あんた. The subordinate clause is ボクが生き延びる ***boku ga ikinobiru*** (I survive).



J.M. Ken Niimura

The particle の functions here as a nominalizer, turning the whole sentence preceding it into a noun phrase (see Lessons 40 and 57). The particle が follows this nominalized sentence (ボクが生き延びるの) because the adjective 怖い always takes this particle, as we saw in the table on page 21.

Finally, we have an example of a very useful construction: 〜てしょうがない, meaning "it can't be helped that . . ."

Nakajima: あんたはボクが生き延びるのが怖くてしょうがないんだ
you TOP I SP survive (nom.) SP fear (cannot be helped)
It's only natural that you are terribly afraid that I might survive.

Manga Example 5: Usage of *ga* with the meaning of "but"

One case where が cannot be confused with は is when the former comes at the end of a clause to indicate "but" or "however." In this manga example we have two sentences, いい手だった ***ii te datta*** (clause A) and 甘かったな ***amakatta na*** (clause B), linked by が in a "clause A が clause B" structure, that is, "clause A, but clause B." Words with the same meaning ("but," "however") and usage are けど, けれど and けれども (Lesson 49).

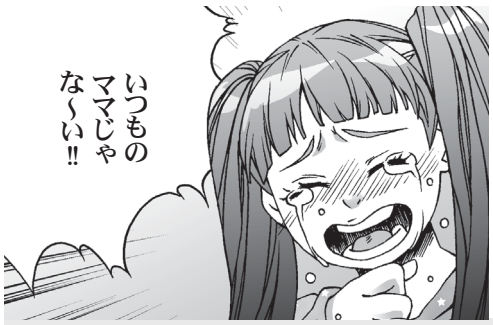
Notes: 手 usually means "hand," but here it has the connotation of "try." Regarding 甘い, we already saw in Manga Example 1 in Lesson 35 its main meaning is "sweet," but it can sometimes mean "naive" or "indulgent," like here.



Xian Nu Studio

Kuro: いい手だったが甘かったな
good hand be (but) indulgent EP
Nice try, but you have been naive.

Manga Example 6: The word "always"



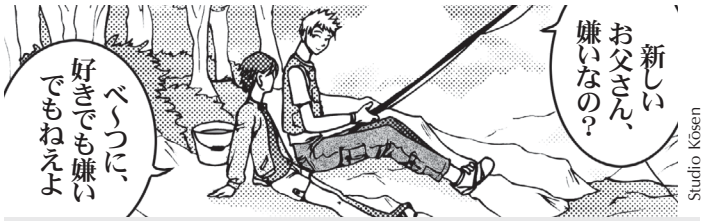
Xian Nu Studio

Ako: いつものママじゃな〜い！！
always POP mommy not be!!
This is not my usual mommy!!

In his lesson we studied the most common usages of も, and we also mentioned that sometimes も is combined with interrogative pronouns like 誰 ***dare*** (who?) or 何 ***nani*** (what?) to form words with a new meaning, such as 誰も (nobody) or 何も (nothing), which are always used in negative sentences. The case of いつも which, as you can guess, derives from いつ (when?), is somewhat special, because it can function in both affirmative and negative sentences, meaning "always": いつも陽気です ***itsumo yōki desu*** (He is always happy).

Manga Example 7: A new usage of *mo*

Here も is used to express lack of definition or, as in this example, to evade a question one doesn't want to answer: we are talking about the A も B も ない structure, which can be translated as "neither A nor B." This construction is used in a somewhat special way:



Studio Kōsen

James: 新しいお父さん、嫌いなの？
new father, dislike Q?
Don't you like your new father?

Hikari: べ〜つに、好きでも嫌いでもねえよ
particularly, like not dislike neither EP
I don't particularly like him or dislike him.

***-i* adjectives.** Replace the last い with く:
小さくも大きくもない
chiisaku mo ookiku mo nai
Neither big nor small.

***-na* adjectives.** Replace な with で:
安全でも危険でもない
anzen demo kiken demo nai
Neither safe nor dangerous.

Nouns. Add で:
先生でも学生でもありません
sensei demo gakusei demo arimasen
Neither teacher nor student.

In this example the structure is used with two ***-na*** adjectives: 好きでも嫌いでもない

Notes: James does without the particle が in his sentence (it should be 新しいお父さんが嫌い). This is quite common in spoken and colloquial language. The ねえ Hikari uses is a contraction of ない. In this context, べ〜つに (別に) means "specially," "particularly."

Exercises 練習

1 In the sentence "The bread, I'll eat right away," which word is the topic and which the subject?

2 Translate the previous sentence into Japanese.
(bread パン ; to eat 食(た)べる ; right away すぐ)

3 Translate the sentence "Turtles are slow."
(turtle 亀(かめ) ; slow のろい)

4 Translate: 私(わたし)はチーズは食(た)べられるが、トマトは食(た)べられない。(チーズ cheese; トマト tomato)

5 What meaning does 彼(かれ)は明日(あした)、車(くるま)を運転(うんてん)したがっている acquire if we place は after 運転(うんてん)?
(車(くるま) car; 運転(うんてん)する to drive)

6 Use は to emphasise different words in this sentence: 彼(かれ)は明日(あした)、車(くるま)を運転(うんてん)したがっている . How many sentences can you make?

7 Translate: "You need 10,000 yen."
(10,000 一万(いちまん) ; yen 円(えん))

8 Translate: "I have time but I don't have money."
(time 時間(じかん) ; money お金(かね))

9 Translate: "I don't want to go to Japan either."
(to go 行(い)く ; Japan 日本(にほん))

10 Translate: 私(わたし)はいつも派手(はで)でも地味(じみ)でもない服(ふく)を着(き)ている彼女(かのじょ)が好(す)きです。(派手(はで) flashy; 地味(じみ) discreet; 服(ふく) clothes; 着(き)る to wear)

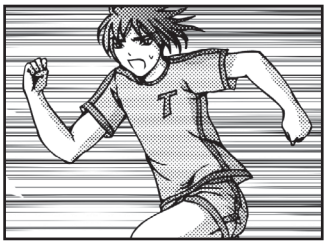
— Answers to all the exercises can be found online by following the link on page 7. —

Lesson 38 • 第 38 課

Particles (2) ni / de / e

Following on from the previous lesson, we will keep the tone of an in-depth study for our next batch of particles: に, で and へ.

The particle に



The particle に has several usages. Perhaps the clearest is to indicate the place where something is. This category covers existence and permanence.

Existence: The verbs いる and ある, both mean "to be" (Lesson 18), always the thing that exists to be marked with に.

- 池(いけ)に亀(かめ)がいる There is a turtle in the pond.
- 姫路(ひめじ)に白(しろ)い城(しろ)がある There is a white castle in Himeji.

Permanence: Verbs indicating a long stay in a place, such as いる and ある (i.e., when they indicate permanence instead of existence), 住む ***sumu*** (to live in), or 残る ***nokoru*** (to remain), among others, also take に.

- 直美(なおみ)ちゃんはそのぼろいアパートに住(す)んでいる Naomi lives in that rundown apartment.
- 僕(ぼく)は居酒屋(いざかや)に残(のこ)りたい I want to stay in the pub.

Be careful with this usage, because に indicates "existence" or "a relatively long stay" in a certain place, never something which "happens" or "is done" in that place. In this second case, we use the particle で, which we will study shortly.

Direction, contact and time

Direction: に is used to mean going "to/toward" a place. This usage is identical and interchangeable with that of the particle へ, which we will also see in this lesson.

- 来週(らいしゅう)、沖縄(おきなわ)に行(い)きます Next week, I'll go to Okinawa.
- 武文(たけふみ)くんは家(いえ)に帰(かえ)りたがっている It seems Takefumi wants to go home.

Direct contact: We need に to mark the "surface over which something happens or an action is performed." It is also used with verbs of direction, such as 乗る ***noru*** (to ride/get on a vehicle), 入る ***hairu*** (to enter), 上がる ***agaru*** (to go up), etc.

- いたずらっ子は壁に落書きをした The naughty boy drew graffiti on the wall.
- 社長は新幹線に乗りました The president got on the shinkansen bullet train.

Specific time: We use に to indicate a specific point in time, such as a date or time.

- 6時半に待ち合わせをしている I have an appointment at half past six.
- アメリカは　1　4　9　2　年に発見された America was discovered in 1492.

However, に is never used when the act cannot be determined with a specific date or time. The words 今日 ***kyō*** (today), 昨日 ***kino*** (yesterday), 明日 ***ashita*** (tomorrow), 来年 ***rainen*** (next year), and 最近 ***saikin*** (lately) go either on their own or with は (Lesson 37). The days of the week are an exception to this rule and can be used with に.

Indirect object, change, and grammatical constructions

Indirect object: に is used to mean "whom."

- 依津江ちゃんは友達にアドバイスした Itsue gave his friend some advice.
- 先生は生徒たちに数学を教えます The teacher teaches mathematics to his pupils.
- 国王は科学者にノーベル賞を与えた The king gave the scientist the Nobel Prize.

Change: The verbs of change, such as なる (to become), 変わる (to change), or 変化する (to vary), require the word being referred to to be marked by に . In Lesson 28 we saw how なる functions, so we recommend that you review that lesson before going on.

- 将来、サッカー選手になりたい In the future, I want to be a soccer player.
- 信号が赤に変わった The traffic light turned red.

Grammatical constructions: に is used in many other grammatical constructions:

⇒ Constructions of the "to go to" or "to come to" sort (Lesson 28). 買いに行く ***kai ni iku*** (to go to buy).

⇒ Conversion of ***-na*** adjectives into adverbs (Lesson 22). 上手に書く ***jōzu ni kaku*** (to write skillfully).

⇒ Constructions with あげる (to give), もらう (to receive), and くれる (to receive) (Lessons 28 and 49). 本は父にもらった ***hon wa chichi ni moratta*** (I received the book from my father).

⇒ Passive and causative sentences (Lesson 60).

友達(ともだち)に料理(りょうり)をさせた
I made my friend cook.

The particle で

The particle で can sometimes be confused with に. We will first examine this more "problematic" usage, and then we will go over its other usages.

Japanese has a distinction between the "place where one exists or remains" and the "place where one performs an action." The first (existence/permanence) requires に, as seen on the previous pages. The second requires で.

Usages of *ni*	
Existence	母は京都にいる My mother is in Kyoto
Permanence	母は京都に住んでいる My mother lives in Kyoto
Direction	母は京都に行く My mother goes to Kyoto
Direct contact	母はキャンバスに絵を描く My mother paints on canvas
Specific time	母は 6 時に来る My mother will come at 6 o'clock
Indirect object	母は父に絵をあげる My mother gives my father a drawing
Change	母は変になった My mother has become strange
Grammatical construction	母は私に絵を描かせた My mother made me paint

母 ***haha*** (my) mother; 京都 ***Kyōto*** Kyoto; 住む ***sumu*** to live; 行く ***iku*** to go; 絵 ***e*** drawing; 描く ***egaku*** to draw; 来る ***kuru***: to come; 変な ***hen-na***: strange

- 彼(かれ)は日本(にほん)でテレビ出演(しゅつえん)している He is on TV in Japan.
- 千鶴(ちづる)さんはいつも家(いえ)で勉強(べんきょう)しなければならない Chizuru must always study at home.
- 私(わたし)は横浜(よこはま)のオフィスで働(はたら)いていました I worked at an office in Yokohama.

The verb ある doesn't always indicate "existence." It can also indicate the place where something happens, such as a public event, for example, in which case, the particle で is used.

- 明日(あした)、バルセロナで弁論大会(べんろんたいかい)がある There's a speech contest in LA tomorrow.

Time and manner

Time: The particle で is used after an act which indicates "end of the action."

- 宿題(しゅくだい)は今週(こんしゅう)で終(お)わりたい I want to finish my homework this week.
- あの人(ひと)は 6 月(ろくがつ)で刑務所(けいむしょ)を出(で)られる That person can leave prison in June. (に can also be used here. The differences are mainly connotative.)
- 契約(けいやく)は 3 月(さんがつ)3 日(みっか)で / に終(お)わる The contract expires on March 3.

In the final example on the previous page, if we use に, we are simply indicating the exact expiry date of the contract. With で, however, the sentence has the nuance "the contract is valid until March 3, and then it expires."

Required time: This usage is closely related to the previous one in that it indicates the time spent doing something. However, で cannot be replaced with に here.

- 彼は一年半で本を書いた He wrote a book in a year and a half.
- ６時間で仕事を終わらなければならない I must finish this job in 6 hours.

Manner / instrument / material: The particle で is also used to indicate "how," "with what," and "from/of what":

- 僕は船で韓国に行きたい I want to go to Korea by boat.
- 泥棒は人をナイフで襲った The thief attacked someone with a knife.
- 日本の家は木で作ってあります Houses in Japan are made of wood.

Cause/reason: で also marks the word indicating cause or reason, although it's rather weak—we are not placing much emphasis on the cause or reason.

- 理絵ちゃんは病気で仕事を休んだ Rie didn't go to work because she was sick.
- 竜くんは趣味でホームページを作る Ryu makes websites as a hobby.

Quantity: The last usage of で is with "how much / many."

- あのプラモデルは３０００円で買える You can buy that toy for 3,000 yen.
- 車は１０人で持ち上げることができた We managed to lift the car between the ten of us.

The particle へ

The particle へ (pronounced ***e*** and not ***he*** when it functions as a grammatical particle) is one of the easiest to learn, because it only has one function, to indicate "where to."

- 日本へ行きたがっている人が大勢います There are many people who want to go to Japan.
- 空港へ妹を迎えに行った I went to the airport to welcome (to meet) my sister.

Note: へ and に (when they mean "direction") can be used interchangeably.

- 彼はドイツへ / に勉強しに行く He is going to Germany to study.

🎧 Usage of two particles at once

A peculiarity of particles is that two of them can sometimes be combined and appear together. For example, the topic particle は can be combined with に, で and へ to indicate "topic / emphasis + something" (Lesson 37).

- 池には亀がいる Talking about the pond, there is a turtle in it.
- 中国へは行きたいが、ちょっと怖い I do want to go to China, but it scares me a little.

Note: は can never be combined with が and を because it directly replaces them. Other possible particle combinations are での (広島での仕事はおもしろくない ***Hiroshima de no shigoto wa omoshirokunai*** The job in Hiroshima is not interesting), への (日本への飛行機は少ない ***Nihon e no hikōki wa sukunai*** There are few planes flying to Japan), にも (家にも犬がいる ***ie ni mo inu ga iru*** There is a dog at home too), へも and でも.

Usages of *de*	
Place	学生は寮でケーキをつくる The student makes a cake in the dorm
Time	学生は一日でケーキをつくる The student makes a cake in one day
Required time	学生は３時間でケーキをつくる The student makes a cake in three hours
Manner / Instrument	学生はオーブンでケーキをつくる The student makes a cake in the oven
Material	学生はいちごでケーキをつくる The student makes a cake with strawberries
Cause	学生は義務でケーキをつくる The student makes a cake as an obligation
Quantity	学生は一人でケーキをつくる The student makes a cake alone

学生 ***gakusei*** student; 寮 ***ryō*** dorm; 一日 ***ichi nichi*** one day; オーブン oven; いちご strawberry; 義務 ***gimu*** obligation; 一人で ***hitori de*** alone

🎧 Usage of でも

The combination でも can have two completely different meanings. The first is a mere combination of both particles:

- 電車の中でも勉強できる You can study in the train too.

The second でも has nothing to do with particle combinations, and means "even":

- 子どもでもこの文章が分かる Even a child can understand this sentence.

Note: The words 誰でも (anybody), 何でも (anything), いつでも (any time), and どこでも (anywhere) also use the combination でも .

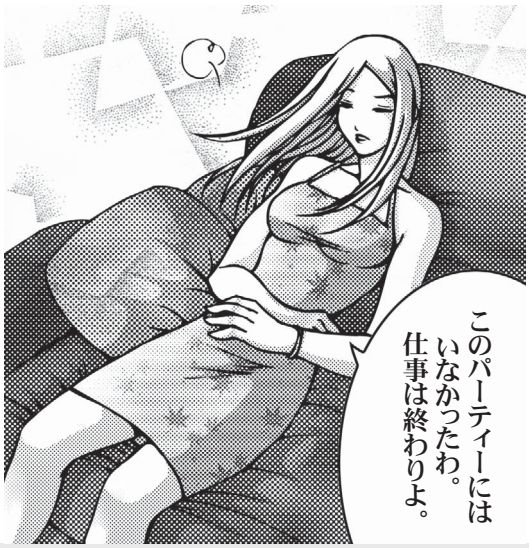
漫画例 Manga Examples

Let's look at some manga-example panels that will help us clarify the different usages of particles , に, で, and へ. There's nothing better than a few situations showing real Japanese usage to help clarify the concepts we have been studying.

Manga Example 1: *ni* as place particle (existence)

Here is an example of the usage of the particle に in its "existence" mode. It's the first usage of に we studied in this lesson. Christine says the person she was looking for "was not" or, in other words, "did not exist" (いなかった) at the party. いなかった is the simple past-negative form of the verb いる ("to be," with animate objects, Lesson 18). Indeed, both verbs of existence in Japanese, いる and ある, take the particle に.

Also notice the simultaneous usage of two particles: に to indicate place, and the topic particle は. When adding は after に, the word the particles are attached to is stressed, and becomes the "topic" (Lesson 37). Here, exaggerating the example, the sentence can be literally translated as: "Talking about this party, (he/she) wasn't there." It's common to use は after に or で when the word or phrase marked by them becomes the topic of the sentence.



Christine: このパーティーにはいなかったわ。仕事(しごと)は終(お)わりよ。

this party PP TOP not be EP. Work TOP finish EP

He wasn't at this party. Work is over.

Manga Example 2: *ni* as place particle (direct contact)

Here is a new example of the usage of the particle に, this time to express direct contact. The action of "writing" must obviously be done "on" some surface. In this example, we are not told the kind of surface, we are just told where it is with the word ここ ("here," see Lesson 34), which must be marked with the particle に. Another clearer example would be: 紙に書いてある ***kami ni kaite aru*** (It is written on the paper). **Note:** The construction ～てある (Lesson 35) indicates "a finished action that continues unchanged."



Gabriel Luque

Kenji: ここに書(か)いてある
here PP written is
It is written here.

Manga Example 3: *ni* as indirect object particle

Here we have a good example of the usage of に marking the indirect object, that is, "for whom" the action is performed. In this case, it is the ball (ボール) that goes over to Oshima. To identify the indirect object we must ask "whom." Thus: "Whom did the ball go to?" Answer: "Oshima." Therefore Oshima must be marked by the particle に. **Note:** In this example we also find は (Lesson 37) used as the topic particle (here, "the ball"), and この a word of the ***kosoado*** kind (*this*, Lesson 34).



Xian Nu Studio

Speaker: さァ このボールはＭ・Ｆ大島(ミッドフィールダーおおしま)くんにわたった！
oh this ball TOP midfield player Ōshima SUF DP gone over
Well (now), the ball has gone over to midfielder Oshima!

Manga Example 4: *de* as a cause particle

Here we have an example of で used to express "why" but in a rather weak manner. In other words, these are cause-and-effect sentences which could almost be considered a pure "link of two sentences," since their causal relationship is hardly stressed. In this case, the effect is "I'm busy" and its cause (marked with で) is "I'm studying for the exams."



Yumiko: あたしは受験勉強(じゅけんべんきょう)で忙(いそが)しいんだからねっ。

***I* TOP *exam study busy be because* EP**

Let me tell you I'm busy studying for the exams.

Manga Example 5: Two combined particles

The particle は is used to indicate the "topic" of the sentence. The で is used to indicate the "place where the action is performed." In this example, the "action" is the fact of "being monsters" (it isn't existence or permanence, therefore で is used).



Mayeen: 地球(ちきゅう)の美人(びじん)がここでは化(ば)け物(もの)…

Earth* POP *beauty* SP *here* PP TOP *monster . . .

Beautiful women of Earth are monsters here . . .

Manga Example 6: The particle *e*

The particle へ is only used with verbs of movement such as 行く ***iku*** (to go), 来る ***kuru*** (to come), 移動する ***idō suru*** (to move), and other similar verbs. In this sentence, the verb is 行く and the place the subject is going to is ブラジル, which is marked with へ. The particle に (see page 29) could also be used here. **Note:** This example shows the ***-te*** form connection between the two sentences "win" and "go to Brazil." (Lesson 35).

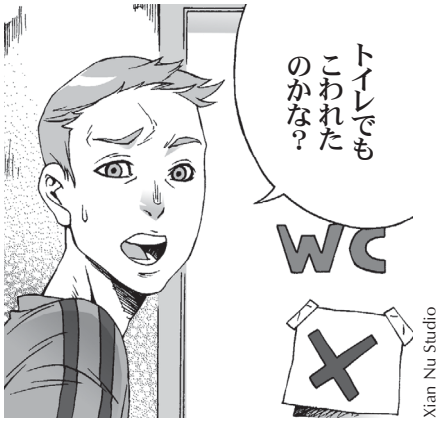


Studio Kōsen

Hiyama: 優勝(ゆうしょう)してブラジルへ行(い)くんだ！
win do Brazil DP go be!
I'll win and I'll go to Brazil!

Manga Example 7: A different usage of *de* + *mo*

でも has many usages. We have seen that でも can mean "even," or, if added to an adverb or an interrogative pronoun, can mean "any." In Lesson 49 we will see that でも can also mean "but." The でも in this example does not fall into any of these categories; it is used to indicate an undefined possibility. Tokuro doesn't specifically say "the toilet is out of order" (where the subject particle が would be used), but he ventures that the "the toilet or something" may be out of order. This is similar to the Japanese way of making an invitation: お茶でも飲みにいこうか ***Ocha demo nomini ikō ka?*** (Why don't we go have tea or something?) This でも might encompass tea, coffee, a soft drink, an ice-cream, et cetera.



Xian Nu Studio

Tokuro: トイレでもこわれたのかな？
toilet or something broken Q?
Is the toilet or something out of order?

Exercises 練習

1 Translate: “In the university there is a bookstore.” (university 大学(だいがく) ; bookstore 本屋(ほんや))

2 Translate: “I go into the shop.” (shop 店(みせ))

3 Is the sentence 来年(らいねん) に 経済(けいざい) を 勉強(べんきょう) するつもり だ correct? Why? (来 年 next year; 経 済 economics; 勉強する to study)

4 Translate: “Taro gives Hanako a flower.” (Taro 太郎(たろう) ; to give あげる ; flower 花(はな) ; Hanako 花子(はなこ))

5 What is the difference between 道(みち) に 絵(え) を 描(えが)く , and 道(みち) で 絵(え) を 描(えが)く , and why? (道 road; 絵 drawing; 描く to draw)

6 Translate: “Naoko cut a cake with a knife.” (Naoko 直子(なおこ) ; to cut 切(き)る ; cake ケーキ ; knife ナイフ)

7 Translate: “I want to go back to LA.” Which particle will you use, and why? (to go back 帰(かえ)る)

8 Look at sentence 1 again. Now imagine you want to emphasize that the bookstore is “in the university” (not elsewhere), making that part the sentence topic. How would you do it?

9 Translate: 誰(だれ) でもこの 文章(ぶんしょう) を読(よ)める。
(文章 sentence; 読む to read)

10 What different usages can でも have? List them and give an example for each of them.

— Answers to all the exercises can be found online by following the link on page 7. —

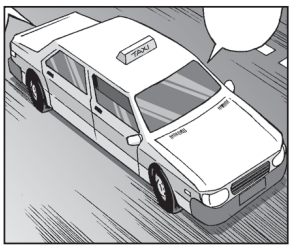
Lesson 39 • 第 39 課

Transport in Japan

Here we have another lesson that will help you develop your conversation skills, with lots of useful vocabulary, and the opportunity to practice and make the best use of the grammar points we have learned up to now. We will focus on the means of transport we will probably be using when we go to Japan: train, subway, taxi and bus.

🎧 Taxi

Let's start the lesson by having a look at a few sentences we can use when taking a taxi. It is worth mentioning that Japanese taxis are very expensive and, therefore, we probably won't be using them too often. A curiosity about Japanese taxis is that they all have automatic doors: that is, they open by themselves right in front of the passenger. Don't try to open one or you'll get a surprise!



- タクシー乗り場はどこですか？ Where is the taxi stop? (Lesson 34)
- 浅草ホテルまでお願いします To Asakusa Hotel, please. (Lesson 33)
- この住所に行ってください Go to this address, please. (Lessons 24 and 35)
- 次の角を左に曲がってください Turn left on the next corner.
- ここで止めてください Stop here, please. (Lesson 34)
- いくらですか？ How much is it? (Lesson 34)

🎧 Transport		🎧 Taxi and bus			
bicycle	自転車	basic fare	基本料金	stop button	降車ボタン
bus	バス	bus stop	バス乗り場	straight ahead	まっすぐ
car	自動車 | 車	(loose) change	両替	taxi meter	メーター
motorcycle	バイク	change	お釣り	taxi stop	タクシー乗り場
ship	船	corner	角	(to the) left	左（へ）
subway	地下鉄	crossing	交差点	(to the) right	右（へ）
taxi	タクシー	door	扉 | ドア	traffic light	信号
train	電車	driver	運転手	vacant	空車

Bus

Let's see some sentences that can be helpful when we are touring the country by bus.

- 金閣寺行きのバス乗り場はどこですか？ Where is the bus stop for buses heading to Kinkakuji?
- このバスは鎌倉大仏へ行きますか？ Does this bus go to the Great Buddha in Kamakura?
- 大阪駅までいくらですか？ How much is it to Osaka Station? (Lesson 34)
- 空港行きのバスは何時に出ますか？ What time does the bus to the airport leave?
- 次のバスは何時に出ますか？ At what time does the next bus leave? (Lesson 34)
- 宮島までどれくらい時間がかかりますか？ How long does it take to Miyajima?
- 日光東照宮に着いたら教えてください Please tell me when we arrive at the Toshogu in Nikko.
- 次で降ります I'll get off at the next (stop).

Note: There are two words for "change" in the vocabulary table on page 39. The first, 両替 ***ryōgae***, is the "loose change" we are given when exchanging a note for coins. The second one, お釣り ***otsuri***, is the "change" we are given when paying for something.

Subway and local trains

In Japan, trains rule, especially in large cities, both underground and overground. Tokyo's most famous railway line, the ***Yamanote sen*** (山手線), is a JR (Japan Railways) circular line with stops at most key centers in Tokyo, such as 東京 ***Tōkyō***, 池袋 ***Ikebukuro***, 新宿 ***Shinjuku***, 原宿 ***Harajuku***, 渋谷 ***Shibuya***, 恵比寿 ***Ebisu*** and 品川 ***Shinagawa***.

You can buy tickets for underground and overground trains at vending machines. A fare chart above the machines gives ticket prices, which vary depending on the distance.

- ここから一番近い地下鉄の駅はどこですか？ Where's the closest subway station?
- 切符はどこで買えますか？ Where do you buy tickets? (Lessons 32 and 34)
- 渋谷までいくらですか？ How much is it to Shibuya? (Lesson 34)
- 切符の自販機の使い方を教えてください Could you please show me how the ticket vending machine works?

More situations

We will now see more possible situations on our trip by local train, subway or tram.

- 地下鉄路線図を一枚ください Can I have a subway map, please?

- 時刻表をください Can I have a timetable, please?
- 一日乗車券はいくらですか？ How much is a one-day pass? (Lesson 34)
- 梅田行きのホームはどれですか？ Which is the platform for Umeda? (Lesson 34)
- この列車は秋田に止まりますか？ Does this train stop at Akita?
- 中央線に乗り換えたいんですが、何番線ですか？ I'd like to change to the Chuo line, what is the platform number? (Lessons 31, 34 and 37)

Beware of the ticket gates in stations! Almost all stations in large cities have automatic ticket gates at entrances and exits to the station. The machine automatically calculates if we have paid the right fare for our journey and, if we haven't . . . the gates slam shut! Not to worry though, if this happens, all we need to do is go to a machine called 精算機 ***seisanki*** (fare adjustment machine), put our ticket in, and pay the remainder. Only then will we be able to leave the station.

- 南 改札口はどこですか？ Where are the south exit gates? (Lesson 34)
- 精算機はどこですか？ Where is the fare adjustment machine? (Lesson 34)
- 精算機の使い方を教えてください Please show me how the fare adjustment machine works.
- 歌舞伎町の出口はどこですか？ Which is the Kabukicho exit?
- １１番出口です It's exit number 11.

Long-distance trains and the shinkansen

Finally, we will take a look at some situations you might encounter on long-distance trains and on the famous and extremely fast bullet train, the shinkansen.

- 切符売り場はどこですか？ Where is the ticket office? (Lesson 34)
- 広島までの片道切符を一枚ください A one way ticket to Hiroshima, please.
- 仙台行きの新幹線を予約したいんですが I'd like to reserve a seat on the shinkansen to Sendai.
- 次の京都行きの新幹線は何時発ですか？ What time does the next shinkansen to Kyoto leave?
- 札幌行きの特急列車は何番線から発車しますか？ From what platform does the express to Sapporo leave?
- ここに座ってもいいですか？ May I sit here? (Lesson 32)

Train vocabulary					
bullet train	新幹線	going to x	～行き	station	駅
change / transfer	乗り換え	last train	終電	subway map	路線図
coin locker	コインロッカー	nonsmoking car	禁煙車	super-express train	特急列車
conductor	車掌	one-day pass	一日乗車券	terminal	終点
entrance	入口	ordinary train	普通列車	ticket	切符
exit	出口	platform	ホーム	ticket gate	改札
express train	急行列車	platform x	～番線	ticket office	切符売り場
fare	運賃	reserved seat	指定席	ticket vending machine	切符自販機
first class	グリーン車	seat for senior citizens	シルバーシート	timetable	時刻表
first train	始発	smoking car	喫煙車	unreserved seat	自由席

Problems of various kinds

The sentences below will help you deal with some common problems.

- 切符をなくしてしまいました I have lost my ticket. (Lesson 35)
- どこから乗りましたか？ Where did you get on the train? | 姫路です In Himeji.
- 乗り越ししてしまいました I've completely passed my stop. (Lesson 35)
- 列車を間違えました I've got on the wrong train.
- 乗り遅れてしまいました I've completely missed my train. (Lesson 35)
- 予約を変更したいのですが I'd like to change my reservation. (Lessons 32 and 37)
- 払い戻ししたいのですが I'd like to get a refund (for my ticket).

Cultural Note: The Shinkansen

The word 新幹線 ***shinkansen*** literally means "*new* (新)" "*trunk* (幹)" "*line* (線)," although it is really the name given to the modern Japanese network of bullet trains. The first 新幹線 line—the famous 東海道線 ***Tōkaidō sen*** which links the capital, 東京 ***Tōkyō***, with the second most influential city in the country, 大阪 ***Ōsaka***—was opened on October 1, 1964, on the occasion of the Olympic Games that were held in Tokyo that same year.

But long before that, in 1939, there were already plans to build a network of high-speed trains. The then militarist Japanese empire intended to link 東京 with 下関 ***Shimonoseki***, in the south of the main island, 本州 ***Honshu***, with a railway network that would go all the way to Europe, via Korea and northern China, which were Japanese possessions at the time!

Obviously, this plan was never completed, but the future builders of the new line would inherit a few half-finished tunnels, which sped up the execution of the project.

Nowadays, there are several 新幹線 lines which cover the country, from the city of 函館 ***Hakodate*** in the south of the northern island of 北海道 ***Hokkaidō***, to 鹿児島 ***Kagoshima***, the southernmost city on the southern island of 九州 ***Kyūshū***. There are also plans to make bullet trains go as far as 札幌 ***Sapporo***, the capital of 北海道.

Since its opening in 1964, the 新幹線 has never had a serious accident—except for a derailment with no victims in 2004, due to a strong earthquake—and has been amazingly successful, probably due to the strict application of the "3 S" and the "3 C" slogans during its construction: *Securely*, *Speedily*, *Surely* and *Cheaply*, *Comfortably* and *Carefully*.

The aerodynamic 新幹線, which can reach 300 km/h (with an average speed of 200 km/h), transports a daily average of 700,000 people through thousands of kilometers of railroad tracks. If you are a tourist in Japan, it is highly recommended that you buy a Japan Rail Pass, a pass allowing you to get on all JR trains, including most of the 新幹線, for one, two, or three weeks. You can find more information online at japanrailpass.net.



The stylish and aerodynamic Nagano shinkansen (Photo: M. Bernabé)

漫画例 Manga Examples

The manga examples in this chapter will allow us to see some transport-related vocabulary and phrases in action. The star of the lesson is, undoubtedly, the train—the true king of Japanese transport!

Manga Example 1: Announcements at stations

The first word in this example is a station name: せんげん台 ***Sengendai***. All stations are called ～駅 ***eki***, for example 東京駅 ***Tōkyō eki***. Then we have the word 準急 ***junkyū*** (local express). Generally, there are three kinds of trains, from the slowest to the fastest: 普通 ***futsū*** or 各駅停車 ***kakuekiteisha*** (normal), 急行 ***kyūkō*** (express), and 特急 ***tokkyū*** (super-express), although the names may vary depending on the railway company. The 準急 ***junkyū*** in the example is probably equivalent to a 急行 express train.



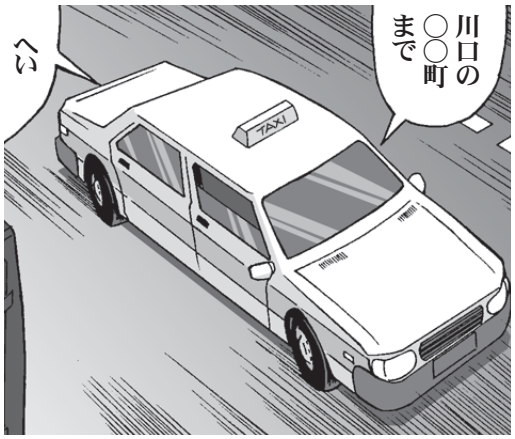
The announcement in the manga is of the type you will hear at a Japanese station. These announcements are always accompanied by music, and the tune varies depending on the railway company. The complete version could be: 間もなく、X番線に準急浅草行きがまいります。危ないですから白線の内側までお下がりください ***Mamonaku, X ban sen ni junkyū Asakusa yuki ga mairimasu. Abunai desu kara hakusen no uchigawa made osagari kudasai.*** (The local express to Asakusa will shortly arrive at platform X. Because it is dangerous, please stay inside the white line.) **Notes:** ～行き means bound for. まいる is the humble version of 来る (to come) (Lesson 52).

Sign: せんげん台駅（だいえき）
Sengendai station
Sengendai station.

Announcement: 準急浅草行きがまいります。
local express Asakusa direction SP come
The local express to Asakusa is entering the station.

Manga Example 2: In the taxi

Here is an example of how to tell a taxi driver where to go. It would be better to add お願いします ***onegai shimasu*** (please) at the end, of course. 川口 ***Kawaguchi*** is a city in the prefecture of 埼玉 ***Saitama*** and 町 ***cho*** is a suffix that indicates a district. Here, the author has used two circles instead of specifying the name of the district. The Japanese use these circles, which they call まるまる in the same way we would use X: ○○さん ***maru maru san*** Mr. X. ○○市 ***maru maru shi*** (X city). Usually each circle replaces one kanji. The driver answers へい, a colloquial way of saying はい.



Gabriel Luque

Rie: 川口(かわぐち)の○○町(まるまるちょう)まで
Ōta POP xx suburb to
To the suburb of xx in Ōta.

Manga Example 3: I'm sorry

Here is a sentence we can use to apologize for lateness. Notice how Emi only says あなた ("you," Lesson 7) and は (topic particle, Lesson 37). Although the sentence has been shortened by the speaker, it obviously means ("Who are) you?" Leaving out parts of a sentence and assuming it is understood in the context is frequent in spoken Japanese. すいません is a spoken distortion of the word すみません (I'm sorry). Now take a look at the ～がわからなくて… As you know, the verb わかる (to know) takes the particle が (Lesson 37). Here it is in the negative ***-te*** form, indicating the sentence is incomplete.



Studio Kōsen

Emi: あなたは？
you TOP?
You?
Miho: すいません、バス乗(の)り場(ば)がわからなくて…
I'm sorry, bus stop SP not know . . .
I'm sorry, I couldn't find the bus stop and . . .

Manga Example 4: Ticket gates at train stations

In this example we see how the wickets at train stations work: you put in your 切符 ***kippu*** (ticket) or your 定期券 ***teiki ken*** (monthly pass)—used by almost all Japanese サラリーマン (office workers) to go to work—and the ticket gates open. If the pass has expired, as in this case, or if the fare we've paid is not enough, the gates will slam shut. This is exactly what happens to the guy in this example. **Note:** The man says 入れちゃった, which is the colloquial form of 入れてしまった. The verb 入れる means "to put in" and the form ～てしまう, as seen in Lesson 35, has the meaning of "doing something one regrets" or "doing something by mistake."



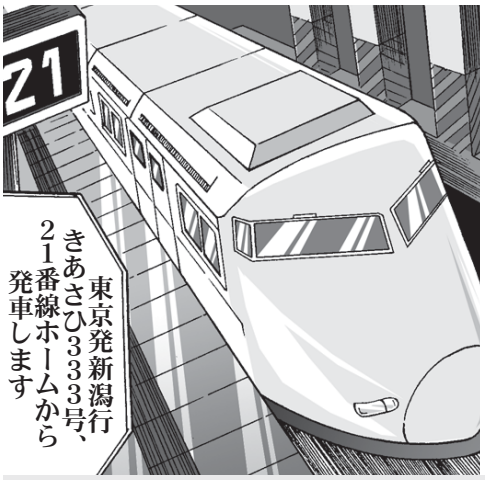
J.M. Ken Niimura

Man: ありゃ期限切れの定期入れちゃったよ。
(exclamation) period finished POP pass put in EP
Damn! I've put in my expired pass.

Manga Example 5: The shinkansen

The 新幹線 ***shinkansen*** bullet train is a popular means of long-distance transport in Japan. Fast, safe and comfortable, its network stretches to most major cities. In this example we have a lot of vocabulary: ～発 ***hatsu*** (departing from), ～行き ***yuki*** (bound for), ～番線ホーム ***X ban sen hōmu*** (platform X), 発車する ***hassha suru*** (to depart, of a vehicle).

All 新幹線 have names. In this case, it is the あさひ (morning sun), going from 東京 ***Tōkyō*** to 新潟 ***Niigata*** on the 上越 ***Jōetsu*** line. On the famous 東海道・山陽 ***Tōkaidō-Sanyō*** line (from 東京 to 博多 ***Hakata***), the trains are called, from the slowest to the fastest, こだま (Echo), ひかり (Light), and のぞみ (Wish).



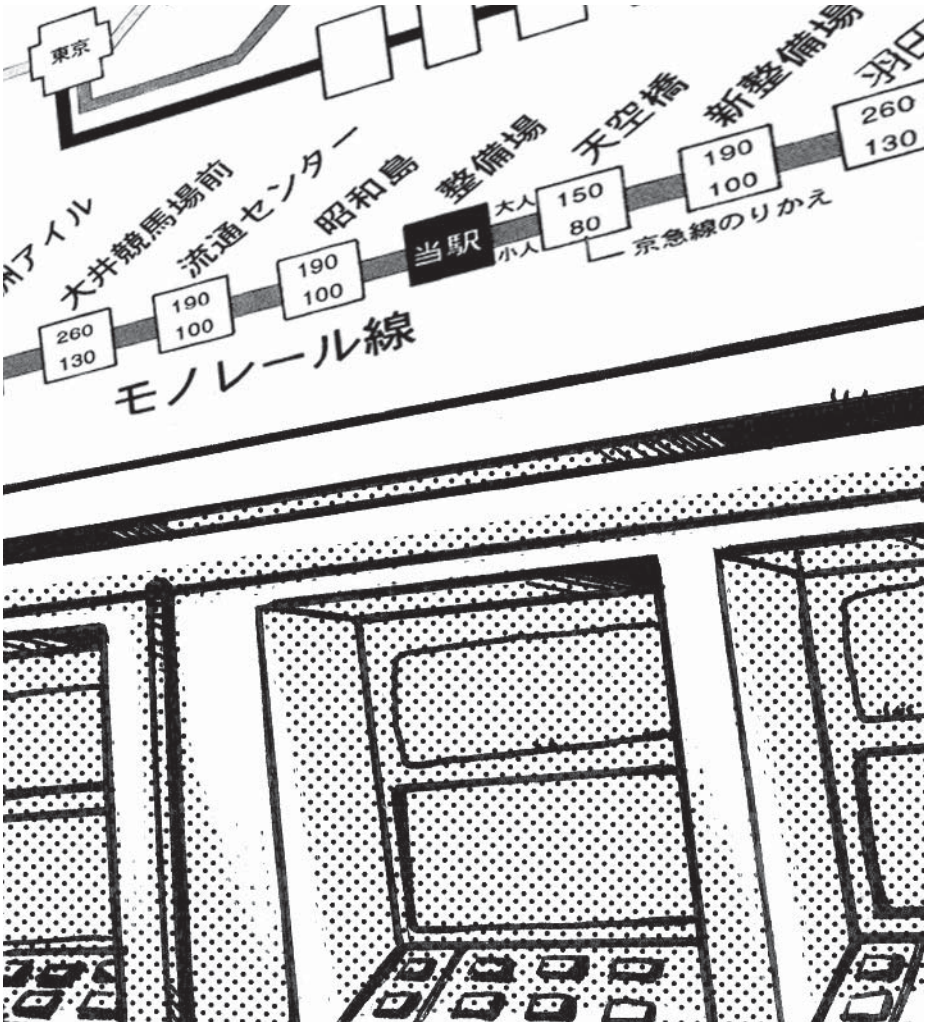
Gabriel Luque

Announcement: 東京発新潟行きあさひ３３３号、２１番線ホームから発車します
Tokyo departure Niigata going to Asahi 333 number, 21 number platform from depart
The Asahi 333 from Tokyo to Niigata will depart from platform 21.

Manga Example 6: Ticket prices

This panel shows station ticket vending machines and the fare chart. The chart represents the 東京 モノレール which goes from 羽田 ***Haneda*** airport to 浜松町 ***Hamamatsuchō*** station, where you can change to the JR 山手 ***Yamanote*** line that circles 東京.

To check the price, find the words 当駅(this station) on the chart. Then look for the station you are going to and check the price it shows. Imagine we are going to 大井競馬場前 ***Ooikeibajōmae***. In this case, from our station, 整備場 ***Seibijō***, the 大人 ***otona*** (adult) fare is 260 yen and the 小児 ***shōni*** (child) fare 130.



J.M. Ken Niimura

Exercises 練習

1 Translate the words “ship,” “bus stop,” “ticket,” “ordinary express train” and “crossing.”

Translate the words 空車 (くうしゃ), 自動車 (じどうしゃ), 指定席 (していせき), 禁煙席 (きんえんせき), 両替 (りょうがえ) and ホーム. **2**

3 Translate: “To the Kamakura Ryokan, please.” (ryokan 旅館 (りょかん); Kamakura 鎌倉 (かまくら))

Translate: このバスは広島 (ひろしま) 原爆 (げんばく) ドームへ行 (い) きますか？ (原爆 atomic bomb) **4**

5 Give the names of at least five means of transport in Japanese.

You are in the street and you want to ask someone where the closest JR station is. What do you say? **6**

7 You want to go to 新宿, but you are not sure that the platform you are on is the right one. Make sure by asking someone.

You have just lost your ticket and you can’t get out of the station. Try to explain the situation to the person in charge. **8**

9 You hear this on the PA system: 間 (ま) もなく、2番線 (にばんせん) に大阪 (おおさか) 行 (ゆ) きの電車 (でんしゃ) がまいります。 What does it mean? (間 (ま) もなく shortly)

According to Manga Example 6 on page 47, how much is a ticket to 流通 (りゅうつう) センター station? **10**

— Answers to all the exercises can be found online by following the link on page 7. —

Lesson 40 • 第 40 課

Particles (3) no / o

After the "rest" we took in the previous lesson, let's return to our grammar lessons, where we'll study two more particles in depth. Once you've completed the next two lessons, you will have covered most usages of the Japanese grammatical particles.

The particle の



We mentioned in Lesson 16 that the particle の marks the possessive. Now that our knowledge is greater than 24 lessons ago, this is a good time to look at various other usages of の.

First, let's define the term "noun modifier." A noun (Lesson 11) can be on its own or it can come with other words that describe it or complement it. These words are called "modifiers." In the sentence "Akira's red house" the words "red," and "Akira" modify the noun.

The particle の as a noun modifier

The particle の is the way to mark the noun modifier when the modifier is either another noun or a noun phrase. In short, we use の to connect two or more nouns.

We can distinguish up to five kinds of modifiers in Japanese: possessive, descriptive, positional, that of a creator, and appositional.

Possessive: This is the usage of の we already know. It obviously indicates possession.

- 私(わたし)の家(いえ)は広(ひろ)いです The house of I (my house) is roomy
- 筒井(つつい)さんの車(くるま)は小(ちい)さくて赤(あか)いです Mr. Tsutsui's car is small and red.

Descriptive: It simply describes the noun, giving more information about it.

- これは鉄(てつ)のパイプです This is a steel pipe.
- これは果物(くだもの)の店(みせ)です This is a fruit store.

Positional: It describes the place where the modified noun is located.

- 木(き)の下(した)で休(やす)みたい I want to rest under a tree.
- 明(あきら)はフランスの大学(だいがく)で勉強(べんきょう)している Akira is studying at a French university.

Of a creator: It indicates the creator of something.

- 夏目漱石(なつめそうせき)の小説(しょうせつ)を読(よ)んでください Read Soseki Natsume's novels, please.
- アイヌの文化(ぶんか)は興味深(きょうみぶか)いです The Ainu culture is interesting.

Appositional: An apposition, in English, is a construction which isn't explicitly connected to any word—it is usually separated by comas—but which refers or explains something relative to a noun. In Japanese, however, it is connected to the noun it modifies.

- はじめまして。部長(ぶちょう)の田辺(たなべ)です How do you do. I'm Tanabe, head of department.
- 友達(ともだち)の広美(ひろみ)ちゃんは結婚(けっこん)しました My friend Hiromi got married.

Indefinite pronoun and nominalizer

Let's look at two new usages of の .

Indefinite pronoun: の replaces a noun when both speakers know what is being talked about.

- どんな映画(えいが)が好(す)きですか？ What kind of films do you like?
- アクションのが好(す)きです I like action ones.

We clearly see here how the の in the second sentence replaces the word 映画.

- どんなおかしにする？ Which bun will you choose? (Lesson 34)
- 甘(あま)いのが食(た)べたい I want to eat a sweet one.

Nominalizer: To "nominalize" a sentence is to turn it into a noun phrase so that it works like a noun. For example, in the sentence "*riding a motorcycle* is difficult," the part in italics functions like a noun.

Usages of *no*	
Possession	これは先生の本です This is the teacher's book
Description	これは経済の本です This is a book on economics
Positional	机の上に本があります On the desk there is a book
Creator	ゲーテの本を読みたい I want to read a book by Goethe
Appositional	私は教師の岡本です I'm Okamoto, the teacher
Indefinite pronoun	これは私のです This is mine
Nominalizer	本を書くのは難しいです Writing a book is difficult
Question (colloquial)	本を書くのは難しいの？ Is it difficult to write a book?
Soft statement (feminine)	ゲーテの本を読みたいの I'd like to read a book by Goethe
Explanation	本を書いているのです I'm writing a book

教師 ***kyōshi*** teacher (humble form); 本 ***hon*** book; 経済 ***keizai*** economics; 机 ***tsukue*** desk; 上 ***ue*** on top of; 読む ***yomu*** to read; 書く ***kaku*** to write; 難しい ***muzukashii*** difficult

Notice how this part can be replaced with a noun, for example, "*chemistry* is difficult." This hint will help you identify a verb or a sentence which has been nominalized.

In Japanese, then, の is used to nominalize sentences. We can also use the word こと, which we will study in depth in Lesson 57.

- バイクを運転(うんてん)するのは難(むずか)しいです Riding a motorcycle is difficult.
- 水泳(すいえい)をしに行(い)くのは楽(たの)しいです Going swimming is fun.
- 私(わたし)は広子(ひろこ)がどんな音楽(おんがく)が好(す)きなのか知(し)らない I don't know what kind of music Hiroko likes.

🎧 At the end of a sentence

We saw in Lesson 17 how の can function as an end-of-sentence particle as either an informal question, a softened statement, or a soft command.

Question: In the informal register, の replaces か (Lesson 34) to indicate a question. It is worth mentioning that な must be placed between の and ***-na*** adjectives (as well as nouns).

- 明日(あした)、何時(なんじ)に京都(きょうと)へ行(い)くの？ What time are you going to Kyoto tomorrow?
- あの人(ひと)は本当(ほんとう)に先生(せんせい)なの？ Is that person really a teacher?

Statement / soft command: This is used basically by women and children.

- 私(わたし)はね、パリに何度(なんど)も行(い)ったの As for me, I've been to Paris many times.
- しんちゃん、それに触(ふ)れないの！ Shin, don't touch that!

🎧 The particle を

The particle を, which is always pronounced ***o*** and never ***wo***, is used to indicate the direct object, in other words "what" receives the verb's action. However, it has other usages as well.

Direct object:

- 太郎(たろう)はパンを食(た)べます Taro eats bread.

🎧 Usages of *o*	
Direct Object	私（わたし）はりんごを食べます I eat an apple
Place of passage	私は橋を渡る I cross a bridge
Place from which one parts	私は電車を降りる I get off the train
Time passed	冬をハワイで過ごしたい I want to spend winter in Hawaii
りんご apple; 食べる ***taberu*** to eat; 橋 ***hashi*** bridge; 渡る ***wataru*** to cross; 冬 ***fuyu*** winter; ハワイ Hawaii; 過ごす ***sugosu*** to spend; 電車 ***densha*** train; 降りる ***oriru*** to get off	

- 哲治(てつはる)くんはスペイン語(ご)を勉強(べんきょう)しています Tetsuharu is studying Spanish.

Note: There are certain constructions which contain a direct object that is not marked with を, as is the case with certain verbs that take が (Lesson 37).

- 私(わたし)は日本語(にほんご)が [not を] 分(わ)かりません I don't understand Japanese.

Other usages of を

Place of passage: を can be used to indicate the space where a movement is carried out. This usage of を requires that the verb be one of movement, such as 歩く ***aruku*** (to walk), 走る ***hashiru*** (to run), 飛ぶ ***tobu*** (to fly), 通る ***tooru*** (to pass), 渡る ***wataru*** (to cross), etc.

- 鳥(とり)は空(そら)を飛(と)びます Birds fly through the sky.
- 彼(かれ)はいつも街(まち)を歩(ある)きます He always walks around town.

Place where a movement starts: を also marks the origin of a movement "outward" (be careful though, the "movement" may be abstract). It is usually used with the verbs 出る ***deru*** (to go out), 降りる ***oriru*** (to get off a vehicle), 離れる ***hanareru*** (to part from), etc.

- 里奈(りな)さんは6時(ろくじ)に家(いえ)を出(で)た Rina left home at 6.
- 電車(でんしゃ)を降(お)りる時(とき)、注意(ちゅうい)してください When you get off the train, be careful.
- 社長(しゃちょう)は大学(だいがく)を卒業(そつぎょう)していないよ The director has not graduated from university.

Time period: Finally, を is occasionally used to indicate the passing of periods of time.

- 私(わたし)は夏(なつ)を沖縄(おきなわ)で過(す)ごした I spent all summer in Okinawa.
- 彼(かれ)は3ヶ月間(さんかげつかん)を無駄(むだ)にした He wasted three months.

A few adverbs

We hope you have mastered the different uses of the particles の and を. You have already seen in these few last lessons that particles can have many different uses and may seem tricky. However, they are indispensable to making grammatically sound sentences in Japanese, and it's important to get used to dealing with them. Don't worry if you get confused right now: with time and practice you'll get there!

The adverbs もう and まだ

The adverbs of time もう (which has nothing to do with the particle も, and is pronounced with a long ***ō***) and まだ are usually studied together. Their relationship is obvious, since もう can be translated as "already" and まだ as "still." もう indicates something is not in the same state as it was before.

- 山田さんはもう昼ご飯を食べた Mr. Yamada has already eaten his lunch.
- 利香はもう宿題をしました Rika has already finished her homework.
- リックはもう中国語を勉強していない Rick doesn't study Chinese any more.

まだ expresses the opposite idea of もう: it indicates something is still in the same state as it was before.

- カレーはまだ残っていますか？ Is there still some curry left?
- まだ何も食べていないよ I still haven't eaten anything.
- 私はまだ日本人のことを理解できない I still can't understand the Japanese.

The adverbs くらい and ごろ

The adverbs くらい and ごろ are usually both translated as "approximately" or "more or less." However, their usage is very different, so we must be careful not to confuse them.

くらい and ぐらい are used to indicate an approximate quantity, be it either of volume, money, time, or any other thing. When having this nuance of "approximate something," くらいand ぐらい have almost no difference of usage or meaning.

- そのバイクは２００万円くらいです That motorcycle costs about 2 million yen.
- この間、梨を２キロぐらい買ったよ The other day I bought more or less 2 kilos of pears.

Be careful, as くらい is sometimes used in contemptuous tone, meaning "at least."

- 一点ぐらい入れろよ、お前！At least put one point in, kid!

Whereas ごろ refers to an approximate period of time:

- １０時ごろに家を出ますよ We will leave home at about ten.
- 日本は６月ごろに梅雨があります In Japan the rainy season is sometime in June.

Last of all, look at these differences between ごろ and くらい:

- 私は５時間ぐらい働きました I worked for about five hours.
- 私は５時ごろに働きに行った I went to work at about five.

漫画例 Manga Examples

Now let's go on to analyze some of the usages we have studied in the previous pages. Generally speaking の and を are among the least difficult particles to master and the manga examples in this section should help you consolidate what you've learned so far.

Manga Example 1: more uses of *o* and *no*

Let's start the manga examples with a double example, since we have both an を and a の in the same panel. Notice, too, a で of place (Lesson 38), and the omnipresent topic particle は, which turns the whole sentence into the topic of the conversation (Lesson 37).

The part of the sentence ending in は functions just like a noun, in other words, it has been nominalized. And what part of speech is responsible for this? The の, which, as we have seen, can function as a nominalizer. In the example, the clause この星でぜいたくなたべものをたべている preceding the の, becomes a noun like any other, with the same characteristics.



Studio Kōsen

As for the を, it functions as a direct object particle (DOP) in the sub clause たべものをたべている. To identify the direct object in a sentence, ask "what" to the verb. If we ask 何を食べているか ***Nani o tabete iru ka***? (What is she eating?), the answer is 食べ物 ***Tabemono*** (Food). Thus, it is clear that the direct object is 食べ物 and that is must be marked with the particle を. If you always do it this way, you won't go wrong.

Gerne: この星(ほし)でぜいたくなたべものをたべているのは旅行者(りょこうしゃ)だけ...

this star PP luxurious food DOP eat (nom.) TOP traveler only . . .

On this planet, only travelers can eat sumptuous food . . .

Manga Example 2: Possessive and descriptive *no*



J.M. Ken Niimura

This manga example has two similar but slightly different usages of the particle の. The first の links the words かすみ (Kasumi, a girl's name) and 血***chi*** (blood). In this case, it is the possessive (see Lesson 40, page 49). The first noun, かすみ, possesses the second one, 血, so we have "Kasumi's blood." The second の is descriptive, linking two nouns, 血 (blood) and においの***nioi*** (smell), (see Lesson 40, page 49). The first noun, 血, describes the second one, 匂い, giving the meaning "smell of blood."

Note: For purely practical and simplifying reasons, we will keep on calling の a possessive particle (POP) every time it appears as a noun modifier.

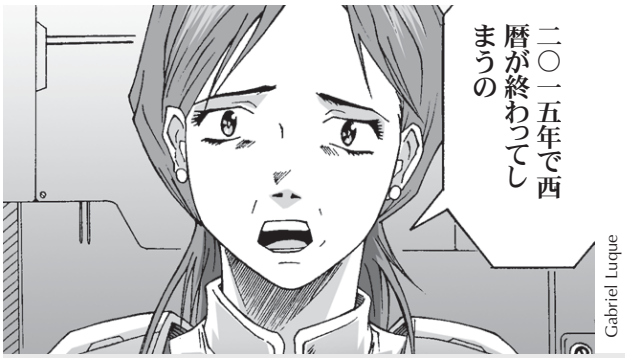
Takeshi: かすみの血(ち)のにおい！

Kasumi POP blood POP smell!

It's the smell of (I smell) Kasumi's blood!

Manga Example 3: *no* as an end-of-sentence particle

In Lesson 17 we saw how の was used at the end of a sentence. We have just studied that の acquires different meanings depending on the context when it appears at the end of a sentence. In Lesson 17 we gave a quick explanation and we even saw a manga example where の is used as an end-of-sentence particle to form questions in a colloquial register. However, の in this example, is used to soften a statement (in a feminine or childlike way). Generally, only women and children use の with this inflection.



Gabriel Luque

Nami: 二〇一五年(にせんじゅうごねん)で西暦(せいれき)が終(お)わってしまうの

2015 year TP Christian era SP finish EP

The Christian era will finish in the year 2015.

Manga Example 4: A new usage of *no*

Many manga example sentences in this book end with the construction "verb in simple form + のだ." Also possible are のです, んです or んだ (the ん in these last two is a spoken contraction of の). In fact, the の in Example 3 would also belong to this group. This construction is used to state something in a soft way: it's a sort of tag many Japanese use so they don't have to finish a sentence categorically. のだ also gives a sentence some "emotion," so that the speaker can convey the interest he has in the conversation topic. **Note:** This example also shows the usage of the direct object particle を and of the possessive の.



Xian Nu Studio

Toshio: テル坊くん、きみのおかみさんをつれてきたのだ！
Terubō SUF you POP woman SUF DOP bring come EP!
Terubo, I've brought your wife!

Manga Example 5: Two consecutive *o*



Xian Nu Studio

We see here three clauses linked by ***-te*** form verbs (Lesson 35). The sentence ends with the ～てください form (meaning "please"), also studied in Lesson 35.

Going back to what concerns us in this lesson, notice there are two direct objects (頭 and 腰), both marked with を.

Finally, you can see the particle に in the last sentence, which we studied in Lesson 38.

Attendant: 頭(あたま)を下(さ)げて腰(こし)をかがめて席(せき)におつきください
head DOP lower hip DOP bend seat PP occupy please
Lower your head, bend forward, and take your seats, please.

Manga Example 6: The usage of *mō*

This panel has a good example of the adverb もう (already). Usually, もう indicates "change" and まだ "lack of change." However, both もう and まだ are relatively simple; all you need to know is that the first one means "already" or "now," and the second one "still."

Notice also that the phrase もう + 一***ichi*** + counter means "one more X," for example: もう一度 ***mō ichido*** "one more time," もう一杯 ***mō ippai*** "one more drink," もう一日 ***mō ichinichi*** "one more day," etc.



Studio Kōsen

Maki: もう行(い)くね。お仕事(しごと)。
already go EP. work
I'm going now . . . To work.

Manga Example 7: The usage of *goro*

Let's finish the lesson with a funny and absurd example showing the adverb ごろ at work. As we have seen, ごろ indicates "about" or "more or less," but is only used when it refers to an approximate time. In most cases it's used with clock time, as in this example. 何時ごろ means "At about what time?" The answer might be 五時 ***go ji goro*** (about five) or 一時半ごろ ***ichi ji han goro*** (about half past one). **Notes:** In this example we find the construction ～後 ***go*** (in X time) which we saw in Lesson 34. The use of の to connect 十年後 to 何時 is the appositional usage described in Lesson 40, page 50.



Xian Nu Studio

Man: 十年後にきてくれっ
ten years in TP come
Come back in ten years' time.

Girl: 十年後(じゅうねんご)の何時(なんじ)ごろ？
ten years in POP what time approximately?
At about what time in ten years?

Exercises 練習

1 Translate: “The JAL plane is big.” (plane 飛行機 ; big 大きい)

2 Translate: “Wait in front of the library, please.” (to wait 待つ ; in front of 前で ; library 図書館)

3 In 暖かいセーターを着てください , replace セーター with a pronoun. (暖かい warm; セーター sweater; 着る to wear)

4 Translate: 本当に安土の町に住んでいるの？ (本当に really; 安土 Azuchi; 町 town; 住む to live)

5 Translate: “What is Mari reading?” “She is reading a book by Mishima.” (Mari 真理 ; to read 読む ; book 本 ; Mishima 三島)

6 Translate: “Yukio’s dog got off the bus.” (Yukio 由紀夫 ; dog 犬 ; to get off 降りる ; bus バス)

7 Translate: 修さんはまだ仕事が終わっていないの . (修 Osamu; 仕事 work; 終わる to finish)

8 Translate: “She walked in the park for about two hours.” (she 彼女 ; to walk 歩く ; park 公園 ; two hours 二時間)

9 Translate: どうしてコーヒーを飲まないんですか？ What do you use んです for? (飲む to drink)

10 Translate: “Bring another book, please.” (to bring 持ってくる ; book 本)

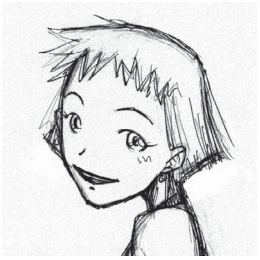
— Answers to all the exercises can be found online by following the link on page 7. —

影 The Kage Story

The manga Kage that runs through Volume 2 is an exciting story that will help you reinforce and consolidate all the language you learn in the lessons. Episode 1 of ***Kage*** was at the end of Volume 1 of this series. If you don't have Volume 1, you can find Episode 1 online at **www.tuttlepublishing.com/learn-japanese-with-manga-volume-2**. With art by J. M. Ken Niimura and story text by J. M. Ken Niimura and Marc Bernabé, ***Kage*** takes place in present-day Japan. Nuria, the main character, is a Spanish journalist and photographer, who has been sent to Tokyo by the newspaper where she works to write a feature on contemporary Japan. Once there, she meets Mina Tanimura, who works for a local newspaper, and who helps Nuria make the most of her stay in Japan, and carry out her work in the best possible conditions.

Characters

Nuria: Young Spanish photographer and journalist. She works for a newspaper in Madrid, and her boss sends her to Japan to write a feature story about the country.
Mina Tanimura: Young Japanese girl who works for a newspaper in Tokyo. She has been given the task of helping Nuria so that she can write her feature.
The Beggar: Mysterious Japanese vagrant who will be a key character in the story.
The Shadow: Nuria sees this shadow now and then during her stay in Japan. What could this shadow be, and why does it appear when it is least expected?

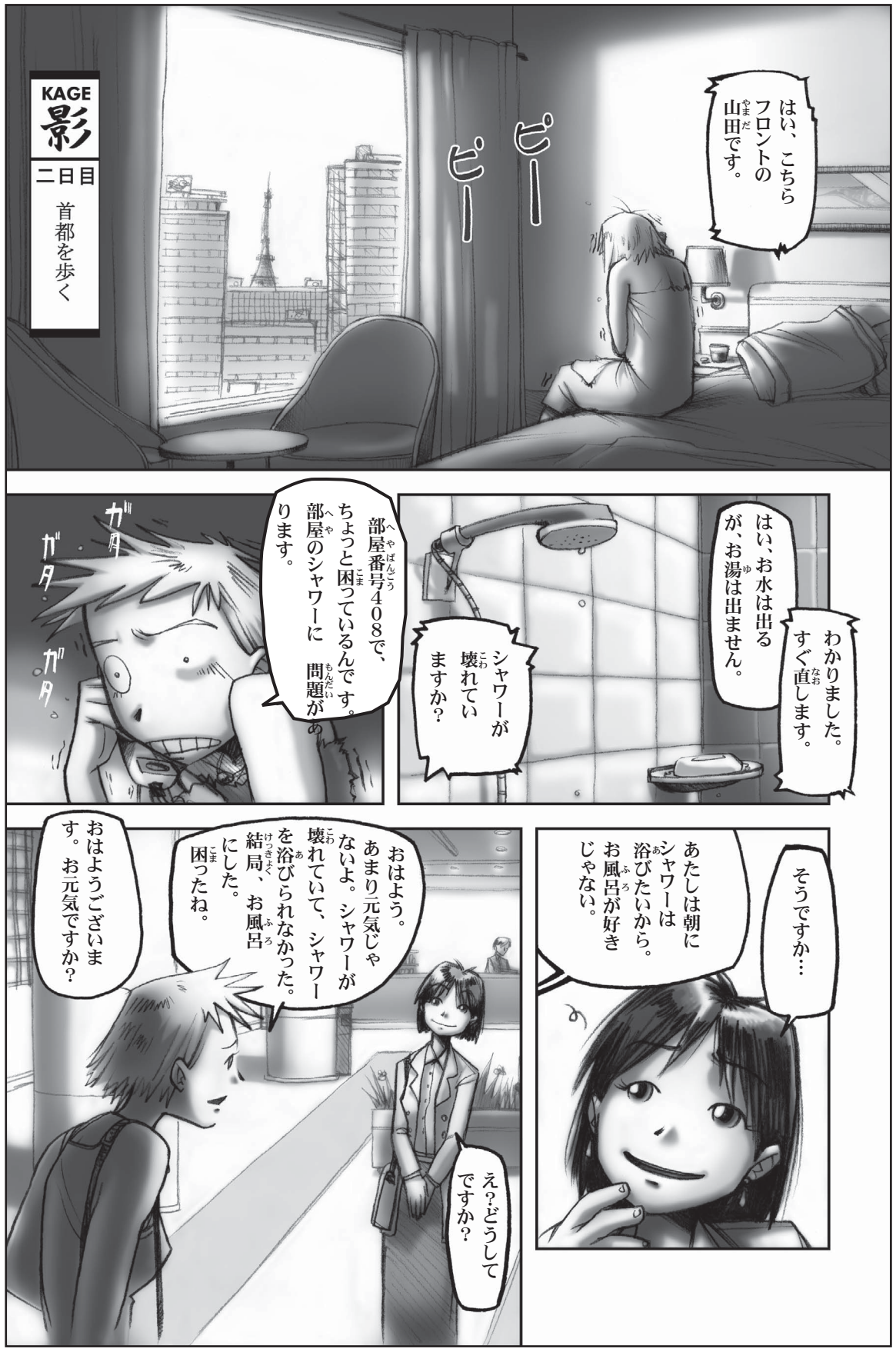

Nuria

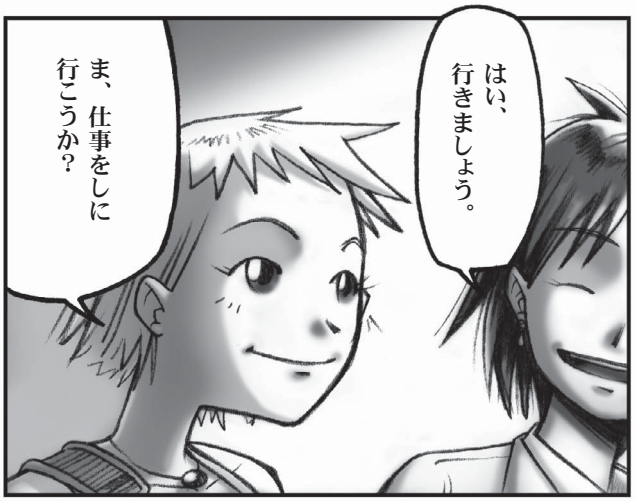

Mina

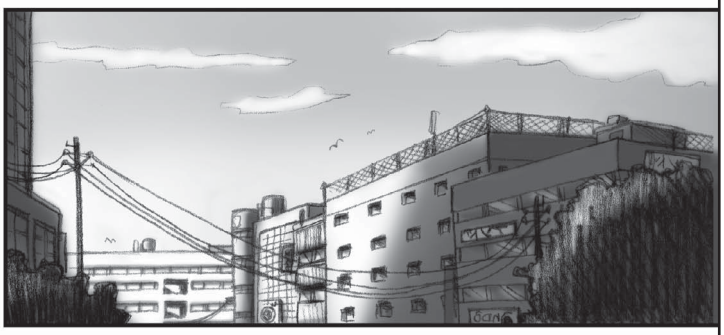

The Beggar


The Shadow

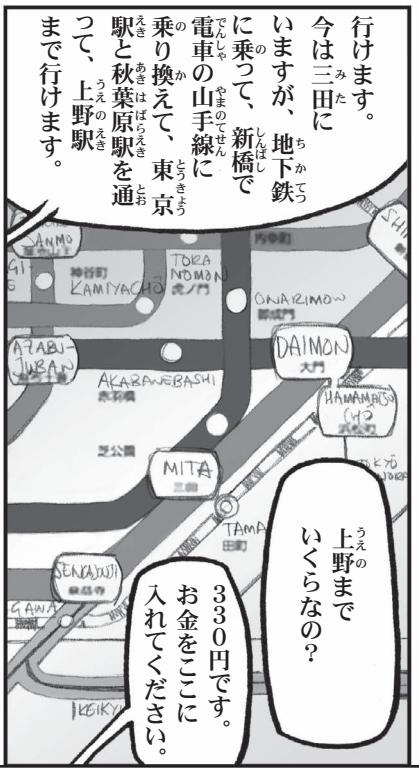
Watch out: When the sides of the panel are painted black, what is narrated in these panels takes place in a different time period to that of the story being told, either in the past or in the future.


KAGE
影
二日目
首都を歩く
ピー
ピー
はい、こちらフロントの山田です。
はい、お水は出るが、お湯は出ません。
わかりました。すぐ直します。
シャワーが壊れていますか？
ガタ
ガタ
ガタ
部屋番号408で、ちょっと困っているんです。部屋のシャワーに問題があります。
そうですか…
あたしは朝にシャワーは浴びたいから。お風呂が好きじゃない。
え？どうしてですか？
おはよう。あまり元気じゃないよ。シャワーが壊れていて、シャワーを浴びられなかった。結局、お風呂にした。困ったね。
おはようございます。お元気ですか？


はい、
行きましょう。
ま、仕事をしに
行こうか？



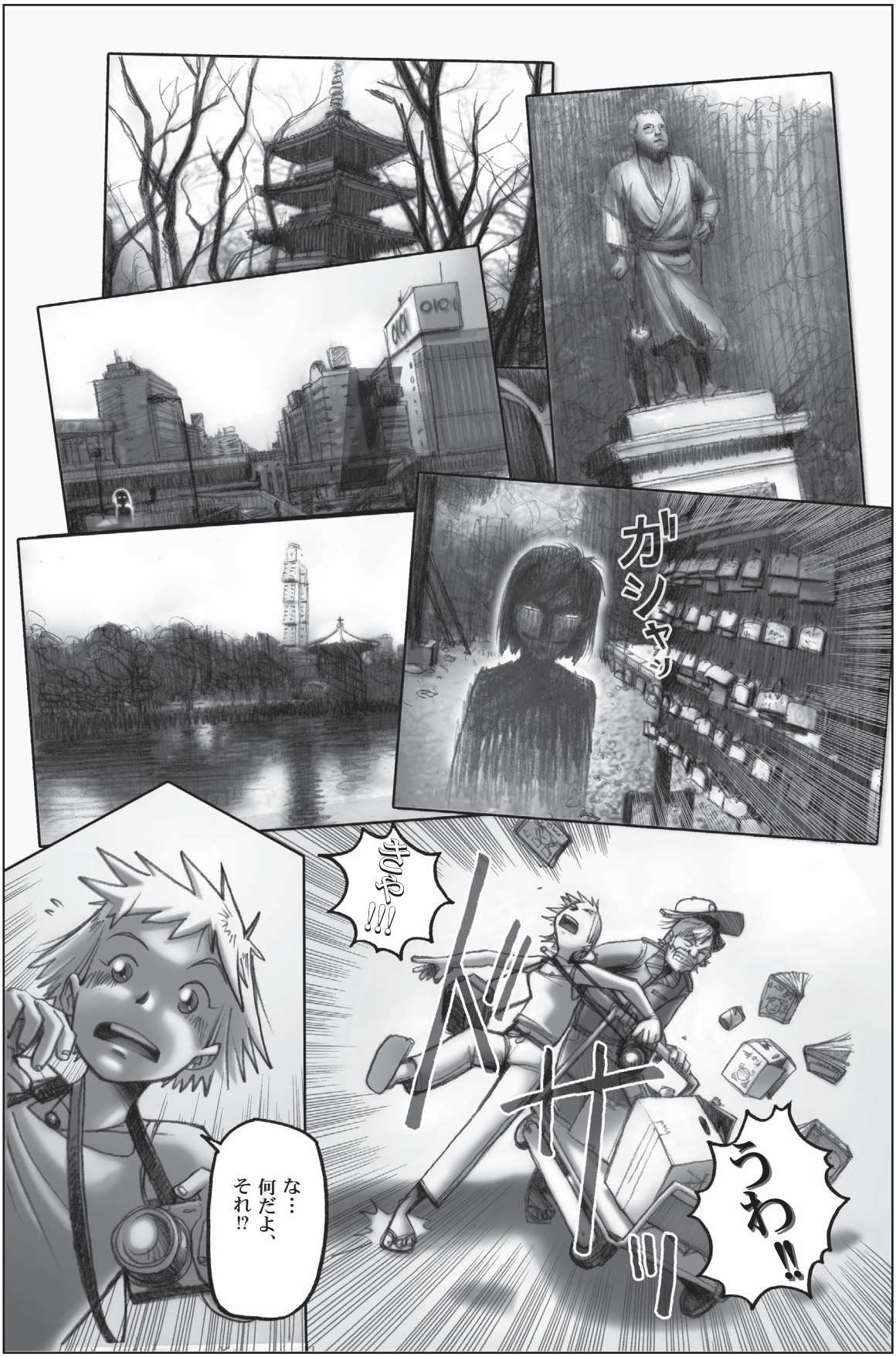

いいえ、まだ
届いていませんが…
ね、私の荷物は
もう届いたの？


行けます。
今は三田にいますが、地下鉄に乗って、新橋で電車の山手線に乗り換えて、東京駅と秋葉原駅を通って、上野駅まで行けます。
上野までいくらなの？
330円です。お金をここに入れてください。
ANMO
神谷町
KAMIYACHO
TORA NOMON
虎ノ門
ONARIMON
DAIMON
大門
AZABU-JUBAN
AKABANEBASHI
HAMAMATSU
MITA
三田
TAMA
SENGAKUJI
GAWA
KEIKY


今日はどこに写真をとりにいこうか？
どこでもいいですが、上野公園でどうですか？
上野公園？いいよ。ここから電車で上野に行けるの？
SUBWAY MAP


あ、路線図がほしい…
そう？便利だね、それは。
心配しないでください。上野駅で精算機が使えますよ。
あ！間違った!!　150円の切符を買っちゃったよ！
二番ホームです。あの角を右に曲がって、階段を上がってください。
ありがとうございます。
はい、どうぞ。日本語がお上手ですね。
いいえ、ありがとう。上野行きのホームはどれですか？
すみませんが、路線図をお願いします。
間もなく、2番線に上野行きがまいります。危ないですから、白線の内側までお下がりください。
ツ〜


ガシャン
ガシャン
ガシャン
ガシャン
次は秋葉原、秋葉原です
私は会社へ行かなければなりません。五時ごろにホテルに帰ってくださいね。
きれいな公園だね!! 写真をたくさんとろう!
はい、そうする!!!


ガシャッ
わぁ!!!
うわ!!
な…
何だよ、
それ!?


タッ
タッ
タッ
おい、君!!何か忘れてるぞ!
ハニ
ハニーン
いいえ、なんでもないです。心配しないでください。
はい、わかりました。何かありましたか?顔色が悪いですよ。
明日、朝7時にモーニングコールをお願いします。

Review for Lessons 36–40

Answers to all the review exercises can be found online by following the link on page 7.

🎧 ***KAGE*** – New vocabulary 新しい単語

すぐ	at once	結局(けっきょく)	after all
直(なお)す	to fix	心配(しんぱい)	worry
浴(あ)びる	to pour water over oneself	顔色(かおいろ)が悪(わる)い	to look unwell, to look pale

1. According to what you have read in the second episode of ***Kage***, in the beginning, what is Nuria's problem at the hotel?

2. According to what you can deduce from the conversation between Nuria and Mina, has the hotel staff solved the problem?

3. Where does Mina suggest that Nuria could go to take photos today?

4. At which station do Mina and Nuria start their journey? Which way do they go to reach their destination (where do they change trains, and which stations do they go past)?

5. What happens to Nuria when she buys the ticket? What suggestion does Mina give to solve the problem?

6. At the end of the episode, what time does Nuria ask to be woken up in the morning?

7. What does the receptionist ask Nuria at the end of the episode? What do you think the expression used by Nuria in her answer, なんでもないです, means?

8. In Nuria's sentence あたしは朝にシャワーは浴(あ)びたいから , what is the connotation of the second particle は ?

9. Indicate the function の has in the following sentences:

a) フロントの山田(やまだ)です。 _____

b) 部屋(へや)のシャワーに問題(もんだい)があります。 _____

c) 私の荷物がもう届いたの？ _____

d) １５０円の切符を買っちゃったよ！ _____

10. Indicate the function に has in the following sentences:

a) 部屋のシャワーに問題があります。 _____

b) 朝にシャワーを浴びたいから。 _____

c) 今は三田にいる。 _____

d) ここから電車で上野に行けるの？ _____

11. Find the sentences with the adverbs もう and まだ in the second episode of ***Kage***, and translate them into English. Why is the verb in the sentence with まだ conjugated in the negative?

12. Give the meaning of the word どこでも in the sentence どこでもいいです.

13. Give the meaning of the word ごろ in the sentence 五時ごろにホテルに帰ってくださいね.

14. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate word from the box overleaf.

a) 東京からソウルまで飛行機で行けるが、_____ でも行けます。

b) ホテルではベッドで寝るが、旅館では_____で寝ますね。

c) 渋谷から新宿まで_____で行けるが、電車でも行けます。

d) 今日はとても暑いから、_____をつけましょう。

e) 私の部屋に_____がないから、共用風呂へ行かなければならない。

f) すみませんが、広島_____のバスはどこにありますか？

g) 広島までの_____は２３４０円です。

h) 私の部屋に_____がないから、共用トイレへ行かなければならない。

i) 私と妻と子ども一人だから、_____がほしい。

j) この建物には_____がないから、階段をのぼっていってくださいね。

冷房（れいぼう）	バス	運賃（うんちん）	行き（ゆ）	エレベータ
トイレ	地下鉄（ちかてつ）	三人部屋（さんにんべや）	船（ふね）	ふとん

15. Choose the sentence with the closest meaning to the original one.

a) 私は露天風呂（ろてんぶろ）がある旅館（りょかん）が大好きです。

1. 私はお風呂（ふろ）がない旅館（りょかん）が大好きです。
2. 私は外にお風呂（ふろ）がある旅館（りょかん）が大好きです。
3. 私は朝にお風呂（ふろ）に入れる旅館（りょかん）が大好きです。
4. 私は中にお風呂（ふろ）がある旅館（りょかん）が大好きです。

b) マキコさんは禁煙席（きんえんせき）の切符を買いました。

1. マキコさんは食べてはだめな席（せき）の切符（きっぷ）を買いました。
2. マキコさんはたばこをすってもいい席（せき）の切符（きっぷ）を買いました。
3. マキコさんは食べてもいい席（せき）の切符（きっぷ）を買いました。
4. マキコさんはたばこをすってはだめな席（せき）の切符（きっぷ）を買いました。

c) あのホテルには和室（わしつ）の部屋（へや）が一つありましたよ。

1. あのホテルには畳（たたみ）とふすまがある部屋（へや）が一つありませんでした。
2. あのホテルには畳（たたみ）とふすまがある部屋（へや）が一つありました。
3. あのホテルには畳（たたみ）とふすまがない部屋（へや）が一つありましたよ。
4. あのホテルには畳（たたみ）とふすまが一つもない部屋（へや）がありませんでした。

16. Choose the most suitable answer for each sentence.

a) ドアを開（あ）けられないよ。＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿でもかかっているの？

1. メーター　2. 庭（にわ）　3. 鍵（かぎ）　4. 窓（まど）

b) A: １５６０円です | B: はい、２０００円、どうぞ。 | A: ＿＿＿＿＿＿ は４４０円ですね。

1. お釣（つ）り　2. 両替（りょうがえ）　3. 運賃（うんちん）　4. お金

c) このホテルの＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿は一泊４０００円です。
1. 運賃　2. 現金　3. 予約　4. 宿泊 料

d) 大阪から神戸まで電車で行けます。＿＿＿＿＿＿は４００円ぐらいです。
1. 運賃　2. 現金　3. 予約　4. 宿泊 料

e) すみません、＿＿＿＿＿＿を忘れたんです。明日７時に＿＿＿＿＿＿をお願いします。
1. 電車　2. 目覚まし時計　3. モーニングコール　4. コンセント
1. 電車　2. 目覚まし時計　3. モーニングコール　4. コンセント

f) A: 運転手にバスをとめてもらいたいが... | B: じゃ、＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿を使ってください。
1. 出口　2. 押しボタン　3. フロント　4. 信号

g) ＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿は朝５時ごろです。
1. 始発　2. 終点　3. 終電　4. 始終

h) どこでも座れるのは「＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿」と言います。
1. 指定席　2. 禁煙席　3. 喫煙席　4. 自由席

i) ＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿を金庫に入れてください。
1. 貴重品　2. コインロッカー　3. スリッパ　4. 冷蔵庫

17. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences with the most suitable expression formed by an adverb or interrogative pronoun followed by でも, as in the example.

a) たばこと酒は　どこでも　買えないよ。

b) このカメラで＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿いい写真をとれるぞ。

c) オレは仕事がないから、＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿遊びにいけるよ。

d) ミキオさんは嫌いな食べ物がありません。＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿食べますよ。

e) 英語が分かる人は＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿いる。

f) この映画は＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿好きだね。

18. In each case, complete with a suitable question or answer, forming full sentences. For indirect questions, use the underlined part as the object of the question.

a) 「共用(きょうよう)トイレ」は誰(だれ)でも使えますか？

_____。

b) _____ ？

お風呂(ふろ)は７時から１１時までです。

c) シルバーシートに誰(だれ)でも座(すわ)ってもいいですか？

_____。

d) _____ ？

新宿(しんじゅく)から乗(の)りました。

19. This telephone conversation is out of order. Rewrite it in the correct order.

1) どんな部屋(へや)にしたいですか？
2) いいですよ。じゃ、その部屋(へや)にします。ありがとう。
3) あ、こんにちは。今夜(こんや)、部屋(へや)を予約(よやく)したいんですが... 空室(くうしつ)ありますか？
4) もしもし？東京(とうきょう)ビッグホテルですが...
5) 宿泊料(しゅくはくりょう)は８０００円ですが...
6) 一泊(いっぱく)、いくらですか？
7) はい、あります。
8) トイレつき、朝食なしの一人部屋(べや)にしたいが、大丈夫(だいじょうぶ)ですか？

フロントの人：_____

お客(きゃく)さん：_____

フロントの人：_____

お客(きゃく)さん：_____

フロントの人：_____

お客さん：＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿

フロントの人：＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿

お客さん：＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿

20. Complete this dialogue held at the train station with the most suitable words.

Clerk: いらっしゃいませ。

Client: 大阪 (1)＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿ の (2)＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿ を買いたいが...

Clerk: はい。特急列車と (3)＿＿＿＿＿＿ があります。どれにしますか？

Client: どれが早いですか？

Clerk: (4)＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿ です。しかし、特急列車はもっと安いですよ。

Client: うーん... やっぱり、新幹線にします。

Clerk: 分かりました。(5)＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿ でいいですか？

Client: どんな席ですか、それは？

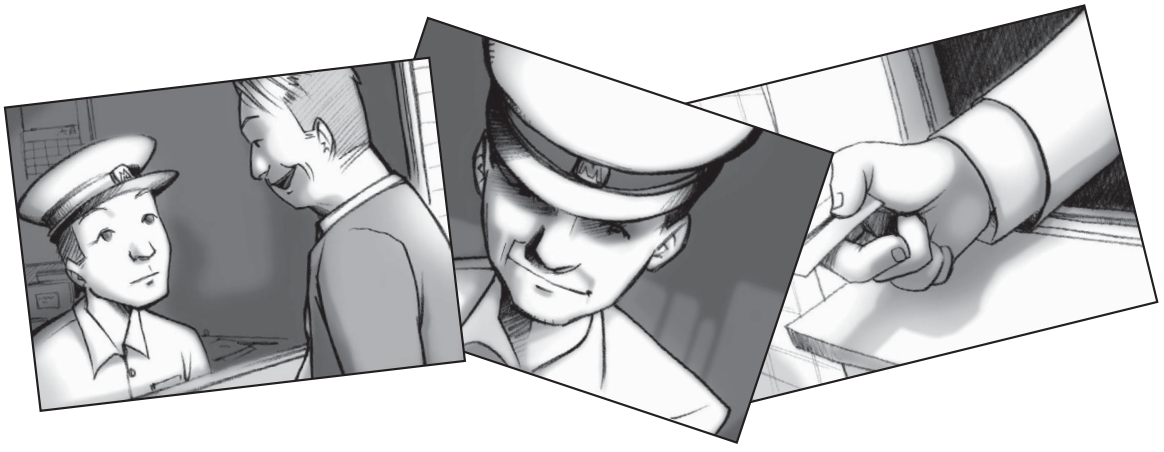
Clerk: 誰でも座れない席で、お客様だけが座れる席です。

Client: あ、じゃ、お願いします。

Clerk: 「のぞみ」、「こだま」と「ひかり」があります。どれにしますか？

Client: 「のぞみ」？それは何ですか？

Clerk: 「のぞみ」は一番 (6)＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿ 新幹線です。



Client: じゃ、「のぞみ」の (7)＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿ をお願いします。

Clerk: はい、どうぞ。

Client: この電車は (8)＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿ から発車しますか？

Clerk: ５番線です。あの角を右に曲がって、階段をのぼってください。

21. Complete the following sentences with the particles は or が as appropriate.

a) 私の名前（　）ジョナサンです。

b) ここで写真をとって（　）いけないよ。

c) 新幹線は速い（　）、とても高いですね。

d) アメリカとヨーロッパで、「アニメ」（　）「日本アニメーション」です。

e)「は」と「が」を上手に使うこと（　）できますか？

f) 昨日、パーティに行きました。パーティ（　）おもしろかった。

g) 昨日、パーティ（　）あったよ。どうして来なかったの？

h) 昨日のパーティに誰（　）来たの？

i) あそこに猫（　）います。あの猫（　）タチバナさんのですよ。

j) 私は日本語（　）読めるが、漢字（　）書けない。

k) トムさん（　）日本語（　）下手だね。

l) お金（　）ほしい！

m) あなたと結婚したいんです（　）...

n) 日本人（　）髪の毛（　）黒いです。

o) 家の近くに猿（　）一匹います。あの猿（　）お尻が赤いです。

p) 父（　）魚（　）とてもきらいです。

q) あの人（　）寿司屋さんです。

r) 飛行機の窓からシベリア（　）見えましたよ。

22. Answer the following questions, as in the example.

a) 先生の奥さんはもう来ていますか？

いいえ、先生の奥さんはまだ来ていません。

b) 彼女はもうケーキを作りましたか？

はい、＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿。

c) 日本へもう行けるか？

いいえ、＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿。

d) もう絵をかきましたか？

はい、＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿。

e) 彼女はもう日本語が話せますか？

いいえ、＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿。

23. Complete the following sentences with the particles に or で, as appropriate.

a) 私の家の庭（　）馬がいました。

b) あの人は赤いペン（　）絵をかいていた。

c) 山田さんのコンピュータは一週間（　）壊れていましたよ。

d) ８時（　）渋谷（　）買い物をしなければならない。

e) 月曜日（　）東京（　）行かなければならない。

f) オレは電車（　）あんな雑誌を読みたくないぞ。

g) どうしてあんな雑誌がお前の家（　）あったの？

h) こんな雑誌をどこ（　）買うことができますか？

i) 私の母はロンドン（　）住んでいると思います。

j) ここ（　）待ってください。私はすぐ来ます。

k) 山本さんは会社の前（　）川田さん（　）書類をあげました。

l) 私の家は遠いから、バス（　）来てください。

m) あそこ（　）バス（　）乗ってください。

n) 将来(しょうらい)、日本語の先生(　)なりたくないよ。

o) この本を２０００円(　)私(　)売ってくれますか？

p) 彼は白い紙(かみ)(　)えんぴつ(　)絵(え)をかいていた。

24. Unscramble the following sentences.

a) 赤い | 尻(しり) | は | 猿(さる) | が | です
猿(さる)は尻(しり)が赤いです。

b) 買えない | が | 車 | は | ほしい | 私 | が
_____。

c) 家 | を | マリちゃん | は | テレビ | 見ています | で
_____。

d) 弟 | は | で | 帰りました | 飛行機(ひこうき) | に | オランダ
_____。

e) あった | は | ここ | 花(はな) | その人 | が | あげたの | に | に | 誰(だれ)
_____？

f) で | の | 書いた | ナイフ | を | 学生 | 公園(こうえん) | は | に | 木 | 名前
_____。

25. Complete the following sentences with the particle you consider most suitable, choosing from は, が, も, に, で, へ, の, を and か.

a) サンディー(　)娘(むすめ)さんはとてもきれいです。

b) 来年、アメリカ(　)行くつもりです。

c) 私は明日の３時(　)銀行(ぎんこう)へ行きたいです。

d) ジョンさんはどこ(　)国(　)人ですか？

e) 日本の冬(　)寒いです。

f) 私は彼女(かのじょ)に手紙(てがみ)(　)もらった。

g) 彼(かれ)は家(　)勉強(べんきょう)する(　)(　)好きです。

h) この店(　)は安いケーキ(　)あるよ。

i) このケーキ(　)食べて(　)いいですか？

j) このケーキ(　)食べて(　)だめです。

k) 家(　)前(　)犬(いぬ)(　)いました。

l) 今、バス(　)降(お)りたが、次(つぎ)は電車(でんしゃ)(　)乗(の)らなければならない。

m) あそこ(　)何(　)し(　)行く(　)ですか？

n) はじめまして。社長(しゃちょう)(　)国山(くにむら)です。

o) 彼(かれ)はフォーク(　)人(　)殺(ころ)したよ。

p) A: 私は妹(いもうと)(　)いる。| B: そうですか？私(　)妹(いもうと)(　)いますよ。

q) ９月(　)私(　)国(　)帰るつもりです

r) 鳥(とり)(　)空(　)飛(と)びます。

s) 日本語(　)上手(　)話したい。

t) どれ(　)あなた(　)車ですか？

u) 庭(にわ)(　)(　)犬(いぬ)(　)いる。家(　)中(　)(　)犬(いぬ)(　)いる。

v) A: どんなセーター(　)買いたい(　)？| B: 青い(　)(　)買いたい。

w) カゴメさん(　)１０時(　)家(　)出た。

x) 私は１９９９年(　)はじめて日本(　)行った(　)です。

y) 石橋(いしばし)(　)駅(えき)(　)前(　)とてもおいしいピザ(　)レストラン(　)ある。

z) オレはバイク(　)北海道(ほっかいどう)(　)行きたいぞ！

i) あのレストラン(　)ピザはとてもおいしい(　)、高いですね。

ii) A: これ(　)誰(だれ)(　)写真ですか？| B: 私(　)ですよ！

iii) 新しいカメラ(　)買い(　)行きたい。

26. Choose the most suitable answer for each sentence.

a) 昨日、学校を休みました。今日＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿休むつもりです。

1. は　2. が　3. も　4. の

b) パーティーは５時＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿に始まります。

1. ぐらい　2. ごろ　3. くらい　4. まだ

c) A: 彼(かれ)はまだ来ていませんか？ | B: はい、＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿ です。

1. ごろ　2. もう　3. くらい　4. まだ

d) 私はタイへ行きたいが、インド＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿行きたいよ。

1. も　2. へ　3. に　4. へも

e) お腹(なか)がすいたんですか？ケーキ＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿食べますか？

1. が　2. の　3. でも　4. にも

f) 昨日、５時間＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿寝ました。

1. ごろ　2. ぐらい　3. まだ　4. もう

g) A: 彼(かれ)は ＿＿＿＿＿＿ 来ていますか？ | B: いいえ、まだ来ていませんよ。

1. もう　2. まだ　3. くらい　4. のは

h) この漢字(かんじ)はとてもやさしくて、子ども＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿読めるよ！

1. もう　2. でも　3. にも　4. のも

27. Correct the mistakes in the following sentences, as in the example.

a) 私の名前~~が~~(は)ソフィーです。

b) 先生はもう来ていません。

c) 私は京都(きょうと)で住(す)みたいと思います。

d) 象(ぞう)が鼻(はな)は長(なが)いですね。

e) ５時間ごろ働(はたら)きましたか？

f) 庭(にわ)で鳥(とり)が一羽(いちわ)います。あの鳥(とり)が飛(と)んでいます。

Kanji

開 (120)	閉 (119)	発 (247)	動 (95)	作 (133)	教 (134)	習 (135)	知 (137)	地 (143)	図 (184)	所 (144)
太 (85)	若 (110)	悪 (112)	重 (113)	館 (175)	駅 (178)	室 (179)	洋 (164)	漢 (196)	字 (156)	電 (158)

28. Practice writing the kanji below. Find the stroke order in the online Kanji Compilation by following the link on page 7.

動										
開										
悪										
地										
教										

29. Link each kanji with its most common reading (usually, the ***kun'yomi***).

字	つくる	若い	おもい
作る	しる	室	わかい
知る	じ	電	でん
図	えき	悪い	しつ
所	ところ	重い	わるい
駅	ず	地	ち

30. Choose the correct kanji or kanji combination for each reading.

a) うごく
1. 動く　2. 重く　3. 車く　4. 働く

b). ならう
1. 教う　2. 習う　3. 便う　4. 知う

c) わるい
1. 重い　2. 良い　3. 弟い　4. 悪い

d). しる
1. 教る　2. 習る　3. 便る　4. 知る

e) でんしゃ
1. 電話　2. 電車　3. 電気　4. 電語

f). しゅっぱつ
1. 出登　2. 登出　3. 出発　4. 発出

31. Choose the correct reading for each kanji combination.

a) 駅前の図書館は何時に開きますか？
駅前：1. えきぜん　2. えぎまえ　3. えきまえ　4. えぎぜん
図書館：1. ずしょかん　2. ずどくかん　3. とどくかん　4. としょかん
開きます：1. あきます　2. しきます　3. いきます　4. ききます

b) 日本語の文字を習うのはむずかしいです。
文字：1. もじ　2. ぶんじ　3. ぶんし　4. ぶし
習う：1. あきなう　2. からう　3. ならう　4. まなう

c) 先生は自動車の中で電話で話していました。
自動車：1. じてんしゃ　2. してんじゃ　3. しどうじゃ　4. じどうしゃ
電話：1. でんしゃ　2. でんわ　3. でんき　4. でんご

32. Give the ***furigana*** reading of the underlined kanji.

a) 閉店は８時だから、早く電車で出発しましょうね。
b) あの動物の心電図を見てください。
c) 教室で漢字がたくさん出てくる作文を作っている。
d) 西洋には悪習が多いですね。
e) 近所のおばさんは太っている知人に悪口を言った。

33. Write the following words in kanji, and give their meanings.

しめる	_____	_____	おもい	_____	_____
えき	_____	_____	がくしゅう	_____	_____
でんき	_____	_____	わるい	_____	_____

34. There are some mistakes in these words, either in the kanji or in the matching hiragana. Can you correct them?

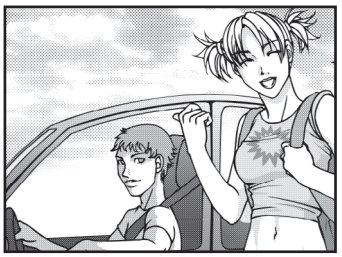
池図　ちず	問ける　あける	発読　はつばい
漢字　かんし	電軍　でんしゃ	開会　へいかい
右い　わかい	犬字　ふとじ	東羊　とうよう

Lesson 41 • 第 41 課

Particles (4) to / kara / made

By the end of this lesson we will have studied in depth all the particles in Japanese grammar: は, が, も (Lesson 37), に, で and へ (Lesson 38), の and を (Lesson 40), and, here, と, から and まで. We will also study the usages of や and か.

The particle と



と, like most particles, has several different usages which we will have to study carefully and individually.

Listing things: と is used to link nouns or noun phrases (Lesson 40 and 57,) and to give an exhaustive and complete listing of two or more things.

- 私は映画と音楽とマンガが好きです I like movies, music and comic-books.
- 寿司と刺身と味噌汁を食べた I have eaten sushi, sashimi and miso soup.
- 彼は英語と中国語とチェコ語とロシア語が出来る He can speak English, Chinese, Czech and Russian.

Together with / with: と is also used to indicate "with" somebody or something.

- 原さんは大塚さんと囲碁を打っている Mr. Hara plays go with Mr. Otsuka.
- 彼女はジョンと(一緒に)観光をした She went sightseeing (together) with John.

The phrase と(一緒に) ***tō (issho ni)*** is frequently used, and means "together with." However, 一緒に is often omitted from the sentence because it's understood or implied, hence the brackets here. These kinds of sentence are called "reciprocal sentences," because the action indicated by the verb is the same for the two or more "subjects" who perform it. For example, the first sentence could mean both Mr. Hara plays go with Mr. Ōtsuka and Mr. Ōtsuka plays with Mr. Hara. They both have the same role.

There are several kinds of reciprocal sentences in Japanese, and this one indicating "together with" is just one of them. Other verbs, such as 話す ***hanasu*** (to talk); 結婚する ***kekkon suru*** (to marry); 似ている ***nite iru*** (to look like); 違う ***chigau*** (to be different); and adjectives such as 同じ ***onaji*** (the same), also use the particle と to make reciprocal sentences:

- 秋成(あきなり)くんはホステスと話(はな)している Akinari is talking with the bar hostess.
- りんごはなしと違(ちが)います Apples and pears are different.

Quotes: To quote somebody's words, we use と. There are two kinds of quotation: indirect (reporting what was said), and direct (explicitly quoting what was said, between quotation marks).

- 博信(ひろのぶ)は君(きみ)がバカだと言(い)ったよ Hironobu said you were stupid.
- サンドラは「休暇(きゅうか)が欲(ほ)しいなぁ!」と叫(さけ)んだ Sandra yelled: "I want holidays!"

🎧 Usages of *to*	
List	太郎とジョンとマリアが来た Taro, John and Maria came
(Together) with	ジョンはマリアと映画を見る John watches a movie with Maria
Reciprocity	太郎はマリアと結婚する Taro marries Maria
Direct quote	彼は私に「好きだ」と言った He said to me "I like you"
Indirect quote	彼は私が好きだと言った He told me he liked me
Definition	愛とは何でしょう？ What is love?
With *gitaigo*/ *giongo*	彼はへなへなと座った He sat down, exhausted
Conditional	映画を見ると分かるよ If you see the film, you'll understand
来る ***kuru*** to come; 映画 ***eiga*** film; 見る ***miru*** to see; 結婚する ***kekkon suru*** to marry; 好き ***suki*** (to) like; 言う ***iu*** to say; 愛 ***ai*** love; へなへな weak; 座る ***suwaru*** to sit; 分かる ***wakaru*** to understand	

These sentences use verbs such as 言う ***iu*** (to say), 叫ぶ ***sakebu*** (to yell), ささやく (to whisper), etc. Verbs such as 思う ***omou*** (to believe), 考える ***kangaeru*** (to think), 書く ***kaku*** (to write), also use と.

- 大阪(おおさか)は本当(ほんとう)に楽(たの)しいと思(おも)っているよ I think Osaka is really fun.
- 「さくら」は漢字(かんじ)で「桜」と書(か)く The word "sakura" is written " 桜 " in kanji.

Note: If we have a ***-na*** adjective or a noun before と, we will need the verb to be in its simple form (だ). The ***-i*** adjective, however, requires no conjugation.

Definition: Using the combination とは, or its complete form というのは, we can express a "definition."

- 「能験(のうけん)」とは「能力試験(のうりょくしけん)」の略(りゃく)です "***Nōken***" is short for ***nōryoku shiken***.
- 「民主主義(みんしゅしゅぎ)」というのは何(なん)ですか？ What is (that thing we call) "democracy"?

The expression という is useful when clarifying a concept or giving more information about something. For this usage, we don't write the verb 言う in kanji.

- 「Monster」というマンガは超面白(ちょうおもしろ)〜い！ The manga "Monster" is reaaally good!
- 「アゲハ」という女(おんな)を知(し)ってる？ Do you know the woman called Ageha?

With *gitaigo* / *giongo*: と is often used with onomatopoeic words (see Lesson 29).

- 彼女(かのじょ)はしくしくと泣(な)いている She is sobbing silently.
- 飛行機(ひこうき)がびゅーんと飛(と)んでいた The plane flew (going *byuuun*).

Conditional: In Japanese there are four ways of expressing the conditional which we will study in Lesson 56. For now we will only say for reference that と is used in one of them:

- にんじんを食(た)べると目(め)がよくなります If you eat carrots, your sight will improve.

The particle から

Origin (from): から indicates origin or point of departure, be it spatial or temporal.

- パーティは6時(ろくじ)からです The party is from six o'clock.
- どこから来(き)たんですか？ Where have you come from? | Where are you from?
- 学校(がっこう)から家(いえ)へ歩(ある)いていける I can walk home from school.
- パンは小麦(こむぎ)から作(つく)る Bread is made from wheat.*

*This is similar to the **Manner / instrument / material** usage of で in Lesson 38 (page 32). Both particles are almost interchangeable in this context: the only difference is that we use から when the original material is not obvious just by looking at it. You can't physically "see" that bread is made from wheat and so we use から. When we can determine by sight what the material used is, we use で.

Cause/reason: As seen in Lesson 34, から is used to answer a question with どうして (why?), like our "because." It can also be used independently, meaning "as" or "since."

- 銀座(ぎんざ)は高(たか)いからよそへ行(い)きましょう As Ginza's expensive, let's go elsewhere else.
- 私(わたし)は大丈夫(だいじょうぶ)だから、心配(しんぱい)しないで I'm alright, so don't worry.
- 魚(さかな)は嫌(きら)いだから肉(にく)にしますよ As I don't like fish, I'll have meat.

Note: As mentioned at the end of the **Quotes** section on page 81, after a ***-na*** adjective or a noun, the verb is in its simple form (だ). Again, this is not necessary with ***-i*** adjectives.

After doing: In Lesson 35 we saw how から is combined with the ***-te*** form to indicate "after doing . . ." Here's an example as a reminder.

- 日本へ行ってから台湾へ行きたい After going to Japan, I want to go to Taiwan.

The particle まで

This particle is easy to use, especially if we learn it together with から, because they have opposite meanings. If から is "from," then まで is "until" or "to." The third example below shows the common combination of から and まで together.

- 駅まで１０キロぐらいあると思う I think it's about 10 km to the station.
- いつまで韓国に残りたいの？ Until when do you want to stay in Korea?
- 授業は３時から４時半までだよ The class goes from three to half past four.

Usages of や

か and や are not considered "true" particles but they have similar functions to と (page 80). We use や to make lists, like と. But と is used to make exhaustive lists andや is used to make non-exhaustive lists of nouns or noun phrases (it can't be used with verbs or adjectives), to give feeling "and so on."

- 寿司や刺身を食べた I have eaten sushi and sashimi (among other things).
- 彼は英語や中国語やチェコ語が出来る He can speak English, Chinese, Czech (and others).
- 東京や岐阜や名古屋に友達がいる I have friends in Tokyo, Gifu, Nagoya . . .

The expression とかhas practically the same meaning and usage as や. However, や is mainly used in written Japanese, whereas とか is used in colloquial contexts.

- 私は映画とか音楽とかが好きです I like movies and music (and other things).

Usages of か

Although か is used to list things in a similar way to と (page 80), and や, it has a very different meaning, as it indicates a choice between one or several things and something else.
Note: か can be used not only with nouns, but also with verbs and adjectives.

- 寿司か刺身を食べてください Eat the sushi or the sashimi, please.
- 電車で行くか歩いていくか決めよう Let's decide whether to go by train or walk.
- 東京か岐阜か名古屋に友達がいる He has a friend in Tokyo, Gifu, or Nagoya.

More usages of か

Another usage of か is ～かどうか, used to make questions of the "yes or no" kind. The basic sentence is similar to the ones in the previous point but the second part of the sentence is replaced by ～かどうか, similar to "or not" in English.

- 刺身(さしみ)が好(す)きか嫌(きら)いか言(い)ってね Tell me if you like or dislike sashimi, OK?
- 刺身(さしみ)が好(す)きかどうか言(い)ってね Tell me if you like sashimi or not, OK?
- 彼(かれ)がサラリーマンかどうか知(し)らない I don't know if he is an office worker or not.
- 夏美(なつみ)が元気(げんき)かどうか聞(き)いてもいい？ Can I ask if Natsumi is all right (or not)?
- 大会(たいかい)に出(で)たかどうか分(わ)からないな I don't know if he took part in the event or not.

Something, someday . . .

Add か to interrogative pronouns/adverbs to create words like 何か ***nanika*** (something, some), いつか (sometime/ someday), どこか (somewhere), 誰か ***dareka*** (someone), etc.

- 誰(だれ)か助(たす)けてください！ Someone help me, please!
- 何(なに)か問題(もんだい)がありますか Do you have any problems?
- どこかで彼女(かのじょ)に会(あ)いたいな I'd like to meet her somewhere.

Usages of *kara*	
From	子どもはパリからくる The children come from Paris
Origin	豆腐は大豆から作る Tofu is made from soybeans
Cause/reason	宿題は難しいからやらない Since homework is difficult, I won't do it
After doing	宿題が終わってからテレビを見よう After finishing my homework, I'll watch TV
Usage of *made*	
To/until	仙台まで新幹線で行ける You can go as far as Sendai by shinkansen
Usage of *ya*	
Non-exhaustive list	オレンジやレモンを買った I bought oranges, lemons (and others)

Usages of *ka*	
List	オレンジかレモンを食べてください Eat an orange or a lemon, please
Yes or no? (かどうか)	食べたいかどうか言ってね Tell me if you want to eat or not, OK?
Something (何か)	何か食べたいんですか？ Do you feel like eating something?

子供 ***kodomo*** child; 豆腐 ***tōfu*** tofu;
大豆 ***daizu*** soybeans; 作る ***tsukuru*** to make;
宿題 ***shukudai*** homework;
難しい ***muzukashii*** difficult;
やる to do (col.); 終わる ***owaru*** to finish;
テレビ TV; 新幹線 ***shinkansen*** shinkansen;
行く ***iku*** to go; オレンジ orange;
レモン lemon; 買う ***kau*** to buy;
食べる ***taberu*** to eat

漫画例 Manga Examples

We will complete the lesson with a few examples taken from manga, as usual. This time we'll start with a focus on some of the many uses of the particle と that we have looked at in this chapter.

Manga Example 1: Several usages of *to*

Here are three different usages of と in one sentence! The first と gives a list" of only two elements, the nouns 15日 and 20日 (note the special pronunciation).

The second と goes with the ***gitaigo*** ピン (see Lesson 29 to review ***gitaigo***). The word ピン indicates something like a thought that suddenly strikes you and is generally used as part of the expression ピンとくる, as in this example.

And now you'll be asking yourself where the third と is. Well, in fact, it's "hidden": the と seen when discussing quotes on page 81, is usually contracted into って in spoken Japanese. Pay careful attention to this, because it happens often. In this sentence, the contracted と is in 出かけると聞いて (I heard he went out). と connects the main sentence 聞く (to hear) and the subordinate clause 出かける (to go out).



J.M. Ken Niimura

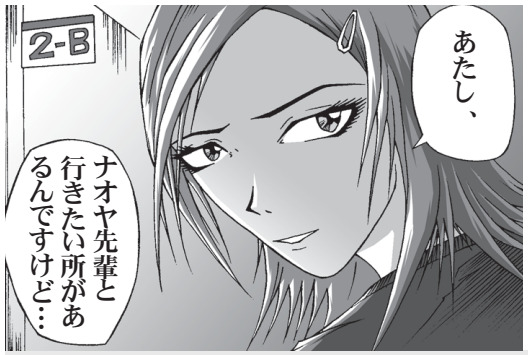
Kōsaka: １５日(じゅうごにち)と２０日(はつか)に出(で)かけるって聞(き)いてピンときたんだ

day 15 CP day 20 TP go out SBP hear "flash" come

When I heard he went out on the 15th and the 20th, I suddenly understood.

Manga Example 2: Together with

Here is a good example of the second usage of と, studied on page 80: "together with/with." We said the 一緒 part of the expression ～と一緒に ***to issho ni*** (together with) is often left out, as is the case in this sentence, which could easily be ナオヤ先輩と一緒に行きたい. **Notes:** The word 先輩 (Lesson 15), indicates "someone with more experience, who does the same work or study as the speaker, but who started earlier." It is widely used. Also notice the tag んです at the end, explained in Manga Example 4, Lesson 40.



Gabriel Luque

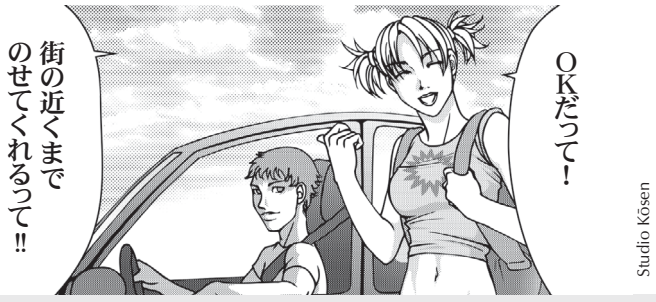
Mayumi: あたし、ナオヤ先輩(せんぱい)と行(い)きたい所(ところ)があるんですけど…

I Naoya SUF CP go place SP there is but . . .

I . . . There is a certain place I'd like to go with Naoya . . .

Manga Example 3: Spoken contraction of *to iu*

In Manga Example 1, we saw how と is contracted to って in spoken Japanese. The same happens with the expression という and とは. Here we have an example of an indirect quote as described on page 81. Sachie quotes twice what they've told her using と plus the verb 言う ***iu*** (to say), which gives us という (says that), contracted into a simple って. Let's see, now, a usage of this って as a definition: 「民主主義」って何？ ***Minshushugi tte nani?*** (What is democracy?) This って as you know, is the equivalent of とは. **Note:** って can be the contraction of と, as in Manga Example 1, or of the full expression という (says that) or even the defining expression とは.



Studio Kōsen

Sachie: ＯＫ(オーケー)だって！街(まち)の近(ちか)くまでのせてくれるって！！

OK says that! Village POP near to take (receive) says that!

He says OK! He's taking us somewhere near the village!

Manga Example 4: Usage of *made* and an idiomatic usage of *kara*

The particle まで is the equivalent of "until." In this example まで indicates a point in time: 迎えに来るまで. In the previous example, まで indicates a point in space: 街の近くまで (somewhere near the village). **Note:** The から at the end of the sentence indicating cause/reason is discussed on page 82. This usage is very common in spoken language, especially when the speaker is angry or in a bad mood. In such cases, rather than translating it as "because," it's better to use "huh!" or a similar interjection.

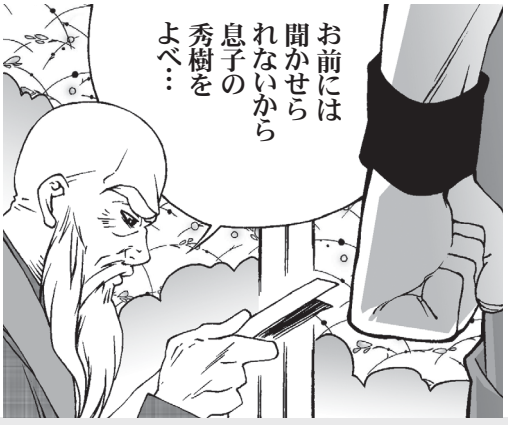


Xian Nu Studio

Mihoko: 迎(むか)えに来(く)るまで帰(かえ)ってやらないから。
fetch until go back (give) because
I won't go back until he comes to fetch me, huh!

Manga Example 5: Cause or reason

Here is a good example of the use of から: cause/reason (see page 82), linking the two sentences お前には聞かせられない (reason) and 息子の秀樹をよべ (consequence). In the sentence we also see the appositional usage of の (Lesson 40, page 50) in 息子の秀樹, as well as the imperative よべ (from the verb 呼ぶ ***yobu***, to call), studied in Lesson 30. The inflection 聞かせられない is a combination of the causative form (Lesson 60), and the negative potential form (Lesson 32): it literally means "I can't let you hear," in other words, "I can't tell you."



Xian Nu Studio

Kūkai: お前(まえ)には聞(き)かせられないから息子(むすこ)の秀樹(ひでき)をよべ…
you IOP TOP hear (passive-reflexive) because son POP Hideki DOP call . . .
I can't tell you, so call my son Hideki.

Manga Example 6: *Ka dō ka*

In the second sentence of this manga example notice the construction ～かどうか which is used to form questions of the "yes or no" type. The construction ～かどうか is used to avoid repeating the verb and to simplify: the "extended version" of the sentence would be: お前の知ってる男か知らない男か確かめてみろ (Check if you know those men or if you don't know them). **Note:** In this sentence, we can also see ～てみる, (Lesson 35), meaning "try to do something." Notice how ～てみる is conjugated in the imperative: 確かめてみろ, literally "try to check," or "check and see."



Soldier: な…何(なに)を言(い)ってるのかよくわからないが…

w . . .what DOP say SBP Q? well know but . . .

Wha . . . ? I don't understand very well what you are saying, but . . .

とにかくお前(まえ)の知(し)ってる男(おとこ)かどうか、確(たし)かめてみろ！！

anyhow you POP know man "yes or no," check (try)!!

Whatever it is, go and check if you know those men or not!!

Manga Example 7: Something



This example shows the combination of an interrogative adverb or pronoun plus か, to mean "something." In this case we have なんか, but other variants such as どれか (which one), いつか (sometime), どこか (somewhere) are also possible. **Note:** We also see here the use of the ***-te*** form for a request, without ください, characteristic of spoken language, as we saw in Lesson 35.

Emika: なんか言(い)って徳永君(とくながくん)ッ

something say Tokunaga SUF

Say something, Tokunaga!

Exercises 練習

1 Translate: "I want to buy potatoes, tomatoes and onions." (to buy 買う; potatoes じゃがいも; tomatoes トマト; onions 玉ねぎ)

2 Translate: "I want to buy potatoes, tomatoes, onions, etc."

3 Translate: "I want to buy potatoes, tomatoes, or onions."

4 Translate: "I think you are very beautiful." (to think 思う; you 君; very とても; beautiful きれい)

5 Translate: 恵比寿から新宿まで電車で１０分かかる。(恵比寿 Ebisu; 新宿 Shinjuku; 電車 train; 分 minutes; かかる to take)

6 Translate: "Since I'm tired, I'm going to rest." (to be tired 疲れている; to rest 休む)

7 Translate: "I don't know if Naoki can speak Spanish or not." (to know 知る; Naoki 直樹; to speak 話す; Spanish スペイン語)

8 Translate: どうか手を貸してください。(手を貸す to give a hand)

9 Translate: 「七人の侍」って映画は古いね。(七人 seven people; 侍 samurai; 映画 movie; 古い old)

10 What is the equivalent of って in the previous question? Besides this one, what other constructions are equivalent to って?

— Answers to all the exercises can be found online by following the link on page 7. —

Lesson 42 • 第 42 課

Shopping

After the hard battle fought against particles in the last four lessons, let's relax a little in this chapter while learning a lot of new vocabulary.

Let's go shopping!

Let's revise some sentences which can be helpful whenever we go shopping.



- 何か探しているんですか？ Are you looking for something? (Lesson 41)
- はい、Xはありますか？ Yes, do you have x?
- いいえ、見ているだけです No, I'm just looking.
- あれを見せてください Could you please show me that?
- これはいくらですか？ How much is this? (Lesson 34)
- お支払いは現金ですか、カードですか？ Will you pay by cash or credit card? (Lesson 41)
- カードでお願いします Credit card. | 現金でお願いします Cash.
- これをお願いします Could I have this, please?

Buying clothes

Most Japanese words for clothes come from English, because it wasn't until the Meiji Era (1868) that the Japanese began dressing in Western style.

In addition to the traditional clothing words in the table on the facing page you may also come across 帯 ***obi*** (kimono sash), はかま (a sort of skirt nowadays used almost exclusively in martial arts), 下駄 ***geta*** (Japanese clogs), 足袋 ***tabi*** (socks with the big toe separated).

- 自分用の浴衣を探しているんですが
  I'm looking for a yukata for myself. (Lesson 40)
- 女性用のTシャツはありますか？
  Do you have T-shirts for women?
- 日本のサイズがわかりません
  I don't know how sizes in Japan work.

Shopping	
bag	袋
to bargain	値切る
bill	領収書
cash register	レジ
discount	割引
price tag	値札
bargain	バーゲン
to pay	払う
bargain sale	特売
tax	税
to wrap	包む

- このサイズはいくつですか？ What size is this?
- もう少し安いものがありますか？ Do you have something a little bit cheaper?
- 試着してもいいですか？ Can I try it on? (Lesson 32)

Clothes					
belt	ベルト	**kimono**	着物	**suit**	スーツ
blouse	ブラウス	**pajamas**	パジャマ	**sweater**	セーター
boots	ブーツ	**panties**	パンティ	**swimming costume**	水着
bra	ブラジャー	**scarf**	マフラー	**tie**	ネクタイ
coat	コート	**shirt**	シャツ	**trousers**	ズボン
dress	ドレス	**shoes**	靴	**T-shirt**	T シャツ
gloves	手袋	**skirt**	スカート	**underpants**	パンツ
jacket	ジャケット	**socks**	靴下	**underwear**	下着
jeans	ジーンズ	**stockings**	ストッキング	**yukata**	浴衣

Buying manga and books

Visiting Japan is an ideal opportunity for manga fans to stock up!

- 「ＧＴＯ」というマンガを探しています I'm looking for a manga called "GTO." (Lesson 41)
- 作者か出版社はわかりますか？ Do you know the author or the publishing company? (Lesson 41)
- このマンガをください I'll take this manga. (Lesson 41)

Buying souvenirs

To conclude, we will learn how to buy the unavoidable souvenirs and presents.

- この人形は伝統的ですか？ Is this doll a traditional one?
- その急須は壊れやすいから、気をつけてくださいね This teapot is fragile, so please be careful. (Lesson 41)
- プレゼントだから、包んでください It's a present, so could you wrap it up, please? (Lesson 41)
- あのせんべいの賞味期限はいつですか？ When do those rice crackers expire?
- 安いお土産を売っていませんか？ Do you sell cheap souvenirs? (Lesson 40)

Cultural Note: A Passion for Fashion

The term "fashion victim" seems to have been invented specifically to describe Japanese urban youth. Although that's not true, what is true is that if you walk around the 渋谷 ***Shibuya*** and 原宿 ***Harajuku*** districts in 東京 ***Tōkyō***, or the 梅田 ***Umeda*** and 心斎橋 ***Shinsaibashi*** districts in 大阪 ***Ōsaka***, you are likely to come across vast numbers of young people who might fit that description.

Japanese urban fashion is eclectic, colorful, sometimes extreme, and sometimes absolutely outlandish. There are times when you feel you really are at one of those flamboyant fashion shows in Paris or Milan: super-short skirts, conspicuous accessories, cowboy hats, spike-heel boots, pink angora sweaters, hair dyed platinum blonde, ridiculously expensive designer handbags, knee-high stockings with sneakers . . . All this and a lot more rules Japanese ファッション, which changes at a hectic pace.



Shinsaibashi: extreme-fashion addicts in their habitat
(Photo: M. Bernabé)

But not everybody can afford to change their wardrobe completely every two or three months. In fact, this represents one of the most urgent problems for urban youth (especially for girls): how to find money to "be fashionable." Not everybody in Japan is rich enough to be able to afford such frantic spending. Therefore, money is obtained via all kinds of scheming: from asking one's parents or simply having an アルバイト (part-time job) in a コンビニ (convenience store), to practically prostituting oneself with the so called 援助交際 ***enjo kōsai*** (literally, "relationship in exchange of help"), which entails teenage girls going out with middle-aged men (generally, forty or over) in exchange for money. The デート (date) can involve anything: from an innocent afternoon snack or coffee to ending up in bed.

The thing is fashion is like a religion, or rather, pure mimicry: if my neighbor has that Gucci or Cartier handbag, why shouldn't I have it? Thus, it is not in vain that the world's main luxury firms consider 日本 ***Nihon*** their most important market.

漫画例 Manga Examples

These manga examples illustrate some situations that you might find yourself in while shopping in Japan, along with some useful language.

Manga Example 1: Great bargains

This example gives useful language when looking for a bargain, such as the word 半額 (half price). Also take a look at the pamphlets, which say バーゲン半額 (half-price bargains) and 大安売り ***ooyasuuri*** (special bargain sale). 安売り is a native Japanese word and バーゲン is imported from English: they both mean "bargain." **Note:** ティッシュ are "tissues" and 箱 means "box," so 箱ティッシュ are "tissue boxes." These boxes are, according to Kazue, バカ安. If you remember Lesson 23, バカ is an insult meaning "silly, stupid." バカ安 is literally "foolishly cheap," in other words, "dirt cheap."



J.M. Ken Niimura

Kazue: おおっ箱(はこ)ティッシュがバカ安(やす)！ブラウス半額(はんがく)！？
wow box tissues SP foolish cheap! Blouse half price!?
Wow! Tissues are dirt cheap! And blouses at half price?!

Manga Example 2: 2500 yen altogether

Here we see the clerk giving the customer the total price: the verb しめる(締める), is used here as an adverb (remember verbs in the ***-te*** form can sometimes function as adverbs, Lesson 22), meaning "altogether." 締める is used to give the final figure after adding up the total prices. A further example is 学費は締めて２００万円もかかったよ ***gakuhi wa shimete 200 man en mo kakatta yo*** (School expenses amounted to 2 million yen altogether). Notice the usage of the particle も to emphasize the number (Lesson 37).



Gabriel Luque

Man: しめて２５００円(にせんごひゃくえん)ね
total 2500 yen EP
That's 2500 yen altogether.

Tezuka: に　にせんごひゃく円(えん)だー！？
t . . .two thousand five hundred yen be!?
T . . .two thousand five hundred yeeen?!

Manga Example 3: Brand fever

On page 92 we mentioned the Japanese obsession with luxury designer goods, and this example proves it. The speaker boasts to his friend about having a Louis Vuitton bag which cost a whopping ２０万円. Since Kojima's second sentence is extremely distorted by his colloquial style of speech, we will transcribe it into "normal" Japanese to analyze it properly: いくらすると思っているの？ The expression いくらする is an alternative way of saying いくらです (How much is it?). It's also worth pointing out the use of the construction と思う (I think), which we studied in the section about quotes on page 81 of Lesson 41.



Xian Nu Studio

Kojima: ほら　このバッグなんかヴィトンよ？ヴィトン！
look this bag Vuitton EP? Vuitton!
Look at this handbag. It's a Vuitton, man, a Vuitton!
いくらすっと思(おも)ってんのよ　２０万(にじゅうまん)よ？　２０万(にじゅうまん)！
how much SBP think Q? EP 20 man EP? 20 man!
How much do you think it costs? 200,000, man, 200,000!

Manga Example 4: To bargain

In Japan bargaining is not paramount, but sometimes, maybe in フリーマーケット (flea markets) or in some electronics stores, you might obtain a discount if you insist a little. The standard expression, which would be ちょっとまけてください (Give me a little discount, please), uses the verb まける (to reduce), which we see in this example in its imperative form, まけろ (Lesson 30). **Notes:** ちょっと means "a little." For obvious reasons, 安い and its opposite 高い ***takai*** (expensive) are key words when bargaining and when generally buying. Notice って in the sentence: it's a contraction of という (the "definition" usage of と, Lesson 41, page 81).



Xian Nu Studio

Kishida: 安(やす)くまけろってサインだそうですーっ！
cheap bargain SBP sign be seems be!
It looks like the sign for "give me a discount"!

Manga Example 5: A discount

Often, we will see offers marked with a number plus the word 割引 ***waribiki*** (discount) or, as in the example, just 割. These are, obviously, discounts—the number indicates the percentage. For example, this 2割 a 20% discount, and ５割 would be a 50% discount (notice how the number is multiplied by ten). You will frequently find labels or signs indicating discounts mainly in supermarkets and boutiques. Many use the formula Ｘ割 which we have just seen, and others use the word 半額 ***hangaku***, which we saw in Manga Example 1 and which means "half price." **Note:** The shop assistant is talking about 鯛 ***tai*** (sea bream). Since the pronunciation of the word 鯛 is the same as the last part of the adjective おめでたい (joyous, happy), in Japan, sea bream is eaten on celebratory occasions.



Studio Kōsen

Man: そいつはオメデタイから…
that TOP "omedetai" because . . .
Well, because it's a "joyous bream . . ."

Woman: ２割(にわり)ほど定価(ていか)から引(ひ)いて！
20% approximately price from take out!
(You will) lower the price 20%!

Manga Example 6: The computer?



Gabriel Luque

This example reveals how most computer terms have been introduced into Japanese through English, like almost all languages in the world. Such is the case for the words コンピュータ and インターネット.

The word "computer" curiously has two Japanese names: the "orthodox" コンピュータand the more cryptic パソコン, a contraction of the word パーソナル・コンピュータ. **Note:** Notice the でも in the example. It's the same usage we saw in Manga Example 7 in Lesson 38.

Kei: ああ…コンピュータ？インターネットでもやる？
oh . . . computer? Internet or something do?
Oh, the computer? Do you want to connect to the Internet or something?

Exercises 練習

1 Translate into English the words 包(つつ)む, 手袋(てぶくろ), ベルト, ソフト, 画集(がしゅう), 水着(みずぎ) and セーター.

2 Translate into Japanese the words "suit," "scarf," "discount," "doll," "electronic dictionary," and "tie."

3 You go into a shop to browse around. What do you reply if the clerk asks you if you want anything special?

4 You are looking for a book called "Kimono," and the clerk asks you 何か探しているんですか？ What do you answer?

5 Translate into Japanese the sentence: "Do you have a size 'small' in pants?"

6 Translate into English: あのマンガとそのビデオゲームをください。

7 You want to buy a video game, but you don't know whether you will be able to use it in your country. Ask the clerk.

8 Translate into Japanese: "Since this pottery piece is fragile, could you wrap it up, please?" (pottery piece: 陶器(とうき))

9 You are at a flea market, and you are interested in something. Try to start bargaining in Japanese.

10 Give the three ways of saying "at half price" which we have studied in this lesson.

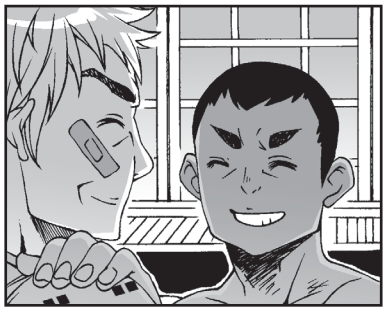
— Answers to all the exercises can be found online by following the link on page 7. —

Lesson 43 • 第 43 課

Suppositions and Conjectures

We know that the Japanese tend to be ambiguous: they prefer hiding behind vagueness and imprecision, as opposed to risking categorical statements. In this lesson we will study the wide variety of expressions for supposition and conjecture.

Maybe, baby . . .



Ambiguity in the Japanese language often causes confusion and misunderstandings. A Japanese person will never say "no" directly; rather, they will let out a rhetorical alternative in the form of "hmm, it might be a little difficult," or "I'd have to say that's not quite possible," which will make a Western mind think "they say it's difficult, but they don't say no, so maybe it could be done," when what the Japanese person really means is no. Let's now look at the Japanese expressions which might be used in such cases.

I think that と思う

We already saw the this expression in Lesson 41.

- スピーチを始めたいと思います (I think) I'd like to start my speech.
- 論文をもう一度書いてもらいたいと思う I think I'd like you to write the thesis again.

Perhaps / maybe / might かもしれない（かもしれません）

The phrase かもしれない is used after a verb in its simple form, an ***-i*** or ***-na*** adjective, or a noun.

- 彼はスペイン人かもしれない He might be Spanish.
- 来年、日本へ行くかもしれませんよ Maybe I'll go to Japan next year.
- このカメラは高かったかもしれないな Perhaps this camera was expensive.

Apparently ようだ・みたいだ

Some of the expressions that follow are similar, and confusing them is easy. We will try to explain clearly, although more often than not the "borders" of their usage are a bit hazy!

The expression ようだ means "apparently," and is used when the speaker has direct information (either visual or sensory) taken from the speaker's previous knowledge about the subject and his capacity to reason. It is a conjecture with a high degree of certainty. It goes after a verb in its simple form or an ***-i*** adjective, without adding anything. ***-na*** adjectives keep な. You must add の between a noun and ようだ.

- 田中さんは気絶したようだ Apparently, Tanaka has fainted.
  (Because I can see that he is lying on the floor.)
- この店は花屋さんのようだ I'd say that shop is (seems like) a flower shop.
  (Because there are lots of flowers for sale inside.)
- この時計は高いようですね (I'd say) that watch is expensive, isn't it?
  (Because I'm familiar with the brand name.)

ようだ is really a ***-na*** adjective (ような), so it can also go in the middle of a sentence functioning as "is like." The adverbial form ように is also possible. (See also Lesson 54.)

- 徹はＦ１のような車を運転しています Tetsu drives a car that looks like a F1.

ようだ is usually used in written or formal Japanese. On informal occasions, みたいだ is preferred. This is, theoretically, an equivalent to ようだ, that is, an expression based on direct information, with a high degree of certainty. However, みたいだ is used on occasions that don't always have a high degree of certainty. It goes after a verb in its simple form, an ***-i*** or ***-na*** adjective, or a noun.

- フラン君はひげを生やしたみたいだよ！ It looks like Tom has grown a beard!
- あの公園は静かみたいだ That park looks quiet.

みたいだ is also a ***-na*** adjective (みたいな) and it works just like ようだ:

- 徹はＦ１みたいな車を運転しているぞ Tetsu drives a car that looks like a F1.

Probably だろう

だろう is the verb "to be" (です) in the ***-ō*** form (Lesson 34). It is slightly different to other verbs in the ***-ō*** form, because it doesn't have the meaning of "let's . . . ," but is used at the end of a sentence and has two different meanings. The first is expressing a pure conjecture (not necessarily based on previous information). It is added after a noun, an ***-i*** or ***-na*** adjective, or a verb in its simple form. **Note:** The formal version of だろう is でしょう.

- あのパソコンは古(ふる)いだろう That computer is probably old.
- 正子(まさこ)ちゃんは多分来(たぶんこ)ないだろうね I suppose Masako (probably) won't come.
- 木村(きむら)さんの娘(むすめ)さんはきれいでしょう (I imagine) Kimura's daughter is probably beautiful.

The second meaning of だろう is that of a "tag" asking for a reply to the speaker's statement, similar to "isn't it?" or "right?" It's usage is very similar to ね (Lesson 17).

- おい、木村(きむら)！あんたの娘(むすめ)、きれいだろう？ Hey, Kimura! Your daughter is beautiful, isn't she?
- このケーキはおいしいでしょう？ This cake is delicious, isn't it?

Note: It is worth learning these adverbs which are often used in expressions of supposition: 多分 ***tabun*** (perhaps), おそらく (probably), もしかすると/もしかして (possibly), どうやら (likely), ひょっとすると (by chance), and きっと (surely).

Apparently らしい

らしい expresses something the speaker knows because she has heard or read (it repeats information which is not firsthand). It's not as certain as ようだ, or as uncertain as だろう. Add らしい after a noun, an ***-i*** or ***-na*** adjective, or a verb in its simple form.

- ドイツ人(じん)は頑固(がんこ)らしいよ (From what I've read / heard) Germans are stubborn.
- スミスさんはアメリカに帰(かえ)らないらしい (Apparently) Mr. Smith will not be going back to the USA.

らしい is also an ***-i*** adjective meaning "worthy of," "as is expected from," or "becoming," conjugated like any ***-i*** adjective: Negative: らしくない | Past: らしかった | Past negative: らしくなかった.

- 愛(あい)ちゃんは日本人(にほんじん)らしいですね Ai is so Japanese-like.
  (Ai is just like how you'd expect a Japanese girl to be.)
- おい、お前(まえ)！男(おとこ)らしく振(ふ)る舞(ま)え！ Hey, you! Man up! (Act like a man would!)

From what I've heard そうだ (1)

There are two そうだ expressions. The first is similar to the other expressions we have seen: simply add そうだ to a verb, adjective or noun. But with the second one you must "conjugate" verbs and adjectives.

The first そうだ means exactly the same as らしい: we use it to pass on information the speaker has obtained directly from another source. The differences between そうだ (1)

and らしい are that そうだ (1) is completely based on hearsay, whereas らしい is based on what we've heard, seen, read or reasoned. It goes after a verb in its simple form or an ***-i*** adjective. だ must be added between そうだ and ***-na*** adjectives or nouns.

- 宮崎で電車事故があったそうだ (I've heard / read that) in Miyazaki there was a train accident.
- 学校の制服は高かったそうだ (From what I heard) the school uniform was expensive.
- ジムさんは先生だそうですね (From what I've been told) Jim is a teacher, isn't he?

Looks or seems そうだ(2)

The second そうだ has nothing to do with the first one. It expresses conjecture about the state of something, based on what the speaker sees or has seen. そうだ (2) isn't used in the past because it is only used when talking about things that are probably true in the present or might be true in a foreseeable future. Words conjugated with そうだ (2) become ***-na*** adjectives and function as such. そうだ (2) is not used with nouns. Study the usages shown in the table above.

Inflections for そうだ (2)		
Verbs	～ます ＋ そう	倒れる⇒倒れます⇒ 倒れ⇒倒れそうだ To fall ⇒ it looks like it's falling (it's about to fall)
-i adj.	～い ＋ そう	寒い⇒寒⇒寒そうだ cold ⇒ it looks like it's cold
-na adj.	～な ＋ そう	元気な⇒元気⇒元気そうだ cheerful ⇒ he looks cheerful

- あのバイクはとても古そうだ That motorcycle looks very old.
- この仕事は君に出来そうだと思う I think you can (probably) do that job.
- 今日は元気そうな顔をしているね You look cheerful today, don't you?

When used with verbs, そうだ (2) sometimes has the connotation of "to be about to":

- 雪が降りそうですね It looks like it's about to snow, doesn't it?
- 父は怒りそうになった My father looked like he was going to get angry.

Supposed to はずだ and にちがいない

はずだ is used to express that the speaker hopes that what he expects is real. It is equivalent to "supposed to . . ." it goes after a verb in its simple form or an ***-i*** adjective, without adding anything. ***-na*** adjectives keep な. You must add の between a noun and はずだ.

- ベロニカさんは家にいるはずだ (I imagine) Veronica is supposed to be home.
- 彼女は歌が上手なはずです (I'm almost sure) she is supposed to sing very well.

The expression にちがいない expresses something which is "without doubt." We add nothing but にちがいない after a noun, an ***-i*** or ***-na*** adjective, or verb in its simple form.

- ベロニカさんは家(いえ)にいるにちがいない There is no doubt Veronica is home.
- 彼女(かのじょ)は歌(うた)が上手(じょうず)にちがいありません She undoubtedly sings very well.

Finally, here is a summary table of the whole lesson, with the formal versions of each one of the expressions, in brackets.

🎧 Suppositions: General summary table		
かもしれない	Pure supposition	その男は日本人かもしれない（かもしれません） That man might be Japanese (but I'm not sure)
ようだ	Supposition based on something directly perceived and qualified by the speaker's reason or knowledge	その男は日本人のようだ（のようです） (Considering what I see now and what I knew before about the Japanese in general) that man seems to be Japanese
みたい	Informal version of ようだ	その男は日本人みたい（みたいです） (Considering what I see now and what I knew before about the Japanese in general) that man seems to be Japanese
だろう	Pure supposition (not necessarily based on something)	その男は日本人だろう（でしょう） That man is probably Japanese
らしい	Supposition based on something the speaker has heard, seen, or read	その男は日本人らしい（らしいです） (From what I've heard) that man might be Japanese
らしい (2)	Adjective indicating "worthy of" or "to be expected of"	その男は日本人らしくない（らしくありません） That man doesn't behave like a Japanese (although he probably is)
そうだ	Similar to らしい. Supposition based on something read or heard	その男は日本人だそうだ（だそうです） (From what I've heard) that man might be Japanese
そうだ (2)	Supposition based on what the speaker sees or feels, but with medium probability	その男は日本語を話しそうだ（話しそうです） That man (it looks to me) probably speaks Japanese
はずだ	Supposition the speaker almost considers fact	その男は日本人のはずだ（のはずです） That man is (supposed to be) Japanese
にちがいない	Very high probability, almost considered as a fact: "there is no doubt"	その男は日本人にちがいない（にちがいありません） That man is undoubtedly Japanese
男 ***otoko*** man; 日本人 ***nihonjin*** Japanese (person); 日本語 ***nihongo*** Japanese (language); 話す ***hanasu*** to speak		

漫画例 Manga Examples

You might be feeling a little overwhelmed after being exposed to such a massive amount of suppositions and conjectures! Let's take a look now at some examples to help clarify the fine lines between the types of conjectures we have studied.

Manga Example 1: A typical greeting

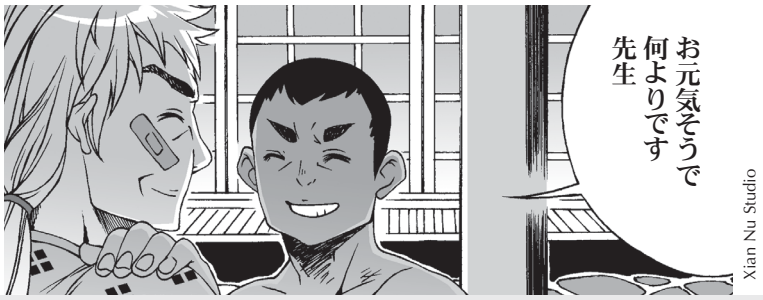
Our first example uses そうだ (2) to make a conjecture based on visual information. The characteristic of そうだ (2) is that it inflects verbs and adjectives. Here the ***-na*** adjective 元気な (healthy, cheerful) becomes 元気そうな (look healthy or cheerful).

The expression in this example, is often used to greet someone you haven't seen for a long time. より means "more than" and we will have a better look at in Lesson 54. The literal translation of this expression is "You look well and there's nothing better than that."

Note: The ***-sō*** form of the negative ない is なさそう. The negative (of adjectives, not verbs) is formed replacing the い in "normal" negatives (Lessons13 and 14) with ～さそ:

- ***-i*** adj.: 青い ***aoi*** | neg: 青くない | ***sō*** neg: 青くなさそう (it doesn't look blue).
- ***-na*** adj.: 元気な | neg: 元気ではない | ***sō*** neg: 元気ではなさそう (it doesn't look cheerful).

There are a couple of exceptions: かわいそう and えらそう. They don't mean "it looks cute" (from かわいい, cute) or "it looks important" (from えらい, important), but "pitiful" and "self-important," respectively. Also note that the ***sō*** form of いい (good) is よさそう (looks good).



Xian Nu Studio

Yajirō: お元気(げんき)そうで何(なに)よりです先生(せんせい)。

(honorific) cheerful (look) what more be teacher

I'm glad to see you (look like you) are well, teacher.

Manga Example 2: A colloquial "perhaps"

Here we see the most colloquial usage of かもしれない (perhaps, maybe, might), shortened to a simple かも which is often used by young people. **Note:** 出ちゃう is the colloquial contraction of 出てしまう (Lesson 35), which literally means "something comes out (and then one might regret it)." The と is used to indicate the conditional.



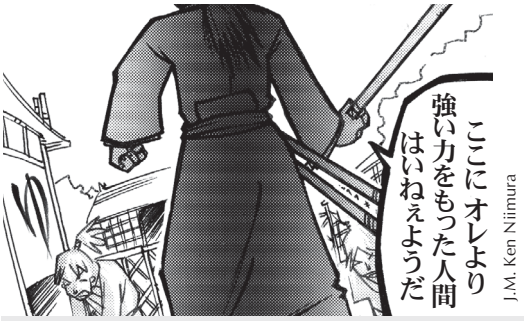
Sawada: 早(はや)くしないと死人(しにん)が出(で)ちゃうかもよ | クス

quickly do (conditional) dead SP come out perhaps EP? | (coy snicker)

If you don't hurry up, someone might end up dying. | He-he . . .

Manga Example 3: Usage of *yō da* for supposition

As we know, ようだ often appears at the end of a sentence. Here, since what comes before ようだ is いねぇ, a vulgar and rough contraction of いない (there isn't), we don't add anything between it and ようだ. The phrase ようだ means "apparently," and is used when the speaker makes a conjecture based on what they see and on what they already know about the situation. Thus, there's a high probability that the conjecture is close to the truth. Here, the character could have used みたいだ instead, a more colloquial expression with a similar meaning. **Note:** As in Example 1, we have here a より (more than), which we will study in Lesson 54.



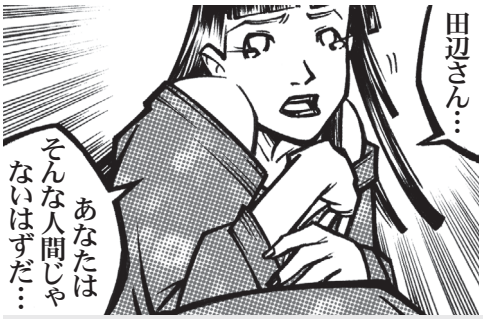
Matsuda: ここに オレより強(つよ)い力(ちから)をもった人間(にんげん)はいねぇようだ

here PP I more than strong strength DOP have human TOP no there is looks like

It appears that there's no one here stronger than me.

Manga Example 4: *Hazu* for almost-certain conjecture

We saw on page 100 that はずだ is almost a statement disguised as a conjecture. As we see in the example, the character uses はずだ to suppose something which is almost assumed as true. This expression is very common in Japanese. **Note:** There are two ways to express the negative of はずだ. The first, as here, is to conjugate the verb in the negative (そんな人間じゃないはずだ). For the second, you negate the だ ending: そんな人間のはずでは(じゃ)ない.

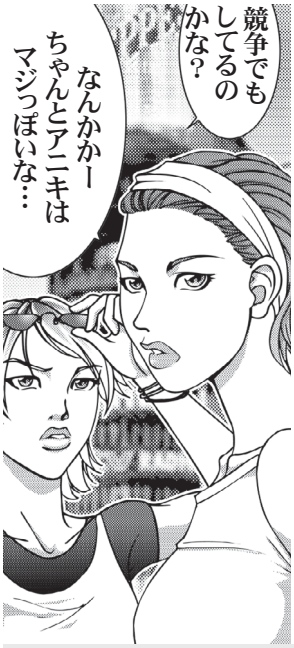


Takada: 田辺(たなべ)さん…あなたはそんな人間(にんげん)じゃないはずだ…

Tanabe SUF . . . you TOP such human no be look like

Mr. Tanabe . . . You're not supposed to be that type of person.

Manga Example 5: Expressing "-ish" with *ppoi*



Generally, the expression っぽい after an adjective means "looks . . ." (赤っぽい ***akappoi***, "reddish"; まじめっぽい "looks serious"), and after verbs like 怒る ***okoru*** (to get angry) or 忘れる ***wasureru*** (to forget) it's more or less like our "-ish" or "-ful" (怒りっぽい,"peevish"; 忘れっぽい, "forgetful"). Traditionally, っぽい has essentially negative connotations. However, there is a growing tendency among the young to use it with non-negative connotations, as in this example. Use the expression by adding っぽい to the verb/adj. root:

- 忘れる ⇒ 忘れ ⇒ 忘れっぽい (forgetful)
- ***-i*** adj.: remove い and add っぽい: 安い ***yasui*** ⇒ 安っぽい (cheap looking)
- ***-na*** adj.: remove な and add っぽい: 元気な ***genki-na*** ⇒ 元気っぽい (looks well).

Mayeen: 競争(きょうそう)でもしてるのかな？ **Emi:** なんかかーちゃんとアニキはマジっぽいな…

competition or do Q? EP? ***I don't know mom CP brother TOP seriously (look) EP***

They're competing? I'd say mom and my brother are serious . . .

Manga Example 6: *Mitai-na* as a comparative

The expressions ような, みたいな and そうな meaning "to be like . . ." can not only go at the end of the sentence, but also in the middle, as they are really ***-na*** adjectives. We will study the comparative form in Lesson 54, but here we have a good example. Placing みたいな after あたし, we obtain あたしみたいなand then あたしみたいな女. Regarding verbs and adjectives inflected in theそうだ (2) form, they become normal ***-na*** adjectives which work like this: 元気な ***genki-na*** (cheerful) ⇒ 元気そうな (looks cheerful) ⇒ 元気そうな男 ***genkisō-na otoko*** (cheerful looking man) | 高い ***takai*** (expensive) ⇒高そうな (looks expensive) ⇒高そうな本 ***takasō-na hon*** (expensive looking book).



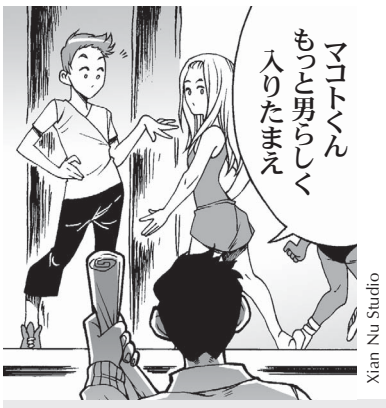
Ami: あたしみたいな女(おんな)をなぜ守(まも)るの！？

I like woman DOP why protect Q?!?

Why are you protecting a woman like me?!

Manga Example 7: As is expected . . .

Finally, here is an example of らしい as an ***-i*** adjective. As we have seen, when らしい functions as an adjective it has the meaning of "as is expected" or "worthy of." Here, we have 男らしい, but here らしい has been transformed into an adverb, 男らしく (manly). らしい can also go in the negative (男らしくない, not manly), in the past (男らしかった, was manly), and in the past negative (男らしくなかった, was not manly). **Note:** We already saw the imperative ～たまえ in Lesson 30. It is used by someone who is or feels superior to the person they are talking to. It is quite authoritarian.



Nobuhito: マコトくん　もっと男(おとこ)らしく入(はい)りたまえ

Makoto SUF more man like come in

Makoto, you must come in more like a man.

Exercises 練習

1 Use かもしれない to give a connotation of doubt to the sentence: ジョンさんは 独身(どくしん) です。(ジョン John; 独身(どくしん) single)

2 What does the expression ようだ mean, and when do we use it? Give an example. Is there an equivalent for it?

3 Translate, using だろう : "I suppose it will rain tomorrow." (tomorrow 明日(あした) ; to rain 雨(あめ)が降(ふ)る)

4 Translate: 斉藤(さいとう) さんはとても金持(かねも)ちだろう？
(斉藤 Saito; とても very; 金持ち rich)

5 Translate: "(I've heard / read that) apparently, the director quit." (director 社長(しゃちょう) ; to quit 辞(や)める)

6 Is the sentence 美穂(みほ)ちゃんは 学生(がくせい) そうだ correct? Why? Which of the two usages of そうだ is it?
(美穂 Miho; 学生 student)

7 Translate: "There is no doubt that Akiko has a boyfriend." (Akiko 晶子 ; boyfriend 彼氏(かれし))

8 Translate: あの 女(おんな) の子(こ)はかわいそうですね。
(女の子 girl)

9 Translate: "This tempura doesn't look good." (tempura 天(てん)ぷら ; good おいしい)

10 Translate: 茂夫(しげお)くんは黒(くろ)っぽい服(ふく)を着(き)ている。
(茂夫 Shigeo; 黒い black; 服 clothes; 着る to wear)

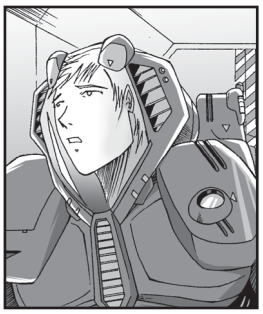
— Answers to all the exercises can be found online by following the link on page 7. —

Lesson 44 • 第 44 課

Transitive and Intransitive Verbs

Let's begin to fine-tune our Japanese by studying transitive and intransitive verbs. This lesson will help you learn a large number of verb pairs.

🎧 What are transitive and intransitive verbs?



A transitive verb takes a direct object, and an intransitive one doesn't. As a simple example, "to remove," "to put" or "to take out" are transitive, and "to arrive," "to swim" or "to run away" are intransitive: one can remove "something" but can't swim "something."

Japanese also has transitive and intransitive verbs, for example, 殺す ***korosu*** (to kill) is transitive, while 死ぬ ***shinu*** (to die) is intransitive. The peculiarity in Japanese are the "pairs" of transitive-intransitive verbs. Sometimes, there are two similar but essentially different verbs for one type of action, a transitive one (which needs a direct object), and an intransitive one (without a direct object). For example, take a look at the pair 始める ***hajimeru*** and 始まる ***hajimaru***. Both mean "to begin" but the first is transitive and the second isn't. With the first, a subject needs to perform the action, whereas with the second, the action is performed "by itself." Look at the examples:

- 香里(かおり)さんは試験(しけん)を始(はじ)めた Kaori began the exam.
- 6時(ろくじ)に試験(しけん)が始(はじ)まる The exam begins at six.

Look at the basic structure, where Y performs the action and X receives the action:

Transitive verb: Y が X を V trans. 香里(かおり)が試験(しけん)を始(はじ)める Kaori begins the exam.

Intransitive verb: X が V intrans. 試験(しけん)が始(はじ)まる The exam begins.

Some recommendations

There is no easy way to learn how to use the transitive-intransitive pairs of verbs except to learn them by heart, using the table on page 109 to help you. We have divided the verbs according to the changes they undergo when changing from intransitive into transitive (some change from ***-aru*** to ***-eru***, others from ***-reru*** to ***-su***, etc.)

You will see the kanji reading rarely varies: only the ending changes. Three exceptions are 消える ***kieru*** (to be put out, to disappear) and 消す ***kesu*** (to put out, to erase); 出る ***deru*** (to go out) and 出す ***dasu*** (to take out); 入る ***hairu*** (to go in) and 入れる ***ireru*** (to put

in). Often, the meaning of each pair of verbs is identical, but when translating here we use the passive form ("the door is opened," "the child is found," "the fire is put out"). This is a trick to memorize and better understand how these verbs work.

聞こえる and 見える

In Lesson 32 in Volume 1, we saw that the verbs 聞こえる ***kikoeru*** (to hear) and 見える ***mieru*** (to see) are different to 聞く ***kiku*** (to hear) and 見る ***miru*** (to see): the former indicate seeing or hearing something unconsciously or passively, while the latter indicate seeing or hearing something because that is what one wants to do. Indeed, they are two pairs of transitive-intransitive verbs: 聞こえる and 見える are intransitive, whereas 聞く and 見る are transitive:

- 波の音が聞こえる You can hear the sound of the waves. (intransitive)
- 純子さんは波の音を聞いている Junko is listening to the sound of the waves. (transitive)
- ここからは富士山が見える You can see Mount Fuji from here. (intransitive)
- 私は富士山を見るのは初めてです This is the first time I've seen Mount Fuji. (transitive)

More examples

Let's study a few examples with some of the pairs of verbs from the table opposite:

- 人々が会場に集まった People gathered in the hall. (intransitive)
- 僕は書類を全部集めました I gathered all the documents. (transitive)
- 私の家が燃えました My house was burnt down. (intransitive)
- その葉っぱを燃やしてください Burn those leaves, please. (transitive)
- マイクはレストランに入りました Mike went into the restaurant. (intransitive)
- ママは卵を冷蔵庫に入れた Mom put the eggs in the fridge. (transitive)

Notice that often when we translate intransitive sentences, we use the passive form.

A final example is the pair 落ちる ***ochiru*** (to fall) and 落とす ***otosu*** (to drop). If you drop a vase and use 落ちる, you are saying the vase fell; if you use 落とす, you are saying you let the vase drop. This shows the difference between transitive and intransitive verbs.

Compound verbs

Compound verbs in Japanese are formed with the root of the verb (the ***-masu*** form without the final ます), plus the appropriate ending. The ending やすい means "easy to . . ."

分かる (to understand) ⇒ ***-masu*** form: 分かります ⇒ Root: 分かり ⇒ We add ～やすい : 分かりやすい (easy to understand).

Pairs of transitive and intransitive verbs

Intransitive		Transitive	
-aru		***-eru***	
上がる	to rise	上げる	to raise
集まる	to be gathered	集める	to gather
終わる	to end	終える	to finish
変わる	to change	変える	to change
決まる	to be decided	決める	to decide
下がる	to go down	下げる	to lower
閉まる	to be closed	閉める	to close
かかる	to be hung	かける	to hang
静まる	to calm down	静める	to calm
高まる	to rise	高める	to raise
助かる	to be saved	助ける	to save
捕まる	to be caught	捕まえる	to catch
伝わる	to be transmitted	伝える	to convey
止まる	to stop	止める	to stop
始まる	to begin	始める	to begin
曲がる	to be bent	曲げる	to bend
見つかる	to be found	見つける	to find
-reru		***-su***	
現れる	to appear	現す	to show
壊れる	to be broken	壊す	to break
離れる	to separate	離す	to separate
倒れる	to fall	倒す	to throw dwn.
汚れる	to be stained	汚す	to stain
-reru		***-ru***	
売れる	to sell	売る	to sell
折れる	to be folded	折る	to fold
割れる	to be broken	割る	to break
-ru		***-su***	
写る	to be reflected	写す	to reflect
返る	to return	返す	to give back
帰る	to go back	帰す	to let go back
通る	to pass	通す	to pass
直る	to be mended	直す	to correct
治る	to recover	治す	to cure

Intransitive		Transitive	
残る	to be left	残す	to leave
回る	to turn round	回す	to turn
戻る	to go back	戻す	to give back
-eru		***-asu***	
遅れる	to be late	遅らす	to make late
逃げる	to escape	逃がす	to let escape
冷える	to get cold	冷やす	to cool
増える	to be increased	増やす	to increase
燃える	to be on fire	燃やす	to burn
-u		***-asu***	
動く	to move	動かす	to move
飛ぶ	to fly	飛ばす	to make fly
泣く	to cry	泣かす	to make cry
-u		***-eru***	
開く	to be open	開ける	to open
片付く	to be tidy	片付ける	to tidy up
育つ	to grow up	育てる	to bring up
立つ	to stand	立てる	to erect
付く	to stick to	付ける	to attach
続く	to continue	続ける	to continue
届く	to arrive	届ける	to deliver
Other verbs			
生まれる	to be born	生む	to give birth
起きる	to get up	起こす	to raise
落ちる	to fall	落とす	to drop
降りる	to get off	降ろす	to drop off
下りる	to get down	下ろす	to take down
消える	to be put out	消す	to put out
聞こえる	to be heard	聞く	to hear
出る	to go out	出す	to take out
脱げる	to come off	脱ぐ	to take off
乗る	to ride in	乗せる	to carry
入る	to go in	入れる	to put in
見える	to be seen	見る	to see
分かれる	to be divided	分ける	to divide

汚れる (to be stained) ⇒ ***-masu*** form: 汚れます ⇒ Root: 汚れ ⇒ We add ～やすい : 汚れやすい (easily stained).

- 先生の授業は分かりやすいです The professor's classes are easy to understand.
- この服はとても汚れやすいね These clothes are very easily soiled, aren't they?

Easy to and hard to

The endings ～やすい (easy to) and ～にくい (hard to) work like ***-i*** adjectives.

- この音楽は聞きにくい This music is hard to listen to.
- あのマンガはとても読みやすかったです That manga was very easy to read.
- 日本は住みにくくない国だ Japan is a country where it isn't hard to live.

Start doing, finish doing and keep on doing

We can also add ～始める ***hajimeru*** (start doing), ～終わる ***owaru*** (finish doing), and ～続く ***tsuzuku*** (keep on doing) to a verb root. The resultant verb works like any other verb: you can conjugate it in the ***-te***, ***-ō***, ***-tai***, and many other forms.

- 先生は急に話し始めました The teacher suddenly started talking.
- レポートを書き終わってください Finish writing that report, please.
- 彼は来ないから、飲み続けよう！ Since he's not coming, let's keep on drinking!

Other auxiliary verbs for creating compounds

Other auxiliary verbs are ～終わる and ～続ける as shown in the table below.

Compound verbs with 食べる (*taberu*, to eat)		
～やすい	easy to . . .	食べやすい easy to eat
～にくい	hard to . . .	食べにくい hard to eat
～始める	to start doing . . .	食べ始める to start eating
～終わる	to finish doing . . .	食べ終わる to finish eating
～続ける	to keep on doing . . .	食べ続ける to keep on eating
～かける	nearly, half (intrans.)	食べかける to leave something half-eaten

漫画例 Manga Examples

Transitive and intransitive verbs can be difficult to master perfectly. If you make mistakes, keep on trying, and learn from your errors: this is the only way to improve.

Manga Example 1: A pair of transitive-intransitive verbs

Let's look at the verb pair 出る ***deru*** and 出す ***dasu***. The transitive verb is 出す (to take out) and requires a subject to perform the action (in this case the subject is "the vegetables"), and a direct object, which receives the action (in this case, 甘味). The intransitive verb 出る only needs a subject, 風味 , and there is no direct object. Notice another transitive verb, 入れる ***ireru*** (to put in). The subject is most likely "I," and the direct object is 砂糖. The intransitive version of 入れる is 入る ***hairu*** (to go in). 私が入る ***Watashi ga hairu*** means "I go in." You should study 出る and 出す and 入る and 入れる carefully.



Yōichi: ただの砂糖(さとう)を入(い)れるんじゃ風味(ふうみ)が出(で)ない…

normal POP sugar DOP put in then flavor SP go out . . .

Adding normal sugar won't bring out the flavor . . .

野菜(やさい)を使(つか)ってかくし味(あじ)の甘味(かんみ)を出(だ)してやるんだ…！

vegetables DOP use hidden flavor POP sweetness DOP take out do . . . !

You must use vegetables to bring out the sweet hidden flavor!

Manga Example 2: "To decide," transitive version

The Japanese word for transitive verb is 他動詞 ***tadōshi*** (他, "other"; 動詞, "verb"), "verb whose action is performed by another subject." The transitive verb in this example, 決める, means "to decide." As a transitive verb, it requires "another" subject (it is omitted here, but it would be "I") to perform the action of the verb on a direct object (in this case, 名前). Therefore, 私は名前を決める means "I decide the name." **Note:** In spoken Japanese, certain particles are sometimes left out, を in this case (名前を決める). Notice also the まだ, which we saw in Lesson 40.



Jirō: そういえば…名前(なまえ)まだ決(き)めてなかったな…
that say . . . name still decide EP . . .
Speaking of which . . . I still haven't decided the name . . .

Manga Example 3: "To be decided," intransitive version

The Japanese for intransitive verb is 自動詞 ***jidōshi*** (自, "oneself"; 動詞, "verb"),"verb whose action is performed by oneself." We saw the transitive verb 決める in the previous example, and we will now study its intransitive partner, 決まる which means "to be decided." Here the action is performed by "oneself," there is no direct object. In the example, the subject (the one performing the action), is left out, but it could be 試合が決まる ***shiai ga kimaru*** (the match will be decided). In English we often use the passive form to translate intransitive verbs. **Note:** The counter used to count shots, 本, is usually used to count long and thin things, such as pencils, trees, toothpicks, etc. (Lesson 25).



Hideki: あと一本(いっぽん)のドライブシュートできまるんだ！
After one (counter)! POP drive shoot IP can be!
This will be decided with one more drive shoot!

Manga Example 4: Something "gets cold" (intransitive)

The verb 冷える is an intransitive verb whose action is performed by "itself." The wind (風) cools down (冷える) by itself, no one cools it down. If we wanted to say "God cools down the wind," we would use 冷やす the transitive verb: 神様は風を冷やす ***kamisama wa kaze o hiyasu***, as it would be someone else (神様) doing the cooling down. **Note:** Take a moment to review the other grammatical structures in this sentence. We have a formal ***-ō*** form (帰りましょう, Lesson 34), a 〜てくる construction (Lesson 35), and even a conjecture with 〜ようだ (Lesson 43).



Yoneda: 帰(かえ)りましょう…風(かぜ)が冷(ひ)えてきたようだ

go back . . . wind SP cool down come looks like

Let's go back . . . It looks like the wind has cooled down.

Manga Example 5: Someone "conveys" something (transitive)



The verb 伝える in this sentence is transitive. Its intransitive counterpart is 伝わる. Here, the speaker asks someone to convey a message to another person. A summary of the sentence, would be something like あなたはメッセージを伝える (you convey the message). But if the message were to be conveyed by itself, we would use the intransitive form: メッセージが伝わる (the message is transmitted). **Notes:** 〜てくれ is the imperative form of 〜てくれる (somebody else does you a favor, Lesson 45). Notice the second と: it is the "quote" usage that we studied on page 81, Lesson 41).

Sano: 女房(にょうぼう)と娘(むすめ)に…「パパは最後(さいご)までがんばった」と伝(つた)えてくれ

wife CP daughter IOP . . . "dad TOP end until hold out" SBP convey (imperative)

Tell my wife and my daughter . . . that, "dad held out till the end."

Manga Example 6: An intransitive compound verb

In this example we have another intransitive verb, 燃える. If there was a subject responsible for the fire (let's say a 泥棒 ***dorobō***, "thief"), we would have to use 燃やす, its transitive counterpart : 泥棒が倉を燃やす.

Notice also how the compound verb 燃え出す ***moedasu*** has been formed. We have already seen that adding ～出す to a verb means "begin to" or "burst into" (with the connotation of violence or speed). 燃え出す means "begin to burn (quickly, suddenly)."

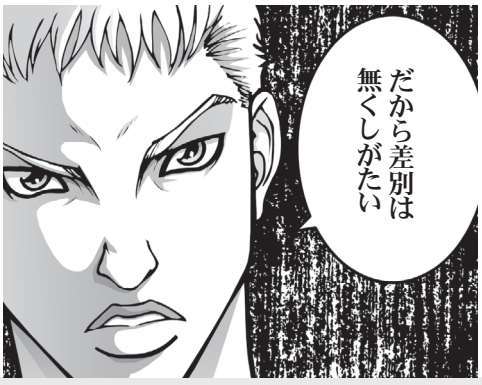


Xian Nu Studio

Man: きてくれーっ 倉(くら)が燃(も)えだしたぁっ
come (imperative) warehouse SP burn (go out)
Come! The warehouse is burning!

Manga Example 7: More compounds

Here the ending ～がたい means something like ～にくい (hard to . . .), but is more formal and stronger. Compound verbs with ～がたい are formed in the same way as ～にくい and ～やすい: add ～がたいto the root of the verb (***-masu*** form without ます), for example**:** 許す ***yurusu*** (to forgive) ⇒ ***-masu*** form: 許します ⇒ remove ます ⇒ 許し ⇒ add ～がたい: 許しがたい (hard to forgive). The resultant verb functions like an ***-i*** adjective. There are a few more endings or auxiliary verbs, such as ～合う ***au*** (mutually) or ～きる (to completely finish). However, for the moment, those we have studied will be sufficient.



Studio Kōsen

Nishida: だから差別(さべつ)は無(な)くしがたい
therefore discrimination TOP lose (hard to)
I'm telling you discrimination is hard to eradicate.

Exercises 練習

1 Which of these verbs are transitive and which intransitive? 変える, 続く, 通す, 壊れる, 開く, 残る.

2 Give the transitive or intransitive counterparts (depending on each case) of the verbs in the previous question.

3 What are the intransitive counterparts of the transitive verbs 入れる, 出す, 助ける and 聞く?

4 Translate: "Reiko turned the TV off." (Reiko 礼子; TV テレビ)

5 Translate: "Suddenly, the light went off." (suddenly 突然; light 電気)

6 Is this sentence correct? 窓が閉めました。 Why/why not? (窓 window)

7 Translate: 鳥の声が庭から聞こえましたよ。 (鳥 bird; 声 voice; 庭 garden)

8 Translate: "This lesson is hard to understand" using a compound verb. (lesson 課; to understand 分かる)

9 Translate: 中国語を勉強し始めたいです。 (中国語 Chinese (language); 勉強する to study)

10 Form two sentences, one using 決める and the other using 決まる.

— Answers to all the exercises can be found online by following the link on page 7. —

Lesson 45 • 第 45 課

To Give and to Receive

In Lesson 28 we looked at the verbs meaning to give and to receive: あげる, もらう and くれる. At that time we just skimmed through them, because these are essential verbs in Japanese and it was advisable for you to know about them at a relatively early stage in your learning. Now the time has come to study them in depth.

The concept of *uchi* and *soto*

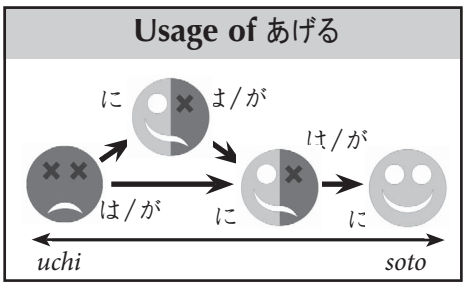
We will start by explaining two characteristically Japanese concepts: 内 ***uchi*** (inside) and 外 ***soto*** (outside). The Japanese distinguish between what is "inside" their group (内) and what is "outside" it (外), and this distinction is present in all aspects of everyday life:

Everyday life:	内: me, my closest family.
	外: any other person (not-so-close family is closer to 内).
School:	内: me, my classmates, my course tutor, my club.
	外: any other teacher, people from other classes, clubs, and schools.
Work:	内: me, my workmates (including my bosses).
	外: anybody belonging to another company, a client or a supplier.

There are gradations: one can get closer to the 内 group of another person in a deep, lasting relationship: the deeper the relationship, the closer to 内. For example, a boy and a girl meet (a completely 外 relationship), become friends (still 外 to each other, but less so), fall in love and start dating (now they are more ***uchi*** than 外) and finally marry (100% 内).

The point of view is essential: which part of the sentence carries the most weight, who is speaking, and who performs a certain action. It is important that all these aspects are clear.

The verb あげる



Let's look at the usage of the three verbs expressing relationships of "giving" and "receiving," あげる, もらう and くれる.

In the diagram, right, the bottom arrow shows the 内 – 外 relationship. The more to the left, the more 内 the character is; the more to the right, the more 外. A smiling face shows the character "receives" something. A surly face means the character "gives" something (the half-half faces indicate they are both receiving and giving). Dark faces represent the main point of view (the character responsible for the action). The particles used by each character are also shown. The verb あげる is used to mean "give."

- 私(わたし)は友達(ともだち)に薬(くすり)をあげる I give my friend some medicine.
- 妻(つま)は井口(いぐち)さんにサーカスの切符(きっぷ)をあげた My wife gave Mr. Iguchi a ticket for the circus.
- 警察官(けいさつかん)はおじいさんに新聞(しんぶん)をあげた The policeman gave the old man a newspaper.
- 先生(せんせい)は来客(らいきゃく)にお土産(みやげ)をあげました The teacher gave the visitor a souvenir.

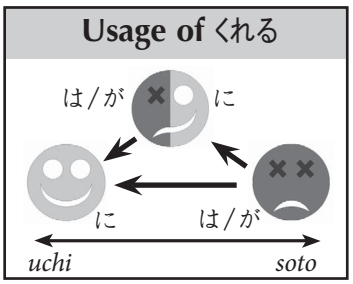
Note: The verb あげる is <u>never</u> used in sentences such as "Hanako gave me (me or someone in the 内 group) a flower." In this case, we use the verb くれる.

The verb もらう

もらう means "to receive," used to express: "I or someone in the 内 group receives something." **Note:** The giver can be marked by either に or から.

- 私(わたし)は息子(むすこ)にケーキをもらう I receive a cake from my son.
- 僕(ぼく)は同僚(どうりょう)にいいアドバイスをもらった I received a good piece of advice from a colleague.
- 娘(むすめ)は友達(ともだち)からプレゼントをもらいました My daughter received a present from a friend.
- 高(たか)い時計(とけい)をもらって、とてもうれしい I received an expensive watch and I'm happy.

The verb くれる



The verb くれる is like a mixture of あげる and もらう, and is hard to master if we are not sure who is performing the action or of the 内 – 外 relationship. くれる is used when the "giver" is someone 外 (he can also be 内, but it is not common), and the "receiver" must be someone in the 内 group. The point of view is placed on the <u>giver</u>, never on the receiver. The sentence "Hanako gave me a flower" must, then, use くれる. Study the diagram to understand this better: "I" (内) am the smiling light gray face on the left, and "Hanako" (外) is the surly dark gray face on the right.

- 花子(はなこ)は私(わたし)に花(はな)をくれた Hanako gave me a flower | I received a flower from Hanako.
- 友達(ともだち)は娘(むすめ)にアドバイスをくれた A friend gave my daughter some advice.
- ジョンは(私(わたし)に)その本(ほん)をくれると思(おも)うよ I think John will give me that book.
- 彼(かれ)はいい人(ひと)だから、お金(かね)をくれた As he is a good person, he gave me (or 内) some money.

The concept of *tate*

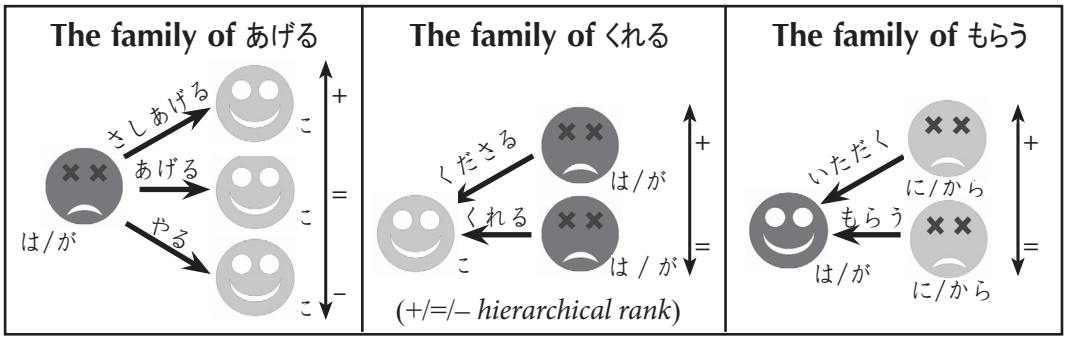
Japanese society is divided along a vertical axis called 縦 ***tate***. There are those in superior positions to oneself, those in equivalent positions and those in inferior positions. This is also reflected in language. The verbs あげる, くれる and もらう have "families" of verbs whose usage depends on these distinctions (see diagrams, below). For example, we use あげる when we give something to somebody in the same position as us, but if their position is superior, we use さしあげる. If we are giving something to someone in an inferior position we use やる. The verbs もらう and くれる have no "inferior" versions, only neutral and superior: いただく and くださる, respectively. Let's look at some examples:

- 私(わたし)は先生(せんせい)にプレゼントをさしあげたい I want to give the teacher a present.
- 僕(ぼく)は弟(おとうと)にお金(かね)をやった I gave my younger brother some money.
- 彼(かれ)は犬(いぬ)におもちゃをやった He gave the dog a toy.
- 私(わたし)は井上(いのうえ)さんに１万円(いちまんえん)をいただいた I received 10,000 yen from Mr. Inoue.
- 井上(いのうえ)さんは私(わたし)に１万円(いちまんえん)をくださった Mr. Inoue gave me 10,000 yen.
- お客様(きゃくさま)は微笑(ほほえ)みをくださいました The client gave (offered) me a smile.

Note: The Japanese don't usually show "superiority" to anybody, so the やる is limited to family (sentence 2), close friends, or animals (sentence 3). Don't use it; it sounds arrogant.

あげる, もらう and くれる as auxiliary verbs

These verbs can function as auxiliary verbs following verbs in the ***-te*** form. For example, 私は花子に花を買ってあげた ***watashi wa Hanako ni hana o katte ageta*** literally means "I bought a flower for Hanako" (and, doing so, I did her a favor). The usage of あげる, くれる and もらう (and their respective "families") as auxiliary verbs is identical to their usage as main verbs (so the previous explanatory diagrams are valid here), and they add the connotations of "doing/being done a favor" to sentences. These constructions are common so it is advisable to learn their usage well.



- 友達に英語を教えてあげたい I want to teach my friend English.
- 私は妹にケーキを焼いてやる I bake a cake for my younger sister.
- 先生に本を貸してさしあげました I lent my teacher a book.
- りんごをもらってきた I went (and came back) to receive some apples.
- 先生は娘に親切してくださっています The teacher is kind to my daughter.
- 友達は彼女にマンガを買ってくれた My friend bought my girlfriend a comic.
- 説明していただきたいんですけど I'd like you to explain this (to me)

🎧 Way of: ～方

Let's look at how to form nouns from verbs meaning "way of . . . ing." Simply add ～方 ***kata*** to the root of the verb (***-masu*** form without the final ます). For example: 書く ***kaku*** (to write) ⇒ ***-masu*** form: 書きます ⇒ root: 書き ⇒ add ～方: 書き方 (way of writing).

With suru verbs, place の between the noun and the する verb :洗濯のし方.

- 焼きそばの作り方は簡単です (The way of) making yakisoba is very simple.
- この漢字の書き方を忘れた I have forgotten how (the way) to write this kanji.
- 洗濯のし方を教えてください Please teach me (the way) to do the washing.

🎧 Not much: あまり

The adverb あまり means "not much," used with verbs and adjectives in the negative. Sometimes, あまり, when adding に, is used with non-negative verbs and adjectives, and it then means "so much" or "very much." See the last two examples directly below.

- サラは日本語があまり上手ではない Sarah is not very good at Japanese.
- 寿司はあまり好きじゃない I don't like sushi much.
- 今日はあまり歌いたくない Today, I don't feel very much like singing.
- あまりに眠かったので授業で寝てしまった I was so tired I fell asleep in class.
- あまりに失礼だったから殴ってしまった He was so rude, I hit (punched) him.

Let's also look here at the use of the adverb とても, meaning "very."

- ダンは日本語がとても上手です Dan is very good at Japanese.

Pay attention to the distinction between とても (very) and たくさん (a lot).

- 漢字はとても難しいです Kanji are very difficult.
- 漢字はたくさんあります There are a lot of kanji.

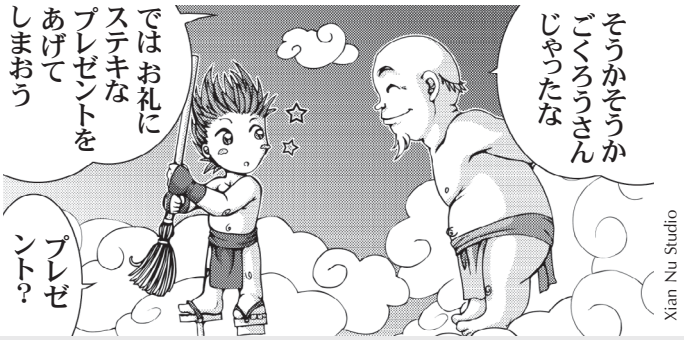
漫画例 Manga Examples

We hope this lesson has helped you start mastering the verbs of giving and receiving. Let's look at a few manga examples to help you remember these new concepts.

Manga Example 1: The verb *ageru*

As you know あげる is used to indicate "give." Be careful, because when someone gives something to somebody in the ***uchi*** group we must use くれる and not あげる. In all other cases, we use あげる.

Here, Kani is going to give Kudō a present. The point of view is of the speaker himself, who is also the performer of the action of giving: therefore, あげる is used. Notice how the verbs to give and to receive are normal verbs, and conjugated as such. Here, あげる is in the ***-te*** form with the 〜しまう construction (Lesson 35), indicating "to finish doing something completely." 〜しまう is conjugated in the ***-ō*** form (Lesson 34), which gives the whole sentence the sense of "I'm going to give you (completely)." **Notes:** ごくろうさん is the informal version of ご苦労様 (Lesson 27), literally "thank you for getting tired." じゃったな is the version of だったな used by older men.



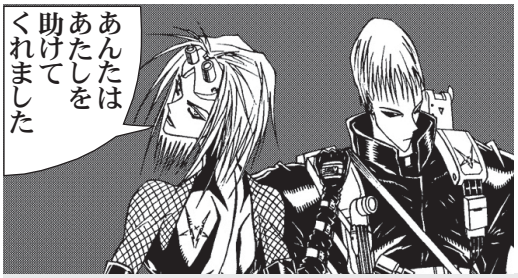
Kani: そうかそうか　ごくろうさんじゃったな
that Q? that Q? good job be EP
Well, well . . . You have done a good job.

Kani: では　お礼(れい)にステキなプレゼントをあげてしまおう
well gratitude for nice present DOP give going to
Well then, I shall give you a nice present to thank you.

Kudō: プレゼント？
present?
A present?

Manga Example 2: *Kureru* as an auxiliary verb

くれる functions as an auxiliary verb in this example. The verbs of giving and receiving often appear combined with other verbs conjugated in the ***-te*** form. This sentence is very clear: we see あんた perform the action of giving, and あんた is also the point of view (marked with the particle は). Receiving the action is あたし, who is in the ***uchi*** group, therefore くれる is the logical option. くれる as an auxiliary verb adds the nuance of "doing a favor." Thus, 助けてくれる would literally mean something like "someone does the favor of saving somebody in the ***uchi*** group."



Gabriel Luque

Phoebe: あんたはあたしを助(たす)けてくれました
you TOP I DOP save (favor)
You saved me.

Manga Example 3: The usage of *yaru* and the imperative *-kure*

Here, there are two forms to highlight. First, ～てやる, that is, やる as an auxiliary verb. Remember やる belongs to the family of あげる and is used when speaking to people in an "inferior" position. Walter uses やる to get the other person to understand his supposed superiority, or simply to act cool: this usage often appears in manga, but in real life is rarely used because it is too rude and arrogant.

The second form is ～てくれ. The imperative くれ, (Lesson 30) is often used to give orders. In this case, we have 飲んでくれ, which literally means "do me (me or someone in the ***uchi*** group) a favor and drink." The pure imperative 飲め (Drink!) is much stronger. **Note:** Walter gives the other person a pill, and asks him to 飲んでくれ. (Curiously enough, in Japanese one doesn't "take" medicine, but "drinks" it.)

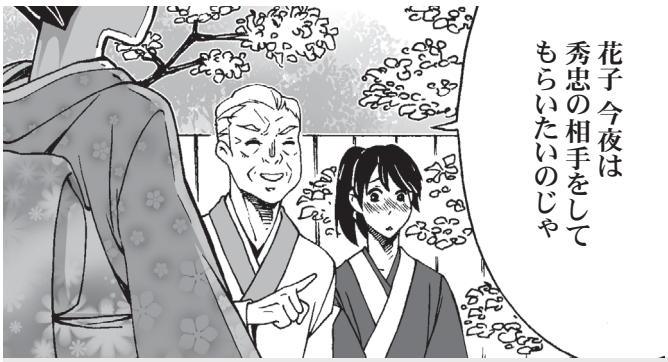


J.M. Ken Niimura

Walter: いいとも、会(あ)わせてやるぜ。そのまえにこれを飲(の)んでくれ。
all right (emphasis), put together (allow to) EP. that before this DOP drink (order)
All right, I'll fix you up with her. But before that, take this (pill).

Manga Example 4: *Morau* as an auxiliary verb

Here もらう functions as an auxiliary verb. Ieyasu tells Hanako he "wants to receive" (もらいたい) something from her (in this case an action) for Hidetada. Remember もらう is used to say "I or someone in the ***uchi*** group receives something. Hidetada is Ieyasu's son and, therefore, belongs to his ***uchi*** group, which justifies the usage of もらう. The basic sentence would be 秀忠は花子に相手をしてもらう (Hidetada receives the fact of Hanako entertaining him). **Note:** 相手 means "addressee," "opponent," etc., but the expression 相手をする means to "keep company," "take care of," or "entertain." のじゃ is a distortion of のだ (Lesson 40), used by older men.



Ieyasu: 花子(はなこ) 今夜(こんや)は秀忠(ひでただ)の相手(あいて)をしてもらいたいのじゃ

Hanako tonight* TOP *Hidetada* POP *the other* DOP *do receive* POP *be

Hanako, I want you to entertain Hidetada tonight.

Manga Example 5: Usage of *kudasaru*

Formality levels are important in Japan (see Lesson 52. Giving and receiving verbs have formal and informal versions depending on the occasion. Here we have 下さる, the formal version of くれる, as an auxiliary verb. It literally means "I or someone in the ***uchi*** group receives something from/is done a favor by someone I respect and treat with formality." The expression ～てください (please) comes from ～てくださる. **Notes:** 方 is the formal word for 人 ***hito*** (person), used to show respect (Lesson 52). The suffix たち denotes the plural: 子どもたち ***kodomotachi*** (children), 先生たち ***senseitachi*** (teachers), 洋一たち ***Yōichitachi*** (Yoichi and the others). わざわざ means "expressly" or "(somebody other than me) takes the trouble to do something."



Man: この方(かた)たちトオルのお友達(ともだち)でわざわざ東京(とうきょう)からたずねて来(き)て下(くだ)さったのよ

***this people Tooru* POP *friend expressly Tokyo from visit come (favor)* EP EP**

These people are Tooru's friends and have taken the trouble to come from Tokyo to visit him.

Manga Example 6: Usage of *-kata*



Gabriel Luque

The suffix ～方 means "way of doing something." In our manga example we have the word まわし方, which means "way of spinning" and obviously comes from the transitive verb 回す (to spin): ***-masu*** form ⇒ 回します, root ⇒ 回し, add ～方 ⇒ 回し方 (way of spinning).

Takeo says, literally, (コマの)回し方を教えて "Teach me the way of spinning (the spinning top)," but we have chosen a more natural form, "Teach me how to make it spin." **Note:** There is an example of the usage of the "softening" or "assertive" tag んだ at the end of the first sentence. (Lesson 40, Manga Example 4).

Takeo: 父(とう)ちゃんコマ買(か)ったんだよ　まわし方(かた)　教(おし)えてー

Dad spinning TOP buy be EP spin (way of) teach

I have bought a spinning top, Dad. Teach me how to make it spin!

Manga Example 7: Usage of *amari*



J.M. Ken Niimura

Here we see the word あんまり, a colloquial distortion of the word あまり meaning "not much." Notice that the verb that goes with あまり (when this means "not much") must be conjugated in the negative. If you say 肉をあまり食べた, with the verb 食べる in the affirmative, this would mean "I ate a lot of (too much) meat." **Notes:** Sometimes (mainly in women and children's speech) the honorific prefix お～ is placed before some words: おトイレ, お肉, etc. Notice too, the usage of ～し as a "softener" of sentences. We we will study this in Lesson 46.

Emi: ママ　おトイレ長(なが)いなァ…

Mom toilet DP go besides . . .

Mom has gone to the toilet . . .

お肉(にく)あんまり食(た)べなかったしー

meat not much eat besides

And she hasn't eaten much meat . . .

Exercises 練習

1 Which of these people are ***uchi*** and which are ***soto***? Me, the tailor, my mother, the cook, my sister, my brother-in-law.

Translate: "I give the girl a candy." (girl 女の子; candy あめ) **2**

3 In 友達は由美に本をくれた, who gives and who receives? Why is the verb くれる used? (友達 friend; 由美 Yumi)

What is the difference between the sentences 私はジョンにビールをもらう and ジョンは私にビールをくれる? **4**

5 Translate: "I receive a bribe from the government." (bribe わいろ; government 政府) (The government is superior.)

Translate, using an auxiliary verb: "I want to buy the parrot a pencil." (to buy 買う; pencil えんぴつ; parrot オウム) **6**

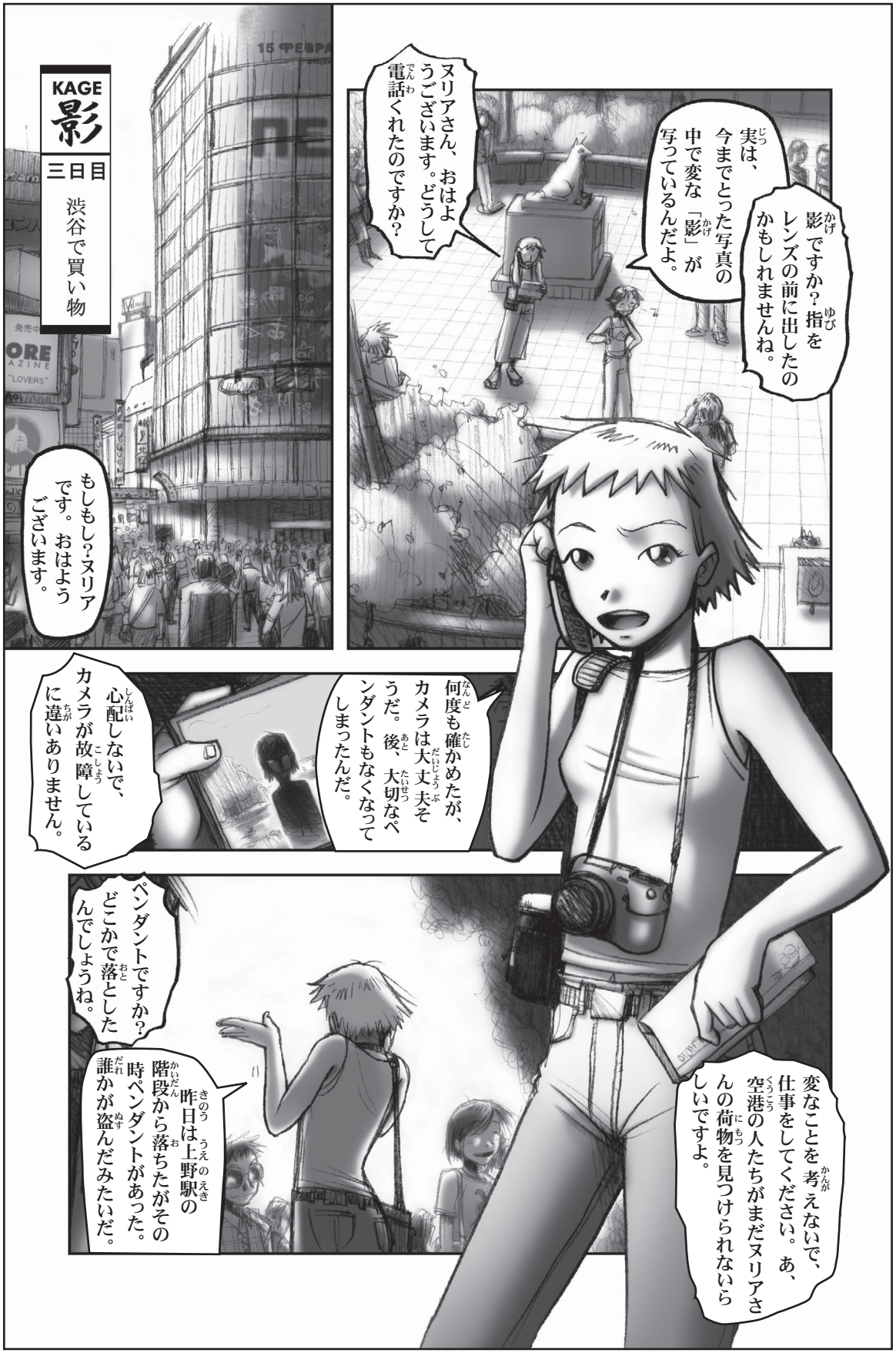
7 Translate: 足立さんはスピーチをしてくださった。(足立 Adachi; スピーチ speech). What does the usage of くださる imply?

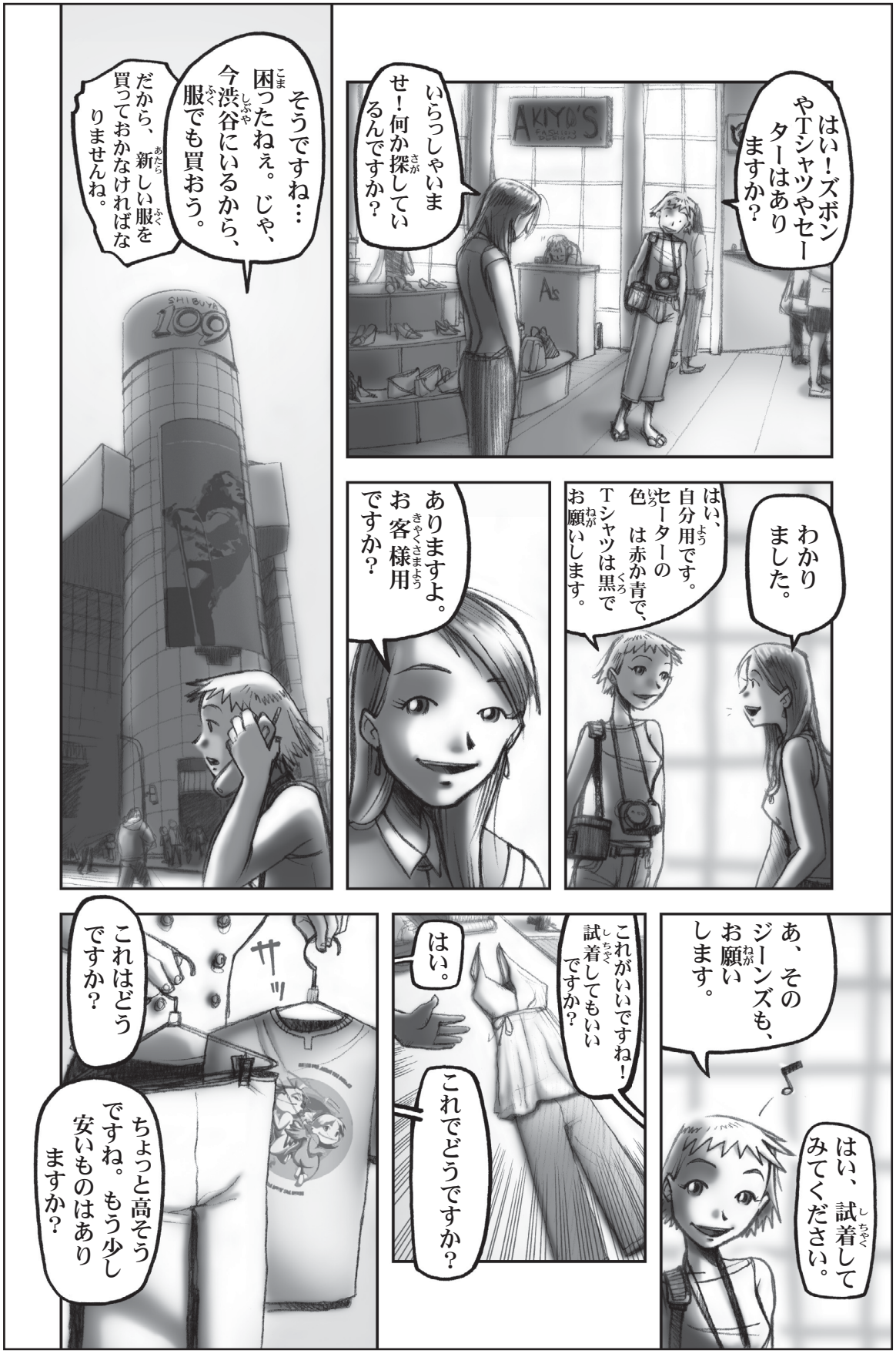
Turn the following verbs into nouns with the meaning "way of": 食べる, 働く, 勝つ, 買う, 飲む and 破る. **8**

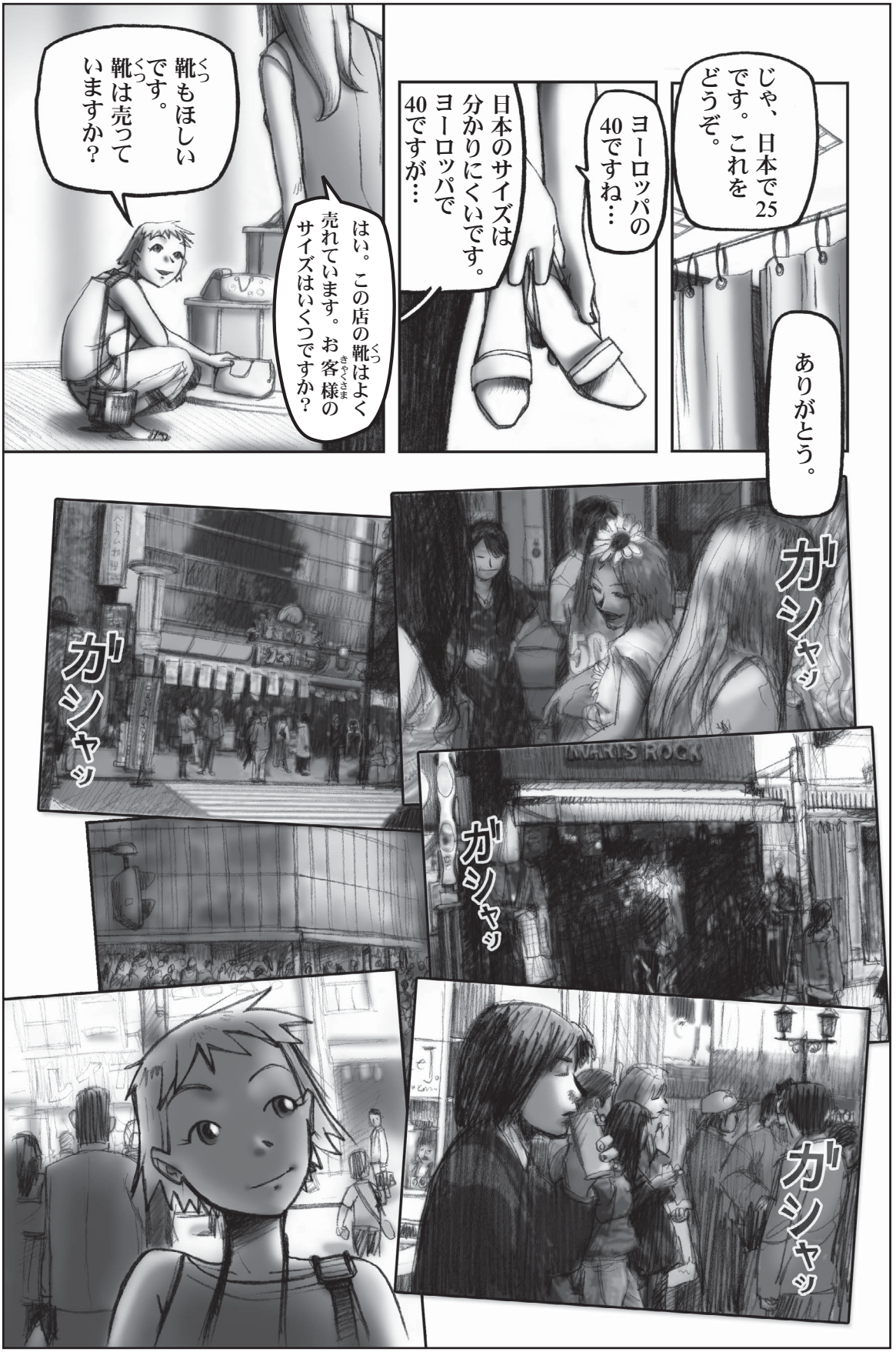
9 Translate: "Since I didn't work much yesterday, I worked overtime." (yesterday 昨日; to work 働く; to work overtime 残業する)

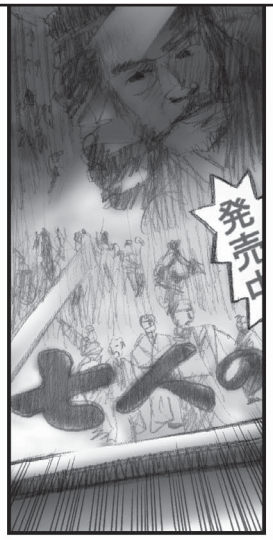
Translate: 阪神タイガーズ、この試合に勝ってくれ。(阪神タイガーズ Hanshin Tigers; 試合 match; 勝つ to win) **10**

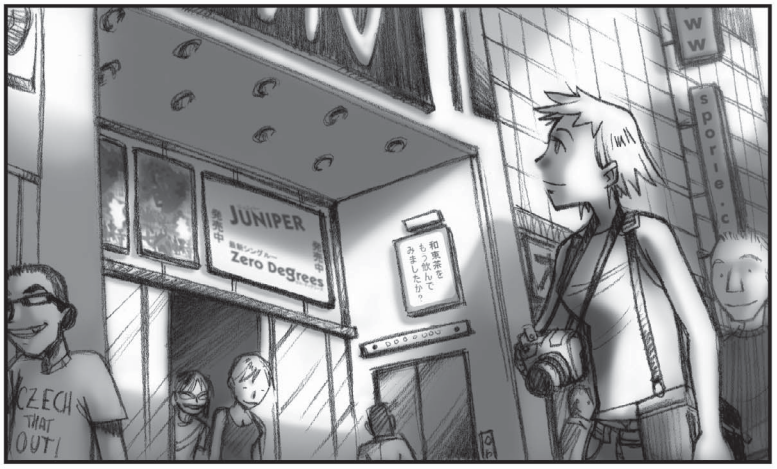
— Answers to all the exercises can be found online by following the link on page 7. —


KAGE
影
三日目
渋谷で買い物
もしもし？ヌリアです。おはようございます。
ヌリアさん、おはようございます。どうして電話くれたのですか？
影ですか？指をレンズの前に出したのかもしれませんね。
実は、今までとった写真の中で変な「影」が写っているんだよ。
何度も確かめたが、カメラは大丈夫そうだ。後、大切なペンダントもなくなってしまったんだ。
心配しないで、カメラが故障しているに違いありません。
変なことを考えないで、仕事をしてください。あ、空港の人たちがまだヌリアさんの荷物を見つけられないらしいですよ。
ペンダントですか？どこかで落としたんでしょうね。
昨日は上野駅の階段から落ちたがその時ペンダントがあった。誰かが盗んだみたいだ。

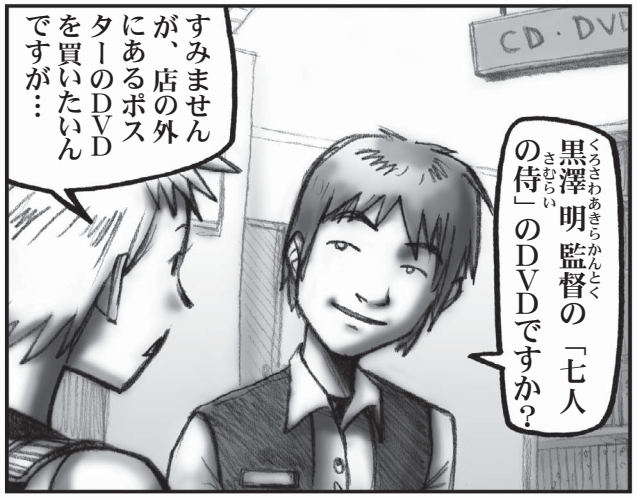

はい！ズボンやTシャツやセーターはありますか？
AKIYO'S
いらっしゃいませ！何か探しているんですか？
そうですね…困ったねぇ。じゃ、今渋谷にいるから、服でも買おう。
だから、新しい服を買っておかなければなりませんね。
SHIBUYA 109
わかりました。
はい、自分用です。セーターの色は赤か青で、Tシャツは黒でお願いします。
ありますよ。お客様用ですか？
はい、試着してみてください。
あ、そのジーンズもお願いします。
これがいいですね！試着してもいいですか？
はい。
これでどうですか？
これはどうですか？
ちょっと高そうですね。もう少し安いものはありますか？


ありがとう。
じゃ、日本で25です。これをどうぞ。
ヨーロッパの40ですね…
日本のサイズは分かりにくいです。ヨーロッパで40ですが…
はい。この店の靴はよく売れています。お客様のサイズはいくつですか？
靴もほしいです。靴は売っていますか？
ガシャッ
ガシャッ
ガシャッ
ガシャッ


発売中
七人の


WW
sporie.com
JUNIPER
発売中
最新シングル
Zero DeGrees
和菓子をもう飲んでみましたか。
CZECH THAT OUT!

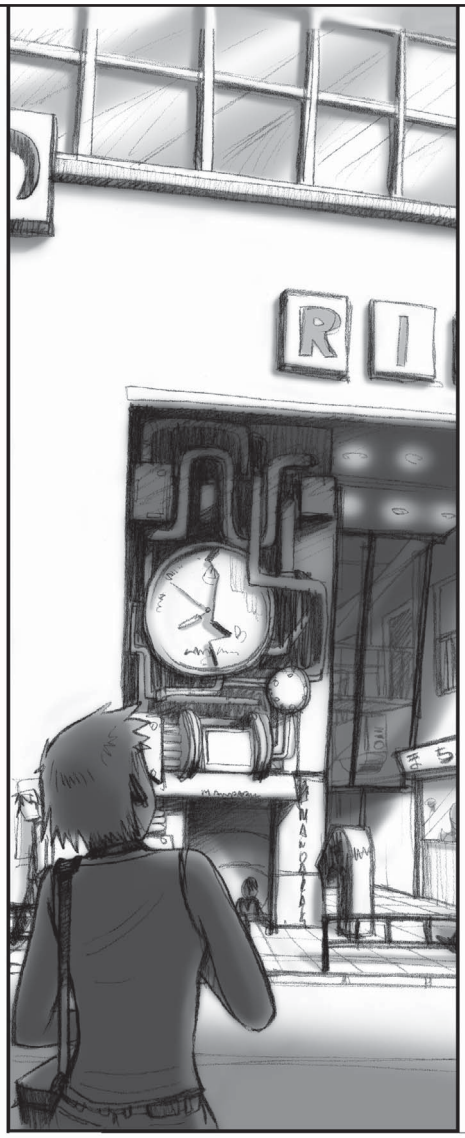

スペインですか？スペインのDVDゾーンはどれですか？
はい、それです！しかし、それはスペインのプレーヤーで使えますか？


CD・DVD
黒澤明監督の「七人の侍」のDVDですか？
すみませんが、店の外にあるポスターのDVDを買いたいんですが…

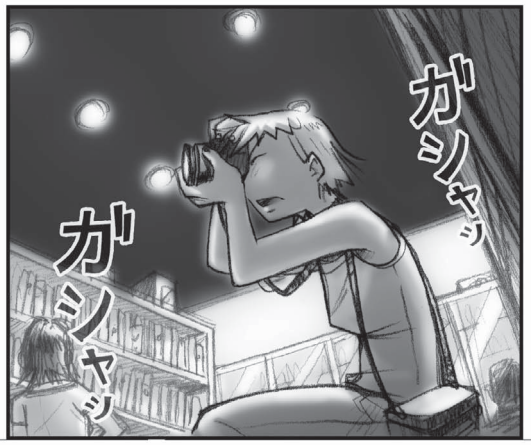

会計
カードでお願いします。
わかりました。お支払いは現金ですか、カードですか？


よかった！じゃ、それをお願いします。


じゃ、使えるはずですよ。日本のゾーンも2ですから。
2だと思います。


R I


ガシャッ


ガシャッ
ガシャッ


今まで店の中でとった写真を消してほしいですが…


そうですか？すみません、知らなかったんです。


お客さん！この店で写真をとってはいけませんよ！だめです！


どうしたんですか!?
じゃ、カメラを貸してください。私が消しますから。
消さなければなりませんか?だめです!!
じゃ、いいです。帰ってください!
許してくださいよ。彼女はそれを知らなかったはずだよ。
いや、彼女は写真をとっていたんです。この店で写真は禁止ですよ!

Review for Lessons 41–45

Answers to all the review exercises can be found online by following the link on page 7.

🎧 *KAGE* – New vocabulary 新しい単語

実は	the fact is, the truth is	盗む	to steal
影	shadow	ヨーロッパ	Europe
故障	damage, breakdown	監督	(film) director
何度も	over and over again	ゾーン	zone
ペンダント	pendant	禁止	prohibition

1. According to what you have read in the third episode of ***Kage***, what is it that Nuria says appears in her photos? What does Mina suggest it could be?

2. What does Nuria buy at the clothes shop in Shibuya?

3. According to the salesclerk at the record and DVD store, can you play Japanese DVDs in Spanish DVD players? Why?

4. How does Nuria pay for the DVD she buys: cash or card?

5. In the end, does Nuria erase the photographs she has taken at the manga store?

6. What "falls" on the ground in Mina's sentence どこかで落としたんでしょうね？ And what fell in Nuria's sentence 昨日は上野駅の階段から落ちた？ Why are the two verbs in different forms?

7. Indicate with a circle the degree of certainty, high (H) or medium (M), in the following conjectures:

a) 指をレンズの前に出したのかもしれませんね。 H / M

b) カメラが故障しているに違いありません。 H / M

c) カメラは大丈夫そうだ。 H / M

d) どこかで落としたんでしょうね。 H / M

e) 誰(だれ)かが盗(ぬす)んだみたいだ。 H / M

f) 荷物(にもつ)が見つけられないらしいです。 H / M

g) ちょっと高そうですね。 H / M

h) 彼女(かのじょ)はそれを知らなかったはずだよ。 H / M

8. What do the two や indicate in the sentence ズボンやTシャツやセーターはありますか

9. Turn the sentence この店で写真は禁止(きんし)です into a conjecture, using the grammatical expressions given below.

a) _____。 (かもしれません)

b) _____。 (ようです)

c) _____。 (そうです)

d) _____。 (はずです)

10. What does the suffix ～にくい indicate in the sentence 日本のサイズは分かりにくいです?

11. Add the ～にくい and ～やすい suffixes to the following verbs that appear in the dialogue, and give the meaning they acquire.

	～にくい	Meaning	～やすい	Meaning
a) 写(うつ)る	_____	_____	_____	_____
b) 盗(ぬす)む	_____	_____	_____	_____
c) 落(お)とす	_____	_____	_____	_____
d) 見つける	_____	_____	_____	_____

12. Fill in the blanks with the most suitable word from the box at the end of the exercise.

a) 私は寝(ね)る前に、お風呂(ふろ)に入って、_____を着る。

b) この靴(くつ)はヨーロッパで「４２」ですが、日本でいくつの_____ですか？

c) 京都(きょうと)の芸者(げいしゃ)さんはきれいな_____を着ています。

d) このセーターを買いたいが、その前に＿＿＿＿＿してもいいですか？

e) 今日は彼氏とデートがあるから、セクシーな＿＿＿＿にしてみました。

f) ハワイは暑いから、＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿をもって行かなくてもいいよ。

g) 日本のサラリーマンは皆黒い＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿を着ている。

h) 結婚した姉は白くて、長い＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿を着ていました。

i) 日本では、夏の夜、＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿を着た女の子をよく見ます。

j) ケイコちゃんは胸が小さいから、＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿要らないね。

k) 仕事が決まった！だから、白いシャツと黒い＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿
を二本買いに行こう。

試着	着物	浴衣	サイズ	下着	スーツ
コート	パジャマ	ネクタイ	ドレス	ブラジャー	

13. Fill in the blanks with the most suitable verb from the box below.

a) ね、ね、お姉ちゃん。スパゲッティにチーズを＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿の？

b) 来月＿＿＿＿子どもの名前を＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿必要がある。

c) 飛行機で日本まで＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿つもりです。

d) 日曜日の朝、子どもを八時に＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿。

e) ケチャップに気をつけろ！Tシャツを＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿なよ！

f) タオルを貸してくれてありがとうね。＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿わ！

g) 学校から家へ＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿のは6時半です。

h) 映画は4時半から＿＿＿＿＿らしい。あまり時間がないから、急ごう！

i) マイコさんはヘビーメタルを＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿のが好きみたいだ。

j) 先生、この病気は＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿のですか？

k) どうして私が食べる前に、チョコレートが＿＿＿＿の？猫でもいるの？

汚す	入れる	飛ぶ	始まる	戻る	治る
聞く	起こす	決める	生まれる	助かる	消える

14. Choose the most suitable answer for each sentence.

a) A: 日本の音楽はどこですか？| B「＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿」と書いてあるところにあります。

1. ジャズ　2. 邦楽　3. クラシック　4. 洋楽

b) 日本語が分からないから、このパソコンの＿＿＿＿＿＿が英語でほしい。

1. 説明書　2. カメラ　3. シャツ　4. 時計

c) この本を＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿で払ってください。

1. バーゲン　2. 銀行　3. レジ　4. パンツ

d) 冬の夜は寒いから、＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿をつけてくださいね。

1. ネクタイ　2. マフラー　3. 足袋　4. Ｔシャツ

e) 昨日は＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿の映画を見に行きました。怖かったよ！

1. ホラー　2. アクション　3. ドラマ　4. コメディー

f) このＤＶＤはアメリカの＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿で使えますか？

1. プレーヤー　2. ポスター　3. ポップス　4. テクノ

g) 女性用の下着を探しています。＿＿＿＿＿と＿＿＿＿＿をお願いします。

1. ブラウス　2. セーター　3. スーツ　4. パンツ

1. ブーツ　2. シャツ　3. ブラジャー　4. スカート

h) この浴衣を１０％の＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿で売っているよ。お得だよね！

1. 値札　2. 割引　3. 袋　4. 税

i) 昨日は＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿の映画を見に行きました。たくさん笑ったよ！

1. ホラー　2. アクション　3. ドラマ　4. コメディー

15. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences with the most suitable expression formed by an adverb or an interrogative pronoun followed by か , as in the example.

a) 私は＿いつか＿金持ちになるつもりです。

b) このおかしの中の＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿一つだけを選んでください。

c) A: あたしのパンツどこにあるの？| B: この部屋の＿＿＿＿にあるはずよ。

d) 試験(しけん)を始める前に、＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿分からないことがありますか？

e) 泣(な)かないでください。＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿また会えるよ！

f) 泥棒(どろぼう)だ！＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿助けてください！

16. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences with the most suitable adverb from the box below.

a) 彼女(かのじょ)の部屋(へや)には＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿のアニメポスターがあるみたいよ。

b) ＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿日本語(にほんご)を習(なら)いたので、日本へ留学(りゅうがく)しにきた。

c) ビールを＿＿＿＿＿＿飲(の)まないでくださいよ。後(あと)が大変(たいへん)だから。

d) 彼(かれ)は＿＿＿＿＿＿頭(あたま)がいいです。東京大学(とうきょうだいがく)で勉強(べんきょう)しています。

e) マンガを＿＿＿＿＿＿読(よ)みたいから、日本語を習っている。

f) 日本映画(えいが)は＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿おもしろいと思(おも)いますよ。

あまり　　とても　　たくさん　　あまりに　　非常(ひじょう)に　　たくさん

17. This dialogue is out of order. Rewrite it in the correct order.

1) どんなビデオカメラですか？
2) はい。ビデオカメラを買いたいのです。助(たす)けてください。
3) 英語(えいご)の説明書(せつめいしょ)もついているんですか？
4) いらっしゃいませ！何かお探(さが)しですか？
5) はい、ついています。
6) これはどうですか？今よく売れている小さいカメラです。
7) じゃ、このカメラにしようと思います。お願(ねが)いします。
8) 小さくて、使いやすいカメラがいいです。

店員(てんいん)さん：＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿

お客(きゃく)さん：＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿

店員(てんいん)さん：＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿

お客さん：＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿

店員さん：＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿

お客さん：＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿

店員さん：＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿

お客さん：＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿

18. Complete this dialogue held at a clothes shop.

Clerk: いらっしゃいませ。寒いですね！

Client: はい！東京はこんな寒い天気だと思いませんでした。暖かい服が必要です。

Clerk: 何を探していますか？

Client: 首が寒いから、(1)＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿ をお願いします。

Clerk: はい、分かりました。手はどうですか？

Client: そうですね。同じ色の(2)＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿ もください。

Clerk: はい。これで大丈夫ですか？

Client: いいえ、暖かいセーターもほしいです。

Clerk: (3)＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿ は「S」や「M」や「L」があります。

Client: 「M」で大丈夫かもしれないが、(4)＿＿＿＿＿＿ してもいいですか？

Clerk: はい、あの部屋を使ってください。

＊＊＊　十分後　＊＊＊

Client: ちょっと小さいから、「L」にします。

Clerk: 分かりました。支払いは (5)＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿ でお願いします。

Client: すみません。(6)＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿ に２万円と書いているが、正しいですか？

Clerk: はい。しかし、今 (7)＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿ だから、５０％の 8)＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿ があります。

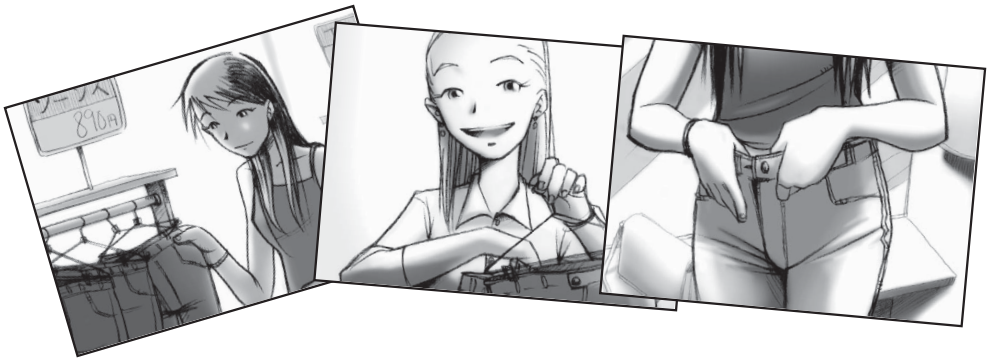
Client: じゃ、１万円でいいですね？

Clerk: はい、そうです。お得ですよ！

Client: そうですね。(9) _____ で払えますか？

Clerk: いいえ。すみませんが、この店は現金だけです。申し訳ありません。

Client: 買ったものを着て帰るから、(10) _____ に入れなくてもいいですよ。



19. Complete the sentences choosing from the particles と or から , まで , や or か , as appropriate.

a) あの人は広美 (　　) 言います。

b) お金がほしい (　　)、働きたいよ。

c) いつ (　　) いつ (　　) 日本に住むつもりですか？

d) 彼はたくさんの国へ行ってきたよ。中国 (　　) 日本 (　　) 韓国など...

e) 肉 (　　) 魚、一つだけを選んでください。

f) 私は彼女 (　　) 一緒に映画を見に行った。

g) 私はあなた (　　) 結婚したくない。

h) 彼はアジアの一つの国へ行ったよ。中国 (　　) 韓国 (　　)、忘れたが...

i) 「コーヒー」 (　　) いうのは豆 (　　) 作る飲み物です。

j) 僕はたくさんの漢字を知っている：「月」 (　　) 「火」 (　　) 「水」...

k) 彼は中国 (　　) 日本 (　　) 韓国へ行ったよ。この３つの国が好きだそうだ。

l) テレビを見て (　　)、寝ましょう！

m) 僕は３つの漢字を知っている：「月」 (　　) 「火」 (　　) 「水」です。

n) あしたの弁論大会は何時 (　　) ですか？

20. Choose the correct verb in each sentence.

a) 昨日、私は渋谷で財布を（落とした／落ちた）よ。
b) 弁論大会は六時ごろに（終わる／終える）と僕は思います。
c) ここから電車の音が（聞く／聞こえる）。
d) ボブさん、テレビを（消して／消えて）くださいよ！
e) テレビが（壊れた／壊した）から、サッカーを見られなかった。
f) アキコちゃん、家に（入って／入れて）くださいね。待っていますから！
g) あ、この建物も新しいよ！この街は（変わった／変えた）ね。
h) テルくんの趣味はコインを（集まる／集める）ことです。
i) 電車が（止まる／止める）まで待ってください。
j) あの猫を殺したいの！？あんた、車を（止まって／止めて）！
k) ボブさんはテレビを（壊れた／壊した）から、サッカーを見られない。
l) 暑いから、ドアを（開いて／開けて）ください。
m) 本田さんは住所を（変わった／変えた）らしいよ。
n) ドアが(開いて／開けて)いるよ。私がドアを(閉まろう／閉めよう)か？

21. Change the following sentences into conjectures using the expressions in brackets, as in the example. Then, indicate whether what is expressed in the sentence has a high (H) or medium (M) probability of taking place.

a) 今日は雨が降っています。(ようだ) (H / M)
今日は雨が降っているようです。

b) タクさんの友達は警察官だよ。(そうだ) (H / M)

_____。

c) 彼女の買ったスカートは長かったです。(はずだ) (H / M)

_____。

d) 青木さんの娘はやさしい。(みたいだ) (H / M)

_____。

e) 来年、オーストラリアに留学(りゅうがく)します。(かもしれない) (H / M)

_____。

f) 見て！高田(たかだ)さんの家はとても広いです。(そうだ 2) (H / M)

_____。

g) あの人のお父さんは多分死(し)にました。(だろう) (H / M)

_____。

h) 先生はマリコちゃんと結婚(けっこん)するつもりだ。(らしい) (H / M)

_____。

i) 山田(やまだ)さんはとても金持ちになりましたね。(ようだ) (H / M)

_____。

j) スミスさんは新しい着物を買った。(そうだ 1) (H / M)

_____。

k) ヨシオはハンサムだから、彼(かれ)の妹さんもきれいだ。(かもしれない) (H / M)

_____。

l) 社長(しゃちょう)は一億(おく)円ぐらい持っています。(にちがいない) (H / M)

_____。

m) マルタさんはまたアニメのＤＶＤを買うね。(そう 2) (H / M)

_____。

n) 部長(ぶちょう)の奥さんは親切です。(はずだ) (H / M)

_____。

22. Choose the most suitable answer for each sentence.

a) 彼(かれ)は英語(えいご)を_____にアメリカに行ったから、とても困(こま)ったそうだ。

1. 話して　2. 話せない　3. 話せないて　4. 話せず

b) エアコンを_____まま、眠(ねむ)ってしまったから病気(びょうき)になった。

1. つけて　2. つける　3. つけた　4. つけないで

c) 明日は雨＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿、試合をしないでください。

1. の場合　2. だ場合　3. な場合　4. は場合

d) どうして電話＿＿＿＿＿来ちゃったの？ 今、あんたに会いたくないよ！

1. しない　2. せずに　3. しずに　4. する

e) きのうは手紙を書い＿＿＿＿＿、ゲームで遊ん＿＿＿＿＿しました。

1. だり／だり　2. たり／たり　3. たり／だり　4. だり／たり

f) アイコちゃんは＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿まま死にたいといつも言っている。

1. きれいな　2. きれいに　3. きれいたっだ　4. きれいの

g) 彼女は先生では＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿、学生ですよ！

1. しないで　2. せずに　3. しません　4. なくて

h) この車は＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿し、速いです。

1. きれいだ　2. きれいな　3. きれい　4. きれいの

i) 電話で＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿料理をした。そして、料理がおいしくなかった！

1. 話したながら　2. 話すながら　3. 話さながら　4. 話しながら

23. Correct the mistakes in the following sentences.

a) 彼は数学の先生だかもしれません。

b) 肉や魚を一つだけ選んでください。

c) A: どうして寝ているの？ | B: 疲れているまでだ。

d) シンちゃん、あの新聞を燃えてください！

e) あの人は東京に住んでいるから、日本語が上手なだろう。

f) 映画は五時に始めたらしい。

24. Choose the most suitable answer for each sentence.

a) 日本は＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿やすい国だと思います。

1. 住む　2. 住み　3. 住んでいる　4. 住んだ

b) 彼女(かのじょ)は「家に帰りたい」＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿言った。

1. まで　2. や　3. に　4. と

c) 青山部長(あおやまぶちょう)はスパゲッティが好き＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿知(し)らない。

1. はずだ　2. かもしれない　3. かどうか　4. や

d) 私はマドンナ＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿女性(じょせい)があまり好きじゃない。

1. みたいな　2. みたいに　3. ようだ　4. ようで

e) ブッシュさんの英語(えいご)はとても＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿にくいそうです。

1. 分かる　2. 分かり　3. 分かって　4. 分かった

f) 私は冷蔵庫(れいぞうこ)からたまごを二個＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿。

1. 出た　2. 入れた　3. 出した　4. 入った

g) 母の生(う)まれた街(まち)はとても安全(あんぜん)＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿らしいです。

1. な　2. に　3. ○　4. だ

h) 今日の試験(しけん)はとても＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿。

1. やさしくそうだ　2. やさしいそうだ　3. やさしいなそうだ　4. やさしのそうだ

i) アイコちゃんは渋谷(しぶや)＿＿＿＿＿＿、新宿(しんじゅく)＿＿＿＿＿＿へよく行っています。

1. とか／とか　2. と／と　3. に／に　4. まで／から

j) 山田(やまだ)さんはパソコンを作っている会社の社長(しゃちょう)＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿そうだ。

1. な　2. に　3. ○　4. だ

k) 新宿(しんじゅく)＿＿＿＿＿＿渋谷(しぶや)＿＿＿＿＿＿、電車で１０分ぐらいかかります。

1. まだ／から　2. とか／とか　3. と／と　4. から／まで

l) 水着を着てから、川に飛(と)び＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿ください。

1. 込んで　2. にくくて　3. やすくて　4. 終わって

m) あの国はとても危険(きけん)＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿はずだよ。気をつけていってくださいね。

1. な　2. に　3. ○　4. だ

Kanji

花 (155)	犬 (167)	牛 (168)	魚 (169)	鳥 (170)	不 (225)	用 (226)	海 (163)	風 (165)	野 (166)	屋 (180)
歩 (250)	走 (251)	品 (227)	質 (228)	起 (252)	服 (260)	正 (203)	度 (204)	台 (205)	工 (176)	場 (177)

25. Link each kanji with its most common reading.

牛	や	鳥	だい
服	いぬ	海	かぜ
不	うし	花	さかな
犬	ふ	魚	はな
屋	ふく	風	うみ
度	ど	台	とり

26. Choose the correct kanji or kanji combination for each reading.

a) おしょうがつに近所のパンやさんできれいないけばなが見られる。
しょうがつ：1. 正月　2. 正日　3. 王月　4. 王日
パンや：1. パン野　2. パン屋　3. パン室　4. パン質
いけばな：1.生け化　2. 生け花　3. 先け花　1. 先け化

b) あの大きいうしはきんぎょを食べた。
うし：1. 午　2. 度　3. 犬　4. 牛
きんぎょ：1. 全魚　2. 全漁　3. 金魚　4. 金漁

c) おくじょうで、きれいなさくひんを書いた。
おくじょう：1. 屋場　2. 室場　3. 室上　4. 屋上
さくひん：1. 作品　2. 下品　3. 上品　4. 手品

d) 皆（みな）さん！きりつしてから、ようじをしにいってください！
きりつ：1. 野立　2. 歩立　3. 走立　4. 起立
ようじ：1. 冊服　2. 用事　3. 用服　4. 冊事

27. Choose the correct reading for each kanji combination.

a) 北海道にはきれいな海や野があります。

北海道：1. ほくかいど　2. ほっかいど　3. ほくかいどう　4. ほっかいどう

海：1. うみ　2. あみ　3. そら　4. そる

野：1. やに　2. はら　3. け　4. の

b) 八百屋の前にある質屋はとても小さいです。

八百屋：1. はちひゃくや　2. はっぴゃくや　3. やおや　4. はちおや

質屋：1. しちや　2. しつや　3. しつじょう　4. しちじょう

c) 今、私が勉強しているのは「人工心臓（しんぞう）」という分野です。

人工：1. じんこう　2. にんこう　3. じんこ　4. にんこ

分野：1. ふんの　2. ふんや　3. ぶんの　4. ぶんや

d) オランダの風車の品質はとてもいいと皆（みな）言っている

風車：1. かぜぐるま　2. かぜくるま　3. ふしゃ　4. ふうしゃ

品質：1. ひんしつ　2. ひんしち　3. しなしつ　4. しなしち

28. Write the kanji for the given ***furigana***.

a) 私は＿＿＿＿＿（はな）と＿＿＿＿＿（とり）が大好きです。

b) 父は＿＿＿＿＿＿（はなび）の＿＿＿＿＿＿（こうじょう）で働（はたら）いています。

c) ＿＿＿＿＿＿（さかなや）さんの前に小さい＿＿＿＿＿（いぬ）がいる。

d) 友達（ともだち）はあの＿＿＿＿＿＿（どうじょう）で＿＿＿＿＿＿（じょうひん）な空手を習（なら）っている。

e) 彼女（かのじょ）は＿＿＿＿＿（うみ）の近くを＿＿＿＿＿（ある）くのがとても好きです。

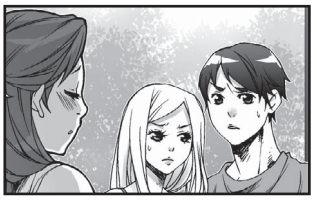
f) あの人は私が買った＿＿＿＿＿＿（ようふく）を好きかどうか、＿＿＿＿＿＿（ふぁん）ですよ。

Lesson 46 • 第 46 課

Compound Sentences (1)

In the next part of the book we'll see several ways of creating compound sentences in Japanese. In this chapter we will take a close look at expressions of continuity.

The easiest linking method



We saw in Lesson 35 that we can use the ***-te*** form to link sentences. This may be applied to verbs (寝て起きる ***nete okiru*** "to sleep and wake up"), ***-i*** adjectives (広くて明るい ***hirokute akarui*** "roomy and bright"), ***-na*** adjectives (丈夫で便利な ***jōbu de benri-na*** "robust and practical") and nouns (先生で研究者 ***sensei de kenkyūsha*** "professor and researcher"). This method of linking sentences has up to five different usages: 1) combining elements, 2) sequencing actions, 3) mode, 4) simultaneous action or state, and 5)cause/reason:

1) 毎朝、牛乳を飲んでパンを食べる Every morning I drink milk and eat bread.
2) 早く起きて遠足に行きたい！ I want to wake up early and go on an excursion!
3) いちごを使ってケーキを作った I made a cake using strawberries.
4) 私は映画を見て、彼女は音楽を聞いた I was watching a movie, and my girlfriend was listening to music.
5) 博之が帰って広子が安心した Hiroyuki came back and (so) Hiroko was relieved.

To link negative sentences with the ***-te*** form, we use ～ないで:

- 塩を使わないでハンバーガーを作った He made a hamburger without using salt.
- 勉強しないで試験に合格した I passed the exam without studying.

You can also link negative sentences by replacing the ないで of the negative ***-te*** form with ずに (寝ないで ***nenai de*** ⇒ 寝ずに ***nezu ni***, "without sleeping"). The only exception is する: it isn't しずに but せずに. This ending is used in written and formal registers.

- 塩を使わずにハンバーガーを作った He made a hamburger without using salt.
- 勉強せずに試験に合格した I passed the exam without studying.

Another way of linking sentences in the negative

The negative forms ～ないで and ～ずに, can't be used with the five cases in the affirmative we saw in the first point. To be precise, ～ないで can't be used to express cause/reason, and we don't use ～ずに to express cause/reason or a simultaneous action or state.

To express cause/reason, we use the ***-te*** form of a verb conjugated in the negative, for example使う ***tsukau*** (to use) ⇒ negative: 使わない ⇒ negative ***-te*** form: 使わなくて. We saw the negative conjugations for the ***-te*** form of verbs in the table in Lesson 35.

- 博之(ひろゆき)が帰(かえ)らなくて広子(ひろこ)が心配(しんぱい)していた Hiroyuki didn't return home and (so) Hiroko was worried.
- 車(くるま)を買(か)わなくてよかった I didn't buy the car, (so) I'm happy.

To link two ***-i*** adjectives in the negative (not only cause/reason, but generally) we also use the ***-te*** form of the negative, for example 広い ***hiroi*** (broad) ⇒ negative: 広くない ⇒ ***-te*** form of the negative: 広くなくて. In the case of ***-na*** adjectives and nouns, we use ではなくて or, in colloquial register, じゃなくて (じゃ is the contraction of では).

- アパートは明(あか)るくなくて古(ふる)いです The apartment is not bright and is old.
- 彼女(かのじょ)は日本人(にほんじん)では(じゃ)なくて、韓国人(かんこくじん)です She isn't Japanese, she's Korean.

Simultaneous actions: ～ながら

To form sentences expressing simultaneous actions, we use verb root + ～ながら. For example, 使う ***tsukau*** (to use) ⇒ root: 使い ⇒ add ながら: 使いながら (while I'm using). **Note:** ～ながら is only used with verbs, and the subject (performing the action) must be the same for both verbs (that is, the performed actions) in the sentence.

- 音楽(おんがく)を聞(き)きながら、本(ほん)を書(か)いている While listening to music, I write the book.
- ジョンは笑(わら)いながら映画(えいが)を見(み)ていた John laughed as he watched the movie.
- 辞書(じしょ)を引(ひ)きながら翻訳(ほんやく)する I translate, (while) consulting a dictionary.
- コーヒーを飲(の)みながら話(はな)しましょう Let's talk, while we drink (have) a coffee.

In sentences with ～ながら, there is usually is a central action and an incidental action. The verb of the latter takes ～ながら. Compare these sentences:

- ご飯(はん)を食(た)べながら新聞(しんぶん)を読(よ)む While eating, I read the newspaper. (center: to eat)
- 新聞(しんぶん)を読(よ)みながらご飯(はん)を食(た)べる While reading the paper, I eat. (center: to read)

A situation remains unchanged: ～まま

The expression ～まま indicates that the action or situation described by the attached verb is unchanged. ～まま is used after verbs conjugated in the past tense, for example: 寝る ***neru*** (to sleep) ⇒ past: 寝た ⇒ add ～まま ⇒ 寝たまま (he is still asleep / there is no change to the state of his being asleep). This expression is also used with some ***-i*** adjectives (we don't change anything), ***-na*** adjectives (keep な), and nouns (add の).

- テレビをつけたまま仕事(しごと)に行(い)ってしまった I went to work, leaving the TV on.
- 百合子(ゆりこ)はドイツへ行(い)ったまま戻(もど)らない Yuriko went to Germany and is not coming back.
- ずっと学生(がくせい)のままでいたいな I'd like to be a student for ever.

If the verb before ～まま is negative, we don't have to conjugate it in the past tense.

- 鍵(かぎ)をかけないまま家(いえ)から走(はし)り出(だ)した I ran out of the house not locking the door.
- 彼(かれ)は休(やす)まないままずっと働(はたら)いている He works constantly, without a break.

Non-exhaustive list of actions: ～たり～たりする

This expression is a kind of や (Lesson 41) for verbs and adjectives. ～たり～たりする expresses a non-exhaustive list of actions or states. We indicate two or more actions or states, and whether there could be more is left up in the air. To form, add り to the past tense. The last element in the sentence is followed by する, for example 買う ***kau*** (to buy) ⇒ past: 買った ⇒ add り (and する if it is the last element): 買ったり(する) (to buy, etc.). ***-i*** adjectives also go in the past tense, like 高かったり(する) ***takakattari (suru)*** (expensive, etc.). ***-na*** adjectives and nouns need the verb "to be" in the ***-tari*** form (だったり), for example: 便利だったり(する) ***benri dattari (suru)*** (to be convenient, etc.) and 先生だったり(する) ***sensei dattari (suru)*** (to be a teacher, etc.).

- 仕事(しごと)でインターネットをしたり、書類(しょるい)を作(つく)ったりするよ
  At work, I browse the Internet, write documents, etc.
- 毎朝(まいあさ)、コーヒーを飲(の)んだり新聞(しんぶん)を読(よ)んだりします
  Every morning, I drink coffee, read the newspaper, etc.

～たり can be used with only one verb or adjective, with a similar connotation:

- 鍵(かぎ)をなくしたりしてはいけないね Don't lose the keys (or anything like that), OK?
- 恋(こい)に落(お)ちたりするのは危(あぶ)ない！ Things like falling in love are dangerous!

In case of: 場合

The word 場合(ばあい) (case, occasion, circumstance) means "in case of." It can follow verbs and *-**i*** adjectives conjugated in any form. After *-**na*** adjectives and nouns it requires の .

- 戦争(せんそう)が起(お)きた場合(ばあい)、逃(に)げてください If war is declared, please run away.
- 雨(あめ)の場合(ばあい)は体育館(たいいくかん)で練習(れんしゅう)しよう In case of rain, we will train in the gym.

Not only X, also Y: ～し

～し can follow any verb or *-**i*** adjective conjugated in any form. With *-**na*** adjectives and nouns, it requires the verb "to be" (です/だ).

- 明日(あした)は試験(しけん)があるし、塾(じゅく)にも行(い)かなければならない
  Tomorrow I have an exam and, besides, I must go to cram school.
- この家(いえ)は広(ひろ)いし、駅(えき)が近(ちか)い Not only is this house roomy, the station is also close.

Sometimes we can find more than one ～し in a sentence, as if forming a list:

- 彼女(かのじょ)は頭(あたま)がいいし、きれいだし、金持(かねも)ちだし... 完璧(かんぺき)だな！
  She is intelligent, as well as beautiful, as well as rich . . . She's perfect!

Compound sentences (1): General summary table		
～て	Linking sentences	景色を見て絵をかいてください Look at the landscape and draw a picture, please
～ないで ～ずに	Linking sentences. The first sentence is in the negative	景色を見ないで（見ずに）絵をかくのは難しいです Drawing a picture without looking at the landscape is difficult
～なくて	Linking sentences. The first sentence is in the negative. Expresses cause/reason	彼と会わなくて残念だ It's a pity I won't meet him
～ながら	"While I'm doing X, I do Y" (two simultaneous actions)	景色を見ながら絵をかいた While looking at the landscape, I drew a picture (Note: the drawing doesn't need to be of the landscape)
～まま	A state or action already done which remains unchanged	私は疲れたままマラソンに参加した I took part in the marathon, tired as I was
～たり ～たりする	Non-exhaustive list of actions	マラソンに参加したり、絵をかいたりするのは楽しいです I enjoy taking part in marathons, drawing pictures . . . (and so on)
場合	"In the case of . . ."	雨の場合、マラソンに参加しません If it rains, I won't take part in the marathon
～し	"Not only X, also Y"	マラソンに参加したし、絵もかいた I not only took part in the marathon, I also drew a picture

景色 ***keshiki*** landscape; 見る ***miru*** to look; 絵をかく ***e o kaku*** to draw a picture; 難しい ***muzukashii*** difficult; 彼 ***kare*** he; 会う ***au*** to meet; 疲れる ***tsukareru*** to get tired; 残念だ ***zannen da*** it's a pity; マラソン marathon; 参加する ***sanka suru*** to take part; 楽しい ***tanoshii*** enjoyable; 雨 ***ame*** rain

Conjunctions

Let's look at some expressions placed at the beginning of a clause to link two or more clauses or ideas. In the last lesson in the series (Lesson 49), we will give a summary table with all these conjunctions.

For example: 例えば

- 僕は日本料理が大好きです。例えば、寿司や天ぷらや親子丼が好きです
  I love Japanese cuisine. For example, I like sushi, tempura, oyakodon, etc.
- 多くの武道は、例えば空手とか柔道とかが日本から来ている
  Many martial arts, like for example karate or judo, come from Japan.

By the way: ところで

- 君は２５歳なの？ところで、俺は何歳だと思う？
  You're 25? By the way, how old do you think I am?
- 今日は天気がいいな ... ところで、何か飲みに行こうか？
  The weather is beautiful today, isn't it . . . By the way, shall we go out for a drink?

Besides: それに (This expression is almost equivalent to 〜し .)

- 明日は試験がある。それに塾にも行かなければならない
  Tomorrow I have an exam. And besides, (on top of that) I must go to cram school.
- 今日、彼女と別れた。それにバイクで事故にあった
  Today, I split up with my girlfriend. And besides, (to crown it all) I had a motorcycle accident.

Nominalizing adjectives

Let's look at the formation of nouns from ***-i*** and ***-na*** adjectives.

-i adjectives: We replace the last い with さ.

広い	wide	⇒ 広さ	width	黒い	black	⇒ 黒さ	blackness
太い	fat	⇒ 太さ	plumpness	明るい	bright	⇒ 明るるさ	brightness

-na adjectives: We replace the last な with さ.

便利な	convenient	⇒ 便利さ	convenience	親切な	kind	⇒ 親切さ	kindness
丈夫な	robust	⇒ 丈夫さ	robustness	きれいな	pretty	⇒ きれいさ	prettiness

漫画例 Manga Examples

Let's relax now with a few manga examples where we will review the expressions we have studied in this chapter as well as a few interesting variations.

Manga Example 1: Usage of *zu ni*

Our first manga example will show us how to link two different sentences when the first one is negative. In this chapter we have seen that this is achieved with the negative ***-te*** form. In this case, the two ideas to be linked are 誰も傷つけないand 生きてきた人.

If we conjugate the first one in the negative ***-te*** form and we link both sentences, we get: 誰も傷つけないで生きてきた人 (person who has lived without hurting anybody). This kind of linking is the simultaneous action or state we saw on page 145. However, we have also said that there is a similar alternate construction, used in the formal register. This form, ～ずに, is the one used in this panel. The speaker is in a tense situation, and he probably chooses ～ずに to give more "weight" to his statement. The formation of ～ずに is as simple as replacing the ないで ending in the negative ***-te*** form of any verb with ずに. Thus, the final sentence is as we see in the example: 誰も傷つけずに生きてきた人 (person who has lived without hurting anybody). **Notes:** There is another idea linked to this compound sentence: いない (there isn't). The word など (in kanji 等) could be translated as "et cetera." Also, notice the usage of 誰も ("nobody," Lesson 37) and of ～てくる (Lesson 35), and take the opportunity to review these expressions.



Hirose: 誰(だれ)も傷(きず)つけずに生(い)きてきた人(ひと)などいない

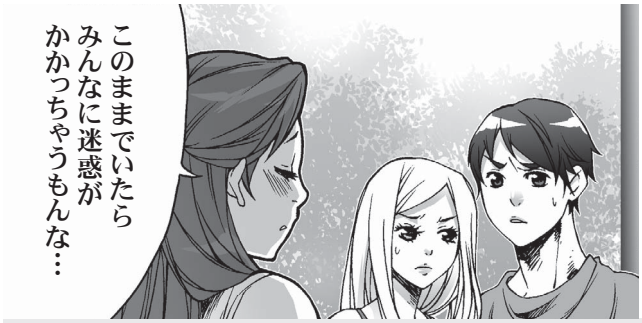
nobody wound put live come person or other not there is

No one has ever lived without hurting anybody.

Manga Example 2: Usage of *kono mama*

Here we have a small and very common variation of ～まま: linking ～まま to the demonstrative pronouns この (this), その (that), and あの (that over there) (Lesson 34). The resultant words could approximately be translated as "as it is."

A typical example (in the supermarket): 袋が要りますか？ ***Fukuro ga irimasuka?*** "Do you need a bag?" いいえ、このままでいいです "No, it's fine as it is." This sentence means you will take the product or products "as they are," without the necessity of a bag to carry them. **Notes:** This sentence uses the contraction ～ちゃう (Lesson 35); the non-contracted version would be 迷惑がかかってしまう (to cause trouble). いたら is the conditional (Lesson 56) of いる: if I stayed.



Kuroda: このままでいたら　みんなに迷惑(めいわく)がかかっちゃうもんな…

this (no changes) be all IOP nuisance SP put (the fact is) EP . . .

The fact is that if I stay the way I'm now, I'll be a nuisance to you all . . .

Manga Example 3: Non-exhaustive list of actions

Here we have a good example of ～たり～たりする. Remember this is used to form a sort of non-exhaustive "list" of actions or states. Thus, in the sentence 楽しんだり笑ったりする, the main character indicates that he is "having fun and laughing," but he also suggests there are more actions which are not mentioned (that's why we have chosen translating "or anything"). Notice how the verb する usually closes the "list" (but be careful, as sometimes it is omitted). **Note:** ～しちゃいけねえ is the contracted and vulgar version of ～してはいけない (prohibition, Lesson 32). The んだ at the end is a very common softening tag (contraction of のだ), which we studied in Manga Example 4 in Lesson 40.



Calvin: おれは楽(たの)しんだり、笑(わら)ったりしちゃいけねえんだ。スーザンは…

I SP have fun (or something), laugh (or something) do must not. Susan . . .

I shouldn't have fun, or laugh, or anything. Susan . . .

Manga Example 4: A slightly different usage of *ba'ai*

We saw before that the word 場合 is used in constructions indicating "in the case of . . ." Here we have a different usage, where the negative inflection of 場合だ (to be the time to) is used: 場合では(じゃ)ない. This expression is often used in films or manga but you seldom hear it in real life. An example: 今は笑っている場合ではない！ ***Ima wa waratte iru ba'ai de wa nai!*** This is not the time to laugh! **Note:** There is a triple compound verb なすりつけあってる (***-te*** form of なすりつけあう). The base is なする (lit. "to rub in"), followed by the suffix ～つける, which adds the connotation of "pushing, pressing, throwing." なすりつける is translated as "placing the blame on somebody." Finally, ～合う ***au*** makes it a little bit more complicated, adding a connotation of reciprocity, "mutually" (Lesson 44).



Studio Kōsen

Fujita: 責任(せきにん)なすりつけあってる場合(ばあい)じゃないでしょうがあァ！！

responsibility recriminate mutually occasion not be true but!!

I don't think this is time to ask for responsibilities, is it?!

Manga Example 5: *Shi* to soften a sentence

A few pages ago we learned that ～し is used to link sentences and give them a connotation of "not only x, also y." Here we have an example of this construction, although its usage is slightly different.

In spoken Japanese we often use ～し at the end of a sentence to soften a statement or as a simple tag. Sentences like 今日は疲れたしな ***Kyō wa tsukareta shi na*** "Today I'm tired and (besides) . . ." or 台湾にも行ったしな ***Taiwan ni mo itta shi na*** "I also went to Taiwan and (besides) . . ." indicate the speaker wants to express more things in a veiled form, but doesn't, so as not to sound long-winded. Hence our tentative translation with "besides" at the end of each sentence. **Note:** The end-of-sentence particle な (Lesson 17) is used in these kinds of sentence. It's an informal usage, to soften a sentence or to express a wish.



Gabriel Luque

Man: ああ スーツも銃(じゅう)も見(み)つかったしな

yes suit also gun also find besides EP

Yes . . . And besides, I have found a suit and a gun.

Manga Example 6: Besides

それに is one of the three expressions used to link different sentences or ideas which we have studied in this lesson. それに is used in a similar way to our adverbs or adverbial constructions "besides," "apart from that," "to crown it all," "moreover," and so on.



In our example, Yuji is going to help someone whose car has broken down on the road. We don't know the previous sentence, but we can suppose, because of the それに, that Yuji had given another reason to offer his help to this person. **Note:** The ***-i*** adjective もったいない doesn't have a direct translation into English, but it mainly indicates that something is "a waste," "a pity," or "it's not worth . . .": it is generally used with money, time, or other things that can be "spent."

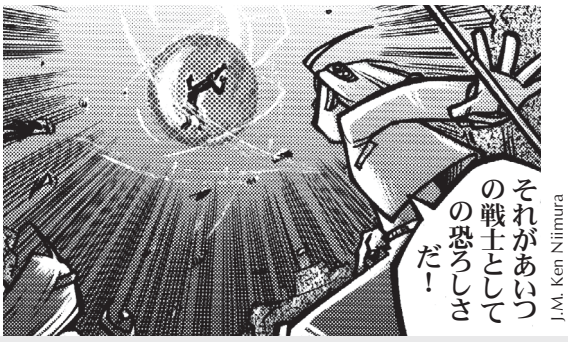
Yuji: それにレッカーはお金(かね)かかるからもったいないっすよ

besides wrecker TOP money cost because waste be EP

Besides, the tow truck costs money, and it would be a waste.

Manga Example 7: Formation of nouns from adjectives

We will conclude the lesson with an example of how to turn an ***-i*** adjective into a noun. The process is as simple as replacing the last い with さ. Thus, from the ***-i*** adjective 恐ろし (terrible, frightful) we obtain the noun 恐ろしさ (frightfulness). **Notes:** The literal translation of this sentence would be "that is the frightfulness of that guy as a warrior." Finally, あいつ is a vulgar term meaning "that guy."



Powell: それがあいつの戦士(せんし)としての恐(おそ)ろしさだ！

that SP that guy POP warrior as POP frightfulness be!

Such is his frightfulness as a warrior!

Exercises 練習

1 Link 浴衣(ゆかた)を着(き)る and 外(そと)に出(で)ていきたい。
(浴衣 ***yukata*** summer kimono; 着る to put on, to wear; 外 outside; 出る to go out)

2 Do the same as in exercise 1, but this time the sentence 浴衣を着る must be conjugated in the negative (two possible negative forms).

3 Translate: "This book is not thick and it's light."
(book 本(ほん) ; thick 厚(あつ)い ; light 軽(かる)い)

4 What is the difference between these sentences:
ビールを飲(の)みながら踊(おど)ろう and 踊(おど)りながら
ビールを飲(の)もう ? (飲む to drink; 踊る to dance)

5 Translate: エアコンをつけたまま寝(ね)てしまった。
(エアコン air conditioning; つける to turn on; 寝る to sleep)

6 Translate using 〜たり : "This summer I swam, walked, rested . . ." (summer 夏(なつ) ; to swim 泳(およ)ぐ ; to walk 歩(ある)く ; to rest 休(やす)む)

7 Translate using 〜し : "This summer I swam and I walked as well."

8 Translate: "By the way, shall we go out for a tea (or something)?" (to drink 飲(の)む ; tea お茶(ちゃ)).

9 Turn these adjectives into nouns: 辛(から)い (spicy, hot), 大切(たいせつ)な (important), 元気(げんき)な (cheerful), and 白(しろ)い (white).

10 Translate: "This is no time to dance the flamenco!"
(now 今(いま) ; to dance 踊(おど)る ; flamenco フラメンコ)

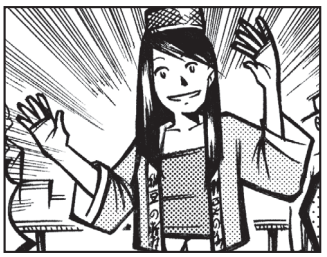
— Answers to all the exercises can be found online by following the link on page 7. —

Lesson 47 • 第 47 課

At a Restaurant

Are you ready to enjoy some Japanese food? You'd better prepare yourself, because we are going to see a lot of food vocabulary that will have you salivating and smacking your lips by the time you are done with this chapter!

Buying food



Before you start, we recommend that you review the section "Let's go shopping!" in Lesson 42 to refresh your memory on basic sentences to do with shopping.

Now, we are ready to fill our pantry. Our first test will be an expedition to a supermarket.

At the store

Going to the supermarket doesn't involve much linguistic danger. Aside from what you already know (questions such as "Will you pay by cash or credit card?" and so forth, studied in Lesson 42 and in previous lessons), the cashier may ask you at most:

- スーパーマーケット X のカードを持(も)っていますか？ Do you have the X supermarket card?

Many people have a supermarket card to earn points, and cashiers always ask if you have one. But the acid test entails buying food at the market or at the corner shop run by that little smiling old woman. Make sure to review the counters thoroughly (Lesson 25) because you will have to use them quite often.

🎧 いらっしゃいませ！

Ready to enter the jungle of いらっしゃいませ? This word, which we've touched on already, means something like "welcome," and in all shops throughout Japan (absolutely all of them, restaurants and パチンコ parlors included) you can hear rounds of いらっしゃいませ when a possible customer is spotted. Some vendors distort the expression to the utmost: things like らっしゃい！ are common. The right thing to do when greeted by one of these shouts is to ignore it. You don't need to answer, or even look at the shop clerk.

- これは何(なん)ですか？ What is this? (Lesson 34)
- 北海道特産(ほっかいどうとくさん)の大根(だいこん)です They are daikon radishes, a speciality from Hokkaido.
- その大根(だいこん)を一本(いっぽん)ください I'll have one of those daikon radishes, please. (Lesson 25)

- すみませんが、しいたけはありますか？ Excuse me, do you sell shiitake?
- はい、あそこにあります Yes, they are over there. (Lesson 34)
- 鶏の胸肉はいくらですか？ How much is the chicken breast? (Lesson 34)
- １００グラム当たり８３円です It is 83 yen per 100 grams.

In Japan they use the metric system: グラム (gram) and キロ (kilo). But be careful when buying fruit: it is so expensive you don't buy it by the gram or the kilo, but by the unit. Asking for りんごを５００グラムください ***ringo o gohyaku guramu kudasai*** (500 grams of apples, please) is not the done thing. You would normally say りんごを５個ください ***ringo o go ko kudasai*** (I'll have five apples, please).

Fast-food outlets

Like almost anywhere in the world, ファストフード chains are a feature in Japan, especially マクドナルド and ケンタッキーフライドチキン. You don't have to struggle much if you go to one of these restaurants, because once you can read カタカナ, you will understand most items on the menu, such as: ハンバーガー, チキンサンドイッチ and コカコーラ. But take care, as "French fries" are called フライドポテト!

- ご注文はお決まりになりましたか？ Have you decided on your order? (lessons 44 and 52).
- これとあれをお願いします (Pointing) I'll have this and that, please. (Lesson 34)
- ハンバーガーとコーラのＬサイズをください A hamburger and large cola, please.
- 玉ねぎ抜きでお願いします Without onion, please.
- お飲み物は何にしますか？ What would you like to drink? (Lesson 34)
- こちらでお召し上がりですか、お持ち帰りですか？ Will you eat here or is it take-out? (lessons 41 and 52)

We recommend you try Japanese ファストフード: chains such as 吉野家 ***Yoshinoya*** or 松屋 ***Matsuya***, which offer dishes like 牛丼 ***gyūdon*** or カレーライス. They are cheaper and more interesting than マクドナルド, which you can find in your own backyard. (But if you must go there, at least try something you can't find back home!)

To the restaurant!

There's no shortage of places to eat in Japan, from small ラーメン, そば or うどん noodle eateries to luxurious restaurants. Many restaurants show hyper-real plastic models of the dishes they serve in the window, as well as the price, making it easy to decide where to eat. Once you have decided, open the sliding door, be greeted by the loud いらっしゃいませ from the waiters, and sit down or wait to be taken to a table.

- 何名様(なんめいさま)ですか？ How many people are you? | 2人(ふたり)です Two people. (Lesson 25)
- ご案内(あんない)します。こちらです Follow me, please (I'll lead you). This way.

Meals	
breakfast	朝食(ちょうしょく) | 朝(あさ)ご飯(はん)
lunch	昼食(ちゅうしょく) | 昼(ひる)ご飯(はん)
snack	おやつ
dinner	夕食(ゆうしょく) | 夕(ゆう)ご飯(はん)

いただきます！

We are now ready to look at the メニュー.
However, before you actually begin eating, don't forget to say いただきます (Lesson 27)!

- 英語(えいご)のメニューがありますか？
  Do you have an English menu?
- おすすめ料理(りょうり)は何(なん)ですか？
  What dishes do you recommend?
- 定食(ていしょく)はありますか？
  Do you have set menus (main dish with rice and miso soup)?
- ラーメンと餃子(ぎょうざ)をお願(ねが)いします
  I'll have ramen and some gyoza.
- あれと同(おな)じものにします
  (Pointing) I want the same as that thing over there.
- 外(そと)にある「親子丼定食(おやこどんていしょく)」をください
  I want the ***oyakodon*** set outside (in the window).
- 日本酒(にほんしゅ)もお願(ねが)いします
  Some sake too, please.
- ジュースのお代(か)わりをください
  Another juice, please.
- ごちそう様(さま)でした
  Thanks for the meal!

Paying

In many restaurants, you pay at the cash register near the entrance. Don't wait for the bill: just head to the register, and a member of staff will rush to ring up your bill. In Japan you don't tip, not even in restaurants! When you are given the change, simply keep it if you don't want the waiter to hunt you down in order to give back the money "you forgot." Saying goodbye with a ごちそう様でした ***gochisō sama deshita*** is good manners. A round of very loud ありがとうございました will ring out as you exit! Let's see a few useful sentences when the time to pay comes (review Lesson 42 too):

- お勘定(かんじょう)をお願(ねが)いします The bill, please.
- 全部(ぜんぶ)でいくらですか How much is it altogether?
- 勘定(かんじょう)は別々(べつべつ)にしてください We want separate bills.
- ２０００円(にせんえん)です It is 2,000 yen.

Flavors and sensations	
bitter	苦(にが)い
hot	熱(あつ)い
delicious	おいしい
sweet	甘(あま)い
cold	冷(つめ)たい
spicy hot	辛(から)い
salty	塩辛(しおから)い
sour	すっぱい
bland	味(あじ)が薄(うす)い

Cooking styles	
grilled	鉄板焼(てっぱんや)き
to roast, grill	焼(や)く
to cook, simmer	煮(に)る
to steam	蒸(む)す
to deep fry (in oil)	揚(あ)げる
to boil	ゆでる
to pickle	漬(つ)ける
to stir-fry	炒(いた)める

Vocabulary: Japanese food

Typical dishes 日本料理			
炒飯 (チャーハン)	Chinese style fried rice with egg, vegetables, meat, etc.	豆腐 (とうふ)	Tofu
団子 (だんご)	Typical Japanese sweet. Three rice-flour balls in sweet sauce	豚カツ (とん)	Pork, dipped in a crumb batter and deep-fried, served with a special sauce
どら焼き (や)	Typical Japanese sweet. A small pancake filled with ***anko*** sweet bean paste	うどん	Udon noodles, usually served in hot soup
餃子 (ぎょうざ)	Steamed or fried Chinese dumpling stuffed with meat or vegetables	焼き肉 (や にく)	Meat of different kinds, roasted on a hot plate (done by guests)
牛丼 (ぎゅうどん)	A bowl of rice topped with beef and onion	焼きそば (や)	Fried soba noodles with a special sauce, vegetables and meat
唐揚げ (からあ)	Japanese-style fried chicken	焼き鳥 (や とり)	Roasted chicken kebabs
カレーライス	Curry rice (Japanese-style)	**Ingredients 日本料理の材料** (にほんりょうり ざいりょう)	
カツ丼 (どん)	A bowl of rice topped with ***tonkatsu*** and sauce	あんこ	Sweetened bean paste.
味噌汁 (みそしる)	Miso soup	大根 (だいこん)	Daikon radish
餅 (もち)	Rice cake	大豆 (だいず)	Soy bean
納豆 (なっとう)	Fermented soybeans	だし	Dashi stock, the base for many Japanese dishes, made from fish or seaweed
おでん	Winter hot pot with daikon radish, ***chikuwa*** fish cakes, meatballs, etc.	ごま	Sesame
お好み焼き (この や)	"Pancake" on a bed of cabbage, to which anything can be added	白菜 (はくさい)	Chinese cabbage
おにぎり	Rice balls, usually with a filling such as tuna, umeboshi plum, salmon, kombu, etc	かつおぶし	Dried bonito flakes
親子丼 (おやこどん)	Bowl of rice (丼) with chicken (親, the "parent") and egg (子, the "child")	昆布 (こんぶ)	Kombu, kelp
ラーメン	Ramen	みりん	Mirin rice wine for cooking
刺身 (さしみ)	Sashimi	味噌 (みそ)	Miso paste
しゃぶしゃぶ	Vegetable and beef stew, with the beef very finely cut and boiled in water	のり	Nori seaweed
シュウマイ	Steamed meat dumpling, originally from China	蓮根 (れんこん)	Lotus root
そば	Soba noodles served either in hot soup or cold	しいたけ	Shiitake mushroom
すき焼き (や)	Vegetable, meat, and tofu stew, cooked by the guests themselves	醤油 (しょうゆ)	Soy sauce
寿司 (すし)	Sushi	竹の子 (たけ こ)	Bamboo shoot
たこ焼き (や)	Flour balls stuffed with octopus, typical in the Osaka region	梅干 (うめぼし)	Pickled plum
天ぷら (てん)	Tempura	わかめ	Wakame seaweed
		わさび	Wasabi horseradish

Food vocabulary

Vegetables 野菜	
cabbage	キャベツ
carrot	にんじん
cucumber	きゅうり
eggplant	なす
garlic	にんにく
green pepper	ピーマン
lettuce	レタス
onion	玉ねぎ
potato	じゃがいも
pumpkin	かぼちゃ
rice (cooked)	ご飯
rice (uncooked)	米
salad	サラダ
scallion	にら
tomato	トマト
Meat 肉	
beef	牛肉
chicken	鶏肉
ham	ハム
lamb, mutton	羊肉
pork	豚肉
sausage	ソーセージ
steak	ステーキ
Fish 魚	
bonito	鰹
clam	貝
crab	蟹
octopus	蛸
prawn, shrimp	海老
salmon	さけ / しゃけ
sardine	鰯
squid	いか
tuna	鮪

Others その他	
bread	パン
cake	ケーキ
cheese	チーズ
chocolate	チョコレート
dessert	デザート
egg	卵 / 玉子
ice cream	アイスクリーム
omelet	オムレツ
pasta	パスタ
pudding	プリン
soup	スープ
yoghurt	ヨーグルト
Utensils 器具	
big bowl	丼
bottle	瓶
bowl	茶碗
chopstick rest	箸置き
chopsticks	お箸
disposable chopsticks	割りばし
fork	フォーク
frying pan	フライパン
glass	グラス / コップ
lunch box	弁当箱
knife	ナイフ
menu	メニュー
napkin	ナプキン
plate	お皿
pot	鍋
wet hand towel	おしぼり
spoon	スプーン
Seasonings 調味料	
butter	バター
ginger	しょうが
ketchup	ケチャップ

mayonnaise	マヨネーズ
mustard	からし
oil	油
pepper	こしょう
salt	塩
sauce	ソース
sugar	砂糖
vinegar	酢
Drinks 飲み物	
alcoholic drink	お酒
beer	ビール
coffee	コーヒー
black tea	紅茶
green tea	抹茶
juice	ジュース
milk	牛乳
coffee with milk	カフェオレ
sake	日本酒
soft drink	ジュース
tea	お茶
water	水
wine	ワイン
Fruit 果物	
apple	りんご
banana	バナナ
cherry	さくらんぼ
grape	ぶどう
kiwi	キウイ
mandarin	みかん
melon	メロン
orange	オレンジ
peach	桃
pear	梨
strawberry	苺
watermelon	すいか

Cultural Note: Table Manners

It is worthwhile knowing some basic table manners so you don't commit any of the typical mistakes characteristic of 外人 ***gaijin*** (foreigners).

Let's start with the お箸 ***ohashi*** (chopsticks) used for almost all meals (except for Western dishes, although seeing someone eating スパゲッティ with お箸 is not unusual). Knowing how to use お箸 is essential if you don't want to starve to death in 日本, and with a little bit of practice one quickly gets used to them.

There are a few taboos with お箸: don't stick them into the ご飯 ***gohan*** or other food leaving them in a vertical position, or pass food from one diner to another from お箸 to お箸. Why? Both actions are only done at Japanese funerals.

Another custom has to do with alcohol (mainly ビール), which is consumed in great quantities when there are guests. Never serve yourself: you must wait till someone else serves you. Hold up your グラス while being served. Next, the right thing to do is for you to serve the person who has just filled your glass. Take the びん (bottle), with the label facing upward, and make as if you are going to serve: the person will respond at once by holding out their グラス with a wide smile and a loud ありがとう.

Don't be surprised when all the food comes at once, on small plates. The usual thing is to eat a little bit of everything, from one or several shared platters. Also remember it is not rude to noisily slurp スープ and noodles. In fact, slurping indicates one is enjoying the dish, and brings good luck! Last of all, we will mention it isn't bad table manners to raise your 茶碗 ***chawan*** of スープor ご飯 to your mouth to make eating easier.

There are many more unfamiliar customs, but you can start with these! いただきます!



Soba noodles can be slurped. (Photo: M. Bernabé)

漫画例 Manga Examples

This lesson only has three manga examples, due to the long vocabulary tables we have offered in this chapter. It is worthwhile committing all those words and phrases to memory because they are very useful and common in everyday life in Japan. Let's see some examples of their usage in manga.

Manga Example 1: At the store

We start with an everyday scene in any market or shopping area in Japan: a shop clerk trying to attract customers by shouting to each and every passerby about how good her products are. Notice the いらっしゃい, which is just a small distortion of いらっしゃいませ, the greeting used only in shops of any kind and restaurants, usually followed by Xはいかがですか？ (How about x?). Remember いかが is the formal version of どう (How about . . . ?, Lesson 34). In this case, the clerk is offering 納豆, extremely smelly and sticky fermented soybeans—very healthy though, or so they say.

To conclude this example, we will show you a little trick that will surely be great for your economy. Supermarkets in Japan usually close at 8 or 9 in the evening, and about half an hour before closing time, the staff start placing discount stickers on fresh produce. You can save a lot of money by shopping at that time! The stickers give the amount of the discount, for example, 2 割 ***ni wari*** (20% off), or even 半額 ***hangaku*** (half-price) (Lesson 42).



Akiko: いらっしゃい いらっしゃい！ 納豆(なっとう)はいかがですか！

Welcome, welcome! Nattō TOP how about be Q?!!

Welcome, welcome! How about some natto?!

Manga Example 2: The complex world of sushi



Gabriel Luque

Here we have a restaurant specializing in sushi. Let's give you a short sushi "guide" to help you learn even more vocabulary. There are two basic kinds of sushi: 巻き寿司 ***makizushi*** and 握り寿司 ***nigirizushi***. The first kind consists of a roll with the ingredient in the middle, surrounded with rice and wrapped in ***nori*** seaweed (巻く ***maku***, to roll). The type known as 鉄火巻き ***tekka maki*** (tuna rolls) are widely known. The second kind is a thin strip of fish, or other type of ねた (topping), on a ball of pressed rice (握り ***nigiri***). In addition to the types of sushi in this manga example トロ (fatty tuna), イカ (squid), and アナゴ (eel), there many others, such as まぐろ (tuna), えび (prawn), しゃけ (salmon), たこ (octopus), 卵焼き ***tamagoyaki*** (omelet), or たい (sea bream), to name just a few.

Customer 1: トロにイカね～
toro and squid EP
One toro and one squid!

Customer 2: こっちアナゴ追加(ついか)
here eel add
I'll have one more eel.

Customer 3: ビール２本(にほん)持(も)ってきて～
beer two bring come
Bring two bottles of beer!

Shoji: はい！
yes
Coming!

Manga Example 3: *Katsudon* and *donburi*

This example shows us an informal way of asking what one wants to eat, using the verb もらう ("to receive," Lessons 28 and 45). Notice the usage of でも, studied in Lesson 37.

In less luxurious restaurants there are pieces of paper stuck to the walls with the names of the dishes served and their price. In this example, the customer looks at the pieces of paper and chooses カツ丼 ***katsudon*** (deep-fried breaded pork on rice), which, moreover, is 特製 ***tokusei*** (special). Other dishes on the list include チャーハン (fried rice), 親子丼 ***oyakodon*** (egg and chicken on rice), and 卵丼 ***tamagodon*** (egg on rice). The kanji 丼 indicates "bowl of rice on which something is placed."



Studio Kōsen

Terada: 特製(とくせい)カツドン…でももらおうか
special katsudon . . . or something receive Q?
Could you bring me . . . a special katsudon?

Exercises 練習

1 What do the following words mean: 夕ご飯 (ゆうはん), 熱い (あつい), ゆでる, 甘い (あまい), 焼く (やく) and 炒める (いためる)?

2 Translate the words "chocolate," "water," "cabbage," "tomato," "prawn," and "omelet."

3 Define these typical Japanese dishes in English: 焼きそば, おにぎり, 親子丼 (おやこどん) and 天ぷら (てんぷら).

4 Name and describe at least five typical ingredients in Japanese cuisine.

5 You are at the market. Ask the stallholder for two onions and a lotus root.

6 You are in a hamburger joint, and the waiter asks you お飲み物 (のみもの) は何 (なん) にしますか？ What do you answer?

7 You are at a restaurant and you want to order a tempura set menu. How do you ask for it?

8 What does the word いらっしゃいませ mean, and when and where is it used?

9 What are the names of the two main kinds of 寿司 (すし) and why are they thus called?

10 In Manga Example 3 on the facing page, how much does the fried rice cost?

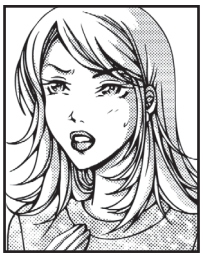
— Answers to all the exercises can be found online by following the link on page 7. —

Lesson 48 • 第 48 課

Compound Sentences (2)

Here is the second of three sections we will devote to the formation of compound sentences. This time we will study expressions of cause/reason, and intention/aim. You should try your best to learn these constructions well: they will be very useful.

Cause/reason: から



Lesson 41 gave different uses of から: the particle of origin (from), the subordinating conjunction, and the construction ～てから. Besides other meanings, such as "since" or "considering," から also means "because" in answer to どうして (why?). **Usage:** After a verb or ***-i*** adjective, nothing is added. ***-na*** adjectives and nouns take the verb "to be" (です/だ). The structure is usually "cause/reason + から + consequence."

- どうして帰(かえ)るの？つまらないから帰(かえ)る Why are you leaving? Because I'm bored.
- この本(ほん)はもう読(よ)んだから、あげる I already read this book, so I'll give it to you.
- ジョンはまじめだから合格(ごうかく)するだろう Since John is serious, I'm sure he'll pass.
- 彼(かれ)は先生(せんせい)だったから、これが分(わ)かるはずだ He was a teacher, so he should understand this.

Cause/reason: ので

ので is similar to から: "cause/reason + ので + consequence." **Usage:** After a verb or ***-i*** adjective, nothing is added. ***-na*** adjectives and nouns needな in the present tense, but in the past tense な is replaced with だった. But ので is not used when answering どうして (why?) . ので is a weightier expression than から , used when the speaker thinks the reason stated before から is valid and obvious, and that the listener will agree. In principle, using ので is wrong when the first part of the sentence expresses conjecture, invitation, request, personal opinion or wish. But there is a modern tendency, especially among the young, to use ので and から almost without distinction. Still, do bear in mind the slight differences in the meanings between both expressions.

- 雨(あめ)が降(ふ)っていたので行(い)けなかった I couldn't go, because it was raining.
- 頭(あたま)が痛(いた)いので仕事(しごと)が出来(でき)ない I can't work because I have a headache.
- この街(まち)は安全(あんぜん)なので夜(よる)によく散歩(さんぽ)する Since this town is safe, I usually take walks at night.
- 彼(かれ)はアホなので謝(あやま)らないよ Because he is stupid, he won't apologize.

Aim: ために

ために is used to express intention or aim, meaning "for" or "in order to." **Usage:** After a verb nothing is added, and after a noun we must use の (replaced by だった in the past tense). This form of ために is not used with adjectives of any kind.

- 車を買うためにいっぱい働きます I work a lot in order to buy myself a car.
- 日本人は仕事のために生きているみたいだ It seems the Japanese live to work.
- いい仕事を見つけるために勉強しています I study in order to find a good job.
- 彼女のために何でもやれるぞ I can do anything for my girlfriend.

Sometimes ために is used to express cause/reason, just like から or ので. In this case, it can be used with adjectives. ***-i*** adjectives don't require anything, while ***-na*** adjectives require な. This usage of ために is rather formal and seldom used, but it is worthwhile knowing.

- 風邪をひいたために、家で休んでいた Because I caught a cold, I rested at home.
- 家が古いために、修理が必要だ Because the house is old, it needs repairing.

Aim: のに

のに is like ために, as it expresses an aim and can be translated as "for." のに is nothing more than the phrase nominalizer の, studied in Lesson 40, plus the particle に, which here indicates intention. のに is only used after verbs in the infinitive.

- じゃがいもを切のに包丁を使った I used a kitchen knife to cut the potato.
- キムチを作るのに白菜が必要だ To prepare kimchi you need Chinese cabbage.
- 秋葉原へ行くのに電車が便利だ To go to Akihabara the train is convenient.
- ＨＰを作るのに二ヶ月もかかった It took me 2 months to make the web page.

Note: There is another completely different usage of のに which indicates "although," "in spite of." We will study this in the next lesson.

When: 時

Let's go on to study other useful constructions in the formation of complex sentences. The first construction is 時 ***toki***, which indicates time or "when." **Usage:** Nothing is added after a verb or an ***-i*** adjective. With ***-na*** adjectives, な is required, while with nouns we must add の. In the past tense, however, both do without な and の, respectively, and use だった.

- 韓国に行った時、けっこう暑かったです When I went to Korea it was quite hot.
- 子どもの時、よく友達と遊んでいた When I was a boy, I played with my friends.

You can add に to 時, obtaining 時に. The meaning is the same, although 時に is more emphatic and stronger than just 時.

- 試験の時にすごく緊張していたよ At the time of the exam, I was very nervous.
- 彼が来た時にお姉さんは出かけた When he came, my elder sister went out.

While: 間に

間に ***aida ni*** indicates the interval between two points in time (meaning "while" or "during") or in space (meaning "between"). **Usage:** The same as 時.

- 日本にいる間に、空手を習いたい I want to learn karate while I'm in Japan.
- 夏休みの間、よく勉強しました I studied very hard during the summer holidays.
- 日本と韓国の間に日本海がある Between Korea and Japan is the Sea of Japan.

Note: For 間に, the action stated in the main sentence happens "within" the time introduced by the sentence ending in 間に. But 間 on its own indicates both actions happen "during" exactly the same time period.

- 週末の間、京都を歩いた All weekend long I walked through Kyoto.
- 週末の間に京都を歩いた At the weekend (at some point) I walked through Kyoto.

While: うちに

The expression うちに has an almost equivalent meaning to 間に, and also means "while." Both can be used without distinction in many sentences. But while 間に indicates an interval of time with starting and ending points, which can be measured with a watch, うちに doesn't have that connotation, and merely indicates "time interval not necessarily measurable." **Usage:** Just like 時 and 間に.

- 大学にいるうちに勉強しなさい While you are at university, you must study.
- 雨が降らないうちに終わりましょう Let's finish while it's not raining (before it rains).
- 寿司を新鮮なうちに買いましょう Let's buy sushi while it's fresh.
- お茶を温かいうちに飲んでください Drink your tea while it's hot.

Before and after

The expressions meaning "before" and "after" are 前に ***mae ni*** and 後で ***ato de***. Nothing is added between the verb and 前に. With nouns, の is required. These expressions are not used with adjectives.

- ジムは家に入る前に「おはよう」と言った Jim said hello before going in the house.
- 昼ごはんの前に君と話したい I want to talk with you before lunch.

Verbs preceding 後で must be in the past tense. Nouns require の. **Note:** Sometimes, in informal register, we can do without the で in 後で.

- ビールを飲んだ後(で)げっぷが出た I burped after drinking the beer.
- 映画を見た後で公園へ行きました After watching a movie, I went to the park.
- 授業の後でゲームセンターに行こうよ Let's go to the game center after class.

Conjunctions

Let's now see a few more useful conjunctions:

And (later) / and (then) / and (also): そして

- 昨日は遊園地に行った。そして、おいしい夕食を食べた
  I went to an amusement park yesterday. And (later) had a delicious dinner.
- 私はやせたいのでダイエットをしています。そして、運動もしています
  Because I want to lose some weight, I'm on a diet. And (also) I'm taking exercise.

Then / therefore / later / now: それで

- 岩手県で生まれて、愛知県で育った。それで、埼玉県で結婚した
  I was born in Iwate Prefecture and raised in Aichi. Later on, I married in Saitama.
- オレは大学に行けなかった。それで、いい仕事を見つけることが出来なかった I couldn't go to university. Therefore, I couldn't find a good job.

Well / well then / then: それでは (それじゃ)

- もう時間です。それでは、スピーチを始めましょう
  It's time now. Well then, I'll start my speech.

After that / and then / since then: それから

- ５年前(ごねんまえ)、大学(だいがく)を卒業(そつぎょう)した。それから、彼(かれ)と全然(ぜんぜん)会(あ)っていないな
  I graduated from university five years ago. Since then, I haven't seen him again.

Therefore / that's why / consequently / so: だから

- 先週(せんしゅう)、旅行(りょこう)に行(い)った。だから、今(いま)はとても疲(つか)れている
  I went on a trip last week. That's why I'm tired.
- 社長(しゃちょう)は無駄(むだ)にお金(かね)を使(つか)った。だから、会社(かいしゃ)が倒産(とうさん)してしまいました
  The president squandered money. Consequently, the company went bankrupt.

🎧 Compound sentences (2): General summary table		
～から	Cause/reason. "Since, because, considering"	すしが好きだから、いっぱい食べよう Since I like sushi, I shall eat a lot.
～ので	Cause/reason. "Since, because, considering"	渋谷は人が多いので、迷いやすいです Since there are lots of people in Shibuya, it's easy to get lost.
～ために	Aim/intention. "For"	日本へ行くために３年間も働いた In order to go to Japan, I worked for three years.
～のに	Aim/intention. "For"	すしを作るのに、新鮮な魚がいる To make sushi, you need fresh fish.
～時(とき)	"When"	渋谷にいる時、いつも迷ってしまう When I'm in Shibuya, I always get lost.
～間(あいだ)に	Physical or temporal distance between two points. "While, during"	彼が寝ている間に買い物をしに行ってこよう While he's sleeping, I shall go shopping (and come back).
～うちに	Period during which something remains valid. "While, during"	日本にいるうちに北海道へ行きたい While I'm in Japan, I want to go to Hokkaido.
～前(まえ)に	"Before"	寝る前に歯を磨きなさい Before going to sleep, brush your teeth.
～後(あと)で	"After"	買い物に行った後で、魚を食べた After going shopping, I ate fish.

好きな ***suki-na*** that one likes; いっぱい a lot; 食べる ***taberu*** to eat; 渋谷 ***Shibuya*** Shibuya (district in Tokyo); 人 ***hito*** people; 多い ***ooi*** a lot of; 迷う ***mayou*** to get lost; 日本 ***Nihon*** Japan; 行く ***iku*** to go; ３年間 ***san nen kan*** for 3 years; 働く ***hataraku*** to work; 作る ***tsukuru*** to make; 新鮮な ***shinsen-na*** fresh; 魚 ***sakana*** fish; いつも always; 寝る ***neru*** to sleep; 買い物 ***kaimono*** shopping; 北海道 ***Hokkaidō*** Hokkaido; 歯を磨く ***ha o migaku*** to brush one's teeth

漫画例 Manga Examples

As usual, the manga examples will help us see in practice how to use the constructions we have just studied. These panels should help you clarify the explanations on the new structures and give you a more concrete idea of their usage.

Manga Example 1: Cause or reason using *node*

In this first example someone has eaten what was on the table, and the characters are arguing about who's done it. Suddenly, the boy in the panel confesses he is the "guilty" one: he explains the reason in this sentence using ので. Notice how the reason (あんまり腹がへった) precedes the consequence (つい無断でたべちゃった). The verb before ので must be in the simple form. In this case we have 減る ***heru*** (decrease), which is part of the set phrase 腹が減る ***hara ga heru***, which literally means "the stomach decreases," although its real meaning is "to be hungry" (Lesson 27).

ので is used when the cause or reason expressed by the speaker is clear, and it is assumed the listener will accept it as something understandable and obvious. In our example, the connotation of ので is not that strong, and the almost synonymous word から could have been used instead with no problem. Last of all, it is worth mentioning that ので is used in formal situations more often than から: it sounds more "serious." **Notes:** あんまり is a distortion of あまり which we studied in Lesson 45, used here to mean "so much." Notice the contraction たべちゃった: its non-contracted form is 食べてしまった. Take the opportunity to go back to Lesson 35 and review this last form.



Taku: あんまり腹(はら)がへったので、つい無断(むだん)でたべちゃった。ゆるしてください。
so much stomach SP decrease because, inadvertently without permission. forgive please
I was so hungry I ate it without permission. Please forgive me.

Manga Example 2: Perhaps: Cause or reason tag *kara*

Like ので, the word から is used to indicate cause/reason. Here we see から dangling at the end of the sentence. It could be the answer to a question with どうして (why?), or a simple explanation for why something is done. There is another explanation for this last usage: sometimes a sentence ends with the tag から, ambiguously implying, by way of excuse, that there is a reason for what one is doing, but without putting forward a specific explanation. Sentences such as 私、もう帰るから . . . ***Watashi, mō kaeru kara*** "I'm going now, (so . . .)" or ちょっと忙しいんだから . . . ***Chotto isogashii n dakara*** "I'm a little busy (so . . .)" are common. **Notes:** なんにも is the distortion of 何も ***nani mo*** (nothing, Lesson 37). You should also take this opportunity to review the usage of もう (Lesson 40).



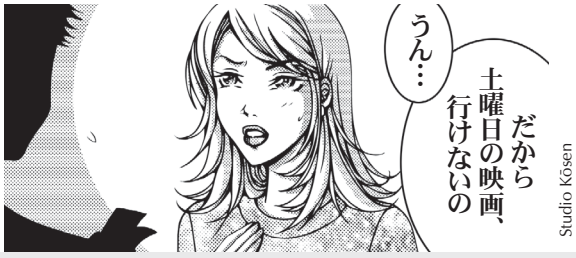
Lin: もう思い残すことなんか、なんにもないから…

any more regret thing (emphasis), nothing there is because . . .

So, there is nothing else I can regret . . .

Manga Example 3: Idiomatic usage of *dakara*

In this chapter we looked at the expression だから, which is used to state a reason or a cause, as in: 彼は菜食主義者だ。だから、肉を食べない ***Kare wa saishokushugisha da. Dakara niku o tabenai.*** "He is a vegetarian. So he doesn't eat meat." However, in this example, we find a slightly different usage of だから, often seen in spoken language: だから is used at the beginning of a sentence to convey annoyance, or insistence on something. It could be translated as "for goodness sake," "I've already told you . . . ," "but you . . ." **Note:** うん is the informal way of saying "yes," while ううん means "no."



Sayaka: うん…だから土曜日の映画、行けないの

yes . . . that's why Saturday POP movie, go EP

Yes . . . I've already told you I can't go to the movies on Saturday.

Manga Example 4: Usage of *tame ni*

A few pages ago, we learned that ために means "for" or "in order to": here is a good example of its usage. The speaker indicates the "aim" for which he was born, using ために. However, he says it with the pronoun この (this), and, therefore, unless we know the context, we can't tell what he's talking about. Since he is skating in the image, we can imagine the original sentence could have been something like 俺はスケートをするために生まれてきた (I was born to skate). Using the ***kosoado*** pronouns (Lesson 34), この (this), その (that), and あの (that over there) in conjunction with grammatical constructions is very common. We will see another instance in Manga Example 6.



Xian Nu Studio

Teruo: 俺(おれ)はこのために生(う)まれてきた！
I TOP this for born come!
I was born for this!

Manga Example 5: Usage of *toki*

Let's now study how to say "when" in Japanese using 時. As we can see in the example, the process is quite easy: all you need to do is add the word 時 after the sentence with which we want to indicate "when," as in the example, 最後に電話で話した時 (when I last spoke with him on the phone.) Try making your own sentences with 時: it is simple and with practice you will master it. **Note 1:** Depending on the inflection of the verb or adjective preceding 時, the meaning changes. If conjugated in the past tense, it refers to something that happened in a previous stage: 昨日、料理をしていた時、彼が来た ***Kinō, ryōri o shite ita toki, kare ga kita*** (Yesterday, when I was cooking, he came.) In the infinitive, it refers to something that we know will inevitably happen in the future or something that usually happens: 私は寝る時、悪夢を見てしまう ***Watashi wa neru toki, akumu o mite shimau*** (Whenever I sleep, I have bad dreams.). **Note 2:** おっしゃる is a formal version of 言う (Lesson 52).



J.M. Ken Niimura

Fletcher: いや、私(わたし)が先生(せんせい)と最後(さいご)に電話(でんわ)で話(はな)した時(とき)、こうおっしゃっていた
no, I SP teacher CP last telephone IP talk when, in this way said
Well, when I last spoke with the teacher on the phone, that's what he said.

Manga Example 6: Usage of *mae ni*

Let's see an example of how to say "before" using the word 前, which we already know. We simply add 前に after a sentence, like in the example: 私を殺す前にキスしてね ***Watashi o korosu mae ni kisu shite ne*** (Kiss me before you kill me). The opposite of 前に is 後で ***ato de*** (after).



Gabriel Luque

As mentioned in Manga Example 4, it is common to see the ***kosoado*** pronouns この, その, and あの together with grammatical constructions: here we have その前に (before that). More examples: この後で (after this), あのように (in that way, Lesson 43), そのはずだ (that is almost certain, Lesson 43), この場合 ***kono ba'ai*** (in this case, Lesson 46), そのうちに ***sono uchi ni*** (one of these days, Lesson 48), このまま (just as it is, Lesson 46).

Charlie: その前(まえ)にお前(まえ)の首(くび)へし折(お)るぞ
that before you POP neck break EP
Before that, I'll break your neck.

Manga Example 7: Usage of *sore de wa*

We will conclude this intense but useful lesson with an example of それでは, which, as we see in this panel, is usually used in speeches or introductions as a sign that we are about to start talking, like our "now" or "well, then."

それでは is also used when saying goodbye, sometimes contracted into じゃ when speaking: one of the first expressions we saw in Lesson 4 was それじゃ、また明日会いましょう ***Sore ja, mata ashita aimashō*** (Well, let's meet again tomorrow). This expression can be contracted into それじゃ、また明日 (Well, [see you] tomorrow), and even further to じゃね、また (Well, see you), cutting the それ. There is also the concise but extremely common じゃね (literally "well" or "well then," but used to mean "see you later").



Studio Kōsen

Kitano: えーそれでは新(あたら)しい人事(じんじ)の発表(はっぴょう)をー
er . . . then new staff POP introduction DOP
Er . . . Well, let's introduce the new staff and . . .

Exercises 練習

1 Answer the question どうして彼と付き合っているの？ with "Because I like him." (好きな that one likes; 彼 he; 付き合う to go out with)

2 Translate: "Because I'm thirsty, I (will) drink water." Use both ので and から (to be thirsty のどがかわく; to drink 飲む; water 水)

3 Translate the sentence: 正男くんにほれたので、別かれましょう。(正男 Masao; ほれる to fall in love; 別れる to split up)

4 Translate: "To dance, you need a little bit of grace." (to dance 踊る; necessary 必要な; a little bit of 少しの; grace 優雅さ)

5 Translate: 入院していた時、悲しかったです。(入院する to be hospitalized; 悲しい sad)

6 Translate: ご飯を温かいうちに食べなさい。(ご飯 food; 温かい warm; 食べる to eat)

7 Translate: "Kiss me before going to sleep." (to kiss キスする; to sleep 寝る)

8 Translate: "I went to Thailand. And later, I also went to Vietnam." (to go 行く; Thailand タイ; Vietnam ベトナム)

9 What does だから mean when spoken at the beginning of a sentence?

10 Where does the expression じゃね come from, and what does it literally mean? What is its actual meaning?

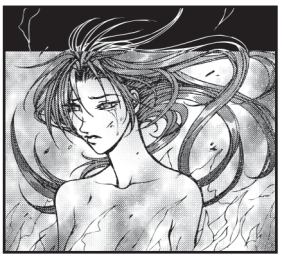
— Answers to all the exercises can be found online by following the link on page 7. —

Lesson 49 • 第 49 課

Compound Sentences (3)

The time has come for the third and final of our intensive series of lessons on compound sentences, this time with a focus on expressing opposition or contrast.

But / however: けれども/けれど/けど/が



The basic word for "but/however" is けれども, although it is quite formal and is usually reduced to けれど (also formal, but less so). It can be reduced even more to the informal expression けど. We also have が, which has an equivalent meaning (we studied its usage as "but" in Lesson 37, which we advise reviewing). **Usage:** We add nothing after verbs and ***-i*** adjectives. Nouns and ***-na*** adjectives need the verb to be in its simple form, だ.

- バイクを運転(うんてん)できるけれども、バイクがありません I can ride a motorcycle, but I don't have one.
- カメラを買(か)いたいけれど、お金(かね)がない I want to buy a camera, but I don't have any money.
- ボブは先生(せんせい)だけど、教(おし)えるのが嫌(きら)いだ Bob is a teacher, but he doesn't like teaching.
- 彼(かれ)は映画(えいが)は好(す)きだが、アニメは好(す)きではない He likes films, but not anime.
- 昨日(きのう)は病気(びょうき)だったけど、今日(きょう)は大丈夫(だいじょうぶ)だ Yesterday I was sick, but today I'm fine.

Just like with が (Lesson 37), sometimes the variations of けれども are used to link sentences and don't necessarily have the meaning "but."

- 後(あと)で梅田(うめだ)へ行(い)くけど、美穂(みほ)も来(く)る？ Later I'll go to Umeda, will you come too, Miho?
- 相談(そうだん)したいんですが、時間(じかん)がありますか？ I would like to consult with you about something, do you have time?

The same words are used in spoken language to soften sentences, especially when making requests or giving excuses: they are placed at the end, leaving the continuation in the air.

- 今(いま)ちょっと忙(いそが)しいんですけれども . . . Now I'm a little busy, but . . .
- そのパソコンを見(み)たいんだけど . . . I would like to see that computer, but . . .

🎧 Although / despite: のに

This construction has nothing to do with its homophone のに meaning aim/intention (page 165). This のに, like けれども and its "family," means "although" or "despite." The expression のに has a distinct subjective and emotional connotation: we use it to indicate that something that was almost a fact finally has not been possible and provokes in the speaker a feeling of surprise, frustration, or even annoyance. If you want to avoid any subjective or emotional nuance, use けれども, けれど, けど or が. **Usage:** Nothing is added after verbs or ***-i*** adjectives, while nouns and ***-na*** adjectives require な.

- ダイエットをしているのに、全然(ぜんぜん)やせない I'm on a diet but despite that, I'm not losing any weight.
- 眠(ねむ)かったのに、徹夜(てつや)をしました Though I was sleepy, I worked through the night.
- 彼女(かのじょ)が好(す)きなのに、告白(こくはく)できない Although I like her, I'm can't declare my love.
- いい天気(てんき)なのに、外(そと)に出(で)られない Despite this nice weather, I can't go out.

In a colloquial register, sentences that trail off with のに are common. These sentences express displeasure or frustration, and could be translated as "and to think that . . ."

- 彼(かれ)はすごく金持(かねも)ちなのに . . . And to think that he's so rich . . .
- なんでそれが欲(ほ)しくないの？ただなのに . . . Why don't you want that? It's free . . .

🎧 Although / in spite of: くせに

くせに is like のに. While のに can be used in formally and colloquially, くせに is colloquial or even vulgar, with pejorative and accusatory connotations. **Usage:** Nothing is added after verbs or ***-i*** adjectives. With nouns, の needed; with ***-na*** adjectives, we use な.

- 何(なに)も知(し)らないくせに、何(なに)を言(い)っているの？ You don't know anything; what are you saying?
- 医者(いしゃ)のくせに、病気(びょうき)を治(なお)せない Although he's a doctor, he can't cure sickness.

As with のに, we will sometimes find くせに at the end of a sentence that trails off.

- 何(なん)だ、その態度(たいど)？がきのくせに . . . What's with that attitude? You're nothing but a little brat . . .

🎧 Even / even if: ～ても

In Lesson 32 we saw the expression ～てもいい, to ask for permission. We will now study a related expression, since the basic structure is exactly the same: ～ても, meaning "even" or "even if," in sentences expressing hypothesis or conjecture, unlike のに, which is used with sentences whose certainty is assured. **Usage:** Verbs, nouns, and adjectives of both kinds must be conjugated in the ***-te*** form (Lesson 35), to which も is added.

🎧 Interrogatives + ～ても	
何を言っても	No matter what he says . . .
誰に言っても	No matter who he says it to . . .
どう言っても	No matter how he says it . . .
どんな説明しても	No matter how he explains . . .
どこへ行っても	No matter where he goes . . .
いつ行っても	No matter when he goes . . .
いくら払っても	No matter how much he pays...
言う ***iu*** to say; 説明する ***setsumei suru*** to explain; 行く ***iku*** to go; 払う ***harau*** to pay	

- 雨が降っても、試合を行います Even if it rains, the match will be held.
- 免許がなくても、このバイクを運転できる Even without a license, you can drive this motorcycle.
- パソコンを買っても仕事ができない Even if I buy a computer, I can't work.
- 難しくても、試験に合格したい No matter how difficult it is, I want to pass the exam.
- この問題、アホでも解ける Even a fool can solve this problem.

If we add an interrogative pronoun or adverb (Lesson 34) to a verb + ても, we obtain sentences such as: "no matter what I do . . ." or "no matter what it is . . ." (see table, above).

- いつ行っても、あの店は閉まっている No matter when I go, that shop is closed.
- 何を言っても、君を許すつもりはない No matter what you say, I won't forgive you.

🎧 Strong recommendation: ～方がいい

Let's look at some other constructions. ～方がいい ***hō ga ii*** , is used to make strong recommendations or suggestions, not quite orders, but almost. **Usage:** This expression is only used with verbs, which must be conjugated in the past tense (except with negative expressions, when verbs are conjugated in the negative of the present tense).

- 彼女に花をあげた方がいいと思うよ I think you should give her some flowers.

- 彼を殺すのをあきらめた方がいいよ If I were you, I'd forget about killing him.
- その水を飲まない方がいいよ I recommend you don't drink that water.
- 腐っているから、みかんを食べない方がいいよ Don't eat the mandarins, because they are rotten.

More usages of the *-ō* conjugation

Let's now see two expressions using the ***-ō*** conjugation, which we studied in Lesson 34, and which on its own means "let's . . ."

All you need to do is add 〜とする or 〜と思う to a verb in the ***-ō*** form to create two new expressions with different meanings, which can be very useful.

We will start with the construction ***-ō*** form + とする. It means "to try to" or, more literally, "to be in the process of doing something."

- 私は銀行強盗をしようとしていた I was trying to rob a bank.
- 彼はバスに乗ろうとした時、死んだ As he was going to get on the bus, he died.
- マンガを描こうとしているけど、難しいね I'm trying to draw a comic book, but it's difficult.
- バカなのに大学に入ろうとしている Even though I'm stupid, I'm trying to get into university.

The second new expression ***-ō*** form + と思 is used to indicate something like "I think I'm going to . . . ," that is, it is simply the combination of the ***-ō*** form ("let's . . . ," Lesson 34) plus と思う ("I think that . . ." Lesson 41).

- 彼女に告白しようと思っています I'm thinking of declaring my love to her.
- 勉強をやめようと思っている I'm thinking about abandoning my studies.
- 鈴木さんは家を買おうと思っている Mr. Suzuki is thinking of buying a house.

Conjunctions

We will finish this third lesson in our series devoted to the formation of compound sentences by studying a few essential conjunctions. On page 179 you also have a summary table with all the conjunctions we have seen thus far.

But / however / nevertheless: だけれども / だけれど / だけど / でも / しかし

- 社長はとても優しいです。だけれど、その息子は鬼みたいに厳しいです The director is very kind. However, his son is so demanding, he's like an ogre.

- 巻き寿司は大好きだ。でも、きゅうりの巻き寿司は大嫌いだ！
  I love makizushi. But I hate cucumber makizushi!

In spite of that / however: それなのに / なのに

- 加藤さんはとても金持ちです。それなのに、非常にけちです
  Mr. Kato is very rich. In spite of that, he is extremely stingy.
- 僕はかっこいい。なのに、女が寄ってこない
  I'm handsome. However, the girls don't come near me.

🎧 Compound sentences (3): General summary table		
～けれども ～けれど ～けど ～が	But / However / Nevertheless (～けれども: formal, ～けれど: neutral, ～けど: informal, ～が: neutral / formal)	彼は歯科医ですけれども、歯を抜けません He's a dentist, but he can't pull out a tooth. (formal)
		彼は歯科医だけど、歯を抜けない He's a dentist, but he can't pull out a tooth. (inf.)
		彼は歯科医だが、歯を抜けません He's a dentist but he can't pull out a tooth. (neutral / formal)
～のに	Although / In spite of	彼は歯科医なのに、歯を抜けない Although he's a dentist, he can't pull out a tooth.
～くせに	Although / In spite of (informal / pejorative)	彼は歯科医のくせに、歯を抜けない Although he is a dentist, he can't even pull out a tooth! (pejorative)
～ても	Even if / Although (In hypothetical sentences)	彼は歯科医でも、歯も抜けない Even if he is a dentist, he can't pull out a tooth.
～方がいい	You had better / You should (Strong recommendation or suggestion)	歯が痛いだろう？歯科医に行った方がいいよ Your tooth is painful, isn't it? You should go to the dentist.
～おうとする	To try to / To be in the process of doing something"	歯科医が歯を抜こうとしていた The dentist was trying to pull out a tooth.
～おうと思	I think I'm going to …	歯が痛いから、歯科医に行こうと思っている Since my tooth is hurting, I think I'm going to go to the dentist.
彼 ***kare*** he; 歯科医 ***shikai*** dentist; 歯 ***ha*** tooth; 抜く ***nuku*** to pull out; 痛い ***itai*** painful; 行く ***iku*** to go		

🎧 Summary table: Conjunctions (Lessons 46, 48 and 49)		
L.46 例えば	For example	花が好きです。例えば、桜や椿が大好きです I like flowers. For example, I like sakura and camellias very much.
L.46 ところで	By the way	いい天気だね。ところで、桜はもう咲いた？ Isn't the weather fine? By the way, have the sakura bloomed yet?
L.46 それに	Besides	椿は満開です。それに、桜もきれいです The camellias are in full bloom. And besides, the sakura are pretty too.
L.48 そして	And later / And then	昼ご飯を食べた。そして、桜を見に行った I ate lunch. And then, I went to see the sakura.
L.48 それで	Then / Therefore	今日、昼ご飯を食べなかった。それで、今とてもお腹がすいている I haven't had lunch today. Therefore, I'm very hungry now.
L.48 それでは	Well then / Then	おはようございます！それでは、桜を見に行こう！ Good morning! Well then, let's go and see the sakura!
L.48 それから	After that	今日は桜を見に行きます。それから、昼ご飯を食べるつもりです Today, I'm going to see the sakura. After that, I intend to have lunch.
L.48 だから	Therefore	桜が咲いた。だから、見に行きました。 The sakura have bloomed. Therefore, I went to see them.
L.49 だけれども だけれど だけど でも しかし	But However Nevertheless	椿はもう咲いています。だけれども、桜はまだ咲いていません The camellias have already bloomed. However, the sakura haven't bloomed yet. もう昼ご飯を食べた。でも、まだお腹がすいている I have already had lunch. But I'm still hungry. 今日はいい天気です。しかし、明日は雨が降るそうです Today the weather is fine. But, apparently, it is going to rain tomorrow.
L.49 それなのに なのに	Despite that/ However	桜が咲いている。なのに、見に行けない The sakura have bloomed. However I can't go to see them.

花 ***hana*** flower; 好きな ***suki-na*** that one likes; 桜 ***sakura*** cherry blossom (sakura); 椿 ***tsubaki*** camellia; いい ***ii*** fine; 今 ***ima*** now; 天気 ***tenki*** weather; 咲く ***saku*** to bloom; 満開 ***mankai*** full bloom; きれいな pretty; 昼ごはん ***hiru gohan*** lunch; 食べる ***taberu*** to eat; 見に行く ***mi ni iku*** to go to see; 今日 ***kyō*** today; お腹がすく ***o naka ga suku*** to be hungry; 明日 ***ashita*** tomorrow; 雨が降る ***ame ga furu*** to rain

漫画例 Manga Examples

We've really stepped up the pace in the last few lessons as we study more and more complicated aspects of the language and we hope that you can feel your Japanese rapidly improving. Don't give up now, you are doing very well!

Manga Example 1: Sentence-ending *kedo* and usage of *no ni*

We get to see two expressions in this example. To start with, take a look at the clerk's first sentence, それなら安くしとくけど and the けど closing it. The meaning of this けど is not exactly "but" (as usually is the case in the word's most orthodox usage); it is more a way of leaving the sentence unfinished, thus softening the statement and perhaps implying something unspoken (in this case something like "but why on earth would you want to buy something like that?!")

Regarding the のに in あんた外国人なのに, notice that as it is placed after a noun 外国人, it needs the help of な. Here, the speaker expresses some surprise, therefore, it is not unusual that he uses のに, as you will remember that this construction has a relevant ingredient of subjectivity. Here, のに can be translated as "despite." **Notes:** The prefix お before the word いくら (how much) is honorific and implies respect (Lesson 52). The 〜とく in 安くしとく is a spoken contraction of 〜ておく (Lesson 35). The adjective 妙な ***myō na*** (written here in katakana) is difficult to translate: it has the connotation of "strange" or "unexpected." もん is the colloquial contraction of the word 物 ***mono*** (thing).



George: これ、おいくらですか？
this, how much be Q?
How much is this?

Man: それなら安(やす)くしとくけど…
that if cheap put but . . .
I can make that cheap for you . . .

George: あんた外国人(がいこくじん)なのに、ミョウなもんに興味(きょうみ)あるんだね。
you foreigner although, strange thing IOP interest there are be EP
Despite being a foreigner, you are interested in very strange things, aren't you?

Manga Example 2: *Shikashi* and *no ni* at the end of a sentence

Here we also have two expressions to comment on. The first one is しかし meaning "but," "however" or "nevertheless." It is certainly a very useful word, although in colloquial register でも (but) is used more often.



Gabriel Luque

The second expression is のに, closing the panel and leaving the sentence's conclusion in the air. Its meaning could be translated as "although" but in this context we can interpret it as "To think it hasn't rained . . ." or "But it hasn't rained . . ." **Note:** 降っちゃいない is the contraction of 降ってはいない. Notice the emphatic particle も in this construction: go back to Lesson 37 to review its usage.

Satoru: しかし…どうしてこんなに水(みず)がにごっているのだろう…？

however . . . why like this water SP muddy POP be . . . ?

However . . . I wonder why the water is so muddy?

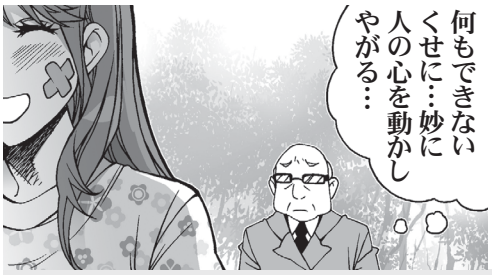
大雨(おおあめ)も降(ふ)っちゃいないのに…

heavy rain neither fall although . . .

But it hasn't rained that heavily . . .

Manga Example 3: The pejorative expression *kuse ni*

We have learned how the expression くせに means "although," "despite," but with a pejorative nuance. With this same pejorative intention, we have translated the 何もできないくせに part, literally "In spite of not being able to do anything," as "Despite his incompetence," because the word "incompetence" implies that the speaker is superior or disdainful. **Note:** The construction ～やがる shows violence, extreme roughness, or a threat. We will study it in Lesson 53. As you have probably noticed, using くせに and やがる in the same sentence gives it a layer of "threat" or "disdain" almost impossible to convey in a translation.



Xian Nu Studio

Kisaki: 何(なに)もできないくせに…妙(みょう)に人(ひと)の心(こころ)を動(うご)かしやがる…

nothing can in spite of… strange person POP heart DOP move (vulgar)

Despite his incompetence . . . he can oddly move people . . .

Manga Example 4: Expressing "even" with *-temo*

It is now time to review the usage of the construction ***-te*** form + も (or 〜ても as we saw earlier in this chapter) which, you will remember, has the meaning of "even" or "although," and is used in sentences expressing hypothesis. In this sentence, the speaker expresses the hypothesis 死んでも, and then the result if that supposition finally became true: 後悔はしない. **Notes:** Notice the usage of ために (for), which in this case comes with the ***kosoado*** その (that), forming そのために (for that), as we saw in Lesson 48. Notice, too, the emphatic usage of the particle は in 後悔はしない (I won't regret it) (Lesson 37).



Xian Nu Studio

Tetsuya: そのために死(し)んでも後悔(こうかい)はしないぞ！

that for die regret TOP do not EP!

Even if I die for that, I won't regret it!

Manga Example 5: No matter how . . .

In this chapter we also saw that we combine an interrogative plus a verb and the 〜ても construction, we obtain sentences such as: "no matter what I do . . ." Here we have one of them: いくら電話しても (no matter how much I call . . .). Usually, いくら has the meaning of "how much" when talking about quantity of money, but here it is used for a more general meaning of "how much / many." Another option would be 何回電話しても ***nan kai denwa shitemo*** (no matter how many times I call . . .). **Notes:** Take the opportunity to review ので ("since," "because," Lesson 48), and notice as well the 〜てみる construction (giving the nuance of "try to do something," Lesson 35) of きてみた. Last of all, the んだ closing the sentence is the typical tag used to give "security" or to "soften" the sentence, which we studied in Manga Example 4 in Lesson 40.



Studio Kōsen

Seiji: いくら電話(でんわ)しても出(で)ないので、心配(しんぱい)になって来てみたんだ

how much telephone do go out since worry become come try be

Since no matter how much I called no one answered, I got worried and came.

Manga Example 6: *Hō ga ii* for strong suggestion

And now we focus on ～方がいい***hō ga ii,*** used to give suggestions or advice and rather strong; not quite an order, but it comes very close. Usually, ～方がいい is used to advise other people. However, we see here a slightly different usage: the speaker is consulting about something that she thinks might be necessary for her to do: あたしは死んだほうがいいのか？ Remember that the verb before ～方がいい must be conjugated in the past-affirmative（死んだ方がいい）or present-negative（死なない方がいい）. **Note:** やっぱり has no direct translation: it's something like "after all" or "I knew that."



Studio K'osen

Chie: あたしやっぱり死(し)んだほうがいいんかなぁ
I after all die better if Q? EP
After all, it is better if I die, isn't it?

Manga Example 7: Usage of *-ō to suru*

The final manga example in this lesson lesson will help illustrate the usage of the ～おうとする construction (to try to, to be in the process of doing something). In our sentence, Noriko says 逃げようとしている. In order to master this construction, you should thoroughly review the ***-ō*** form (Lesson 34). **Note:** Notice the いつかのように part. いつか means "sometime." (Lesson 41). のように is a comparative (like) we briefly saw in Lesson 43, and which we will study in depth in Lesson 54. いつかのように means "like (I did) some other time."



Gabriel Luque

Seiji: ああわたしは…わたしはまたいつかのように逃(に)げようとしている…
aah I TOP . . . I TOP again someday like in the process of . . .
Aah, I . . . I'm trying to escape, like some other time . . .

Exercises 練習

1 Translate into formal Japanese: “I’m hungry, but I don’t have any money.” (to be hungry: お腹がすいている, money お金)

2 What differences in formality are there between the expressions: けれども, が, けど and けれど?

3 What is けど used for in the sentence すみません、これが欲しいんだけど ...?
(すみません : excuse me, 欲しい : to want)

4 Translate: 魚は好きなのに、どうして寿司は嫌いなの？(魚 : fish, 好きな : that one likes, 寿司 sushi, 嫌いな : that one dislikes)

5 Translate this sentence: 彼女は大人のくせにそんな服を着ている。(彼女 : she, 大人 adult, 服 clothes, 着る : to wear)

6 Translate: “Even if I go to Japan, I won’t learn Japanese.” (to go: 行く, Japan: 日本, to learn: 習う, Japanese: 日本語)

7 Translate: “No matter how much I study, I don’t learn anything.” (to study: 勉強する, to learn: 習う, nothing: 何も)

8 Translate: “I think you should / had better do your homework." (homework: 宿題)

9 Translate: 山本さんは論文を書こうとしている。
(山本 : Yamamoto, 論文 : thesis, 書く : to write)

10 Translate into colloquial Japanese: “There’s a party today. But you should not go.” (today: 今日, party: パーティー, to go: 行く)

— Answers to all the exercises can be found online by following the link on page 7. —

Lesson 50 • 第 50 課

Relative Clauses

In this lesson we will learn how to give more depth to our sentences by means of relative clauses to provide additional information about a noun.

What is a relative clause?



Relative clauses give extra information about a noun, for example: "The **house** which is near the school is blue," "That **man** who is walking in the town is my uncle," or "The **dog** whose fur is black is big." The relative clauses we have underlined give extra information about the nouns "house," "man," and "dog," respectively.

Notice how in English we use relative pronouns such as "which" or "whose" to introduce these kinds of clauses. In Japanese, we don't need any such pronoun, although we must bear in mind that the order in these kinds of sentences is often the total reverse of the English order: the noun comes last.

- あの学校(がっこう)に近(ちか)い家(いえ)は青(あお)いです The house that is near the school is blue.
- 街(まち)を歩(ある)いているあの男(おとこ)は叔父(おじ)です That man who is walking around the town is my uncle.
- あの黒(くろ)い毛(け)の犬(いぬ)は大(おお)きいです The dog with black fur / whose fur is black is big.

How to form relative clauses

Forming relative clauses is not difficult, but you must bear in mind the following rules:

⇒ The noun about which information is offered must go after the relative clause.

⇒ If the relative clause ends in a verb or an ***-i*** adjective, these must be conjugated in the simple form. With ***-na*** adjectives, we require な, and with nouns, we must add の. But in the past tense or the negative, they both need the verb to be conjugated in the simple form.

⇒ The subject in a relative clause is never marked with the topic particle は: the subject particle が is compulsory, unless we are looking to add emphasis. For example:

- 猫(ねこ)が食(た)べた魚(さかな)は高(たか)かった The fish that the cat ate was expensive. (With は after 猫 we would explicitly express that it was the cat and no one else who ate the fish.)

⇒ When there is nothing between the subject and the verb of the relative clause, the が (indicating subject) can be replaced by の without distinction. For example:

- 車(くるま)が / の通(とお)った道路(どうろ)は狭(せま)い The road where the car passed was narrow.

🎧 "Internal" relative clauses

Let's look at two kinds of relative clauses: "internal" and "external." "Internal" relative clauses are those where the noun (about which information is provided) is part of the original sentence from which the relative clause is derived. Refer to the table and you'll get a clearer idea: 少年 ***shōnen***, 倉庫***sōko***, 友達 ***tomodachi*** and 本 ***hon*** are part of a basic hypothetical phrase, and they can all be "embellished" by the other words in order to "stand out." Let's now see a few example sentences of this kind:

🎧 Relative clauses
Basic sentence: 少年は倉庫で友達に本を見せた The boy showed a book to his friend in the warehouse
"Internal" relative clauses
倉庫で友達に本を見せた(少年) The boy who showed a book to his friend in the warehouse
少年が倉庫で本を見せた(友達) The friend to whom the boy showed a book in the warehouse
少年が倉庫で友達に見せた(本) The book which the boy showed to his friend in the warehouse
少年が友達に本をみせた(倉庫) The warehouse where the boy showed a book to his friend
"External" relative clauses
少年が倉庫で友達に本を見せた(日) The day when the boy showed a book to his friend in the warehouse
少年が倉庫で友達に本を見せた(という)(理由) The reason why the boy showed a book to this friend in the warehouse
少年が倉庫で友達に本を見せた(という)(こと) The fact that the boy showed a book to his friend in the warehouse
少年 ***shōnen*** boy; 倉庫 ***sōko*** warehouse; 友達 ***tomodachi*** friend; 本 ***hon*** book; 見せる ***miseru*** to show; 日 ***hi*** day; 理由 ***riyū*** reason

- 日本語(にほんご)を習(なら)っている あの女性(じょせい)は親切(しんせつ)だ That woman who is learning Japanese is kind.
- 彼(かれ)が使(つか)ったタオルは 洗濯機(せんたっき)に入(い)れた
  I put the towel that he used in the washing machine.
- 日本語(にほんご)が上手(じょうず)だった人(ひと)は少(すく)なかった
  There were few people who were good at Japanese.
- 汚(よご)れた服(ふく)の女(おんな)はどこに行(い)った？
  Where has the woman whose clothes were dirty gone?
- センスがよくない人(ひと)が集(あつ)まる場所(ばしょ)に行(い)かなければならない
  I must go to a place where people who don't have style meet. (two relative clauses)

🎧 "External" relative clauses

There are also relative clauses where the noun (about which information is provided) is not a part of the basic hypothetical phrase (see table on the facing page). Some of these nouns cannot be directly linked to the sentence; to do so, they require という (or って in its colloquial form).

Never take という: nouns expressing feelings (音 ***oto*** sound, 匂い ***nioi*** smell, 痛み ***itami*** pain); nouns perceived by the senses (写真 ***shashin*** photo, 音楽 ***ongaku*** music).

- 腐った魚の匂いがひどいです The smell of rotten fish is disgusting.
- ビートの強い音楽が好きだ I like music with a strong beat.

Always take という: abstract concepts expressing thoughts or assertions (うわさ rumor, こと fact / thing, 意見 ***iken*** opinion, 理由 ***riyū*** reason, 考え ***kangae*** thought . . .).

- 政府が悪いという意見はありますか Is your opinion that the government is bad?
- 彼らがラスベガスで結婚したいってうわさは本当かな？
  Is the rumor that they want to get married in Las Vegas true?

In other cases, it doesn't matter whether we use という or not:

- マンガを翻訳する(って)仕事は楽しい The job of translating manga is fun.
- 男が自殺した(という)事件があった There was an incident in which a man died.

🎧 The many usages of よう

In Japanese several expressions and grammatical constructions use よう. Let's start by reviewing the よう constructions seen in Lesson 43. First, we have ようだ at the end of a sentence to mean "apparently," when the speaker's degree of certainty is high:

- 天気が崩れたようだね Apparently, the weather has worsened.
- 彼女の弟さんは背が高いようだ Apparently, her younger brother is tall.
- 先生は娘をしかったようです Apparently, the teacher scolded my daughter.

We also have the ような and ように variations, which act as simile (Lesson 54):

- あの鬼のような先生が嫌いだ I hate that teacher who is like an ogre.
- 彼は政治家のようにうそをつくね He lies (tells lies) like a politician.

In order to: ように

ように after verbs (only), usually in the simple form, indicates "in order to" or "so that," to express that a certain action be implemented to obtain a desired outcome.

The structure of this kind of sentence is always "[result] ように [action]." That is, before ように we specify the result we want to obtain and, afterward, we detail the action or actions that must be done to achieve it.

- 日本へ行けるように働いている I'm working in order to go to Japan.
- 猫が魚を食べないように隠そう I shall hide the fish so that the cat doesn't eat it.
- 合格できるように祈りたい I want to pray so that I can pass.
- 事故がないように気をつけてください Be careful (in order) not to have an accident.
- 父が怒らないように謝ろう I shall apologize so that my father doesn't get angry.

Soft command or request: ように + verb

The expression ように combined with a verb like 言う ***iu*** (to say), 頼む ***tanomu*** (to ask), or 命令する ***meirei suru*** (to command) is a way of asking someone to do something. You can't make a direct request or order with this structure. ように + verb is normally used either to indicate what kind of order or request oneself or a third person has received, or to describe an order or request in an indirect way or which was performed in the past:

- 先生は私に本を読むように言った The teacher told me to read a book.
- 社長は山崎にやめるように言った The president told Yamazaki to resign.
- 彼女はあそこで待つように僕に頼んだ She asked me to wait there.
- 川井にオフィスへ来るように言ってください Please tell Kawai to come to the office.
- 私は息子に勉強するように命令した I ordered my son to study.

Note: Since we are talking about orders, you can review Lesson 30, where the imperative is explained, as well as the usage of ～てくれ, which we studied in Lesson 45.

To get to the point of: ようになる

ようになる usually indicates gradual change or the end of processes that are usually long. It means "to get to the point of . . .," "to finally manage to . . ." or "to become able to . . ." This expression can only be used with verbs conjugated in the simple form.

- 彼は泳ぐようになった He managed to (learn to) swim.
- 日本語を話せるようになりたい I want to become able to speak Japanese.
- タバコを吸わないようになった I managed to not smoke. (I managed to quit smoking.)
- やっと統計が分かるようになった I have finally managed to understand statistics.

🎧 To try to do something: ようにする

The last よう expression we will see is ようにする, used to express an intention or decision. An exact translation of this expression is very difficult to suggest, but we could define ようにする more or less as "to decide to do something . . . ," "to try to do something . . . ," "to have the intention of using all the necessary means to do something . . . ," etc.

- 毎朝、運動するようにしたい I want to try to exercise every morning.
- 彼はあまり食べないようにしている He is trying not to eat much.
- 明日、十時に来るようにしてください Tomorrow, make sure you come at 10.
- 政治家はうそをつかないようにしないといけない Politicians must try not to lie.

🎧 Usages of よう		
ようだ (Lesson 43)	Apparently	彼は城に行ったようだ Apparently, he went to the castle.
ような (Lesson 43 / 54)	Simile	彼は城のような家に住んでいる He lives in a house that looks like a castle.
ように (1)	Adverbial form of よう	あの家は城のように広い That house is as spacious as a castle.
ように (2)	In order to / so that	城に行けるように地図を書こう I'll draw you a map so that you can go to the castle.
ように (3)	Order / Request	彼は地図を書くように言った He told / asked me to draw a map.
ようになる	To get to the point of . . .	彼は地図を書けるようになった He has got to the point of being able to draw a map.
ようにする	To try / decide to do something"	毎日、城まで走って行くようにする I'm going to try run to the castle every day.
彼 ***kare*** he; 城 ***shiro*** castle; 行く ***iku*** to go; 家 ***ie*** house; 住む ***sumu*** to live; 広い ***hiroi*** spacious, wide; 地図 ***chizu*** map; 書く ***kaku*** to write, to draw; 言う ***iu*** to say; 毎日 ***mainichi*** every day; 走る ***hashiru*** to run		

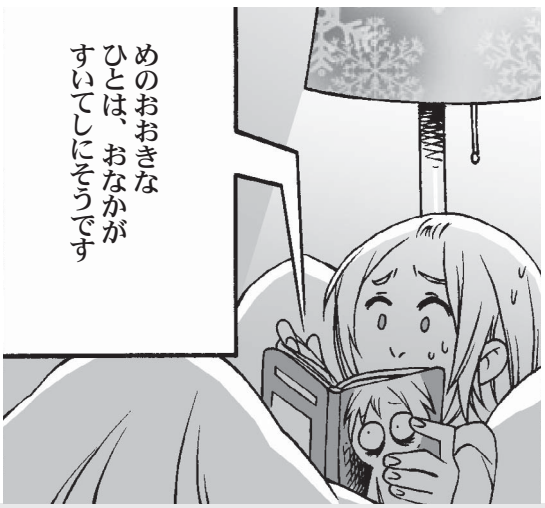
漫画例 Manga Examples

These manga examples will help you review relative clauses and give you a clearer idea of the numerous usages of よう.

Manga Example 1: A simple relative clause

This manga is written in hiragana, in the style of children's stories, because children can't read kanji. The sentence should be: 目の大きな人はお腹がすいて死にそうです. The relative clause is 目の大きな, and it provides information about the noun 人. Notice that as we saw earlier in this chapter, the subject particle が is sometimes replaced with の. Therefore, 目が大きな人 (the man with big eyes) would also be valid.

In Japanese the concepts of restrictive and non-restrictive relative clauses don't exist. The sentence 目の大きな人は親切だ ***me no ooki-na hito wa shinsetsu da*** can mean both "the man, who has big eyes, is kind" (non-restrictive) and "the man who has big eyes is kind" (restrictive). In this case, the relative clause is restrictive. **Notes:** Notice how the sentences お腹がすいている (to be hungry) and 死にそうです (he looks like he is going to die) are linked by the ***-te*** form (lessons 35 and 46). Notice, too, the usage of the suffix for conjecture ～そうだ in 死にそうです.



Xian Nu Studio

Narrator: めのおおきなひとは、おなかがすいてしにそうです
eye POP big person TOP, stomach SP empty die be
The man who had big eyes was starving to death.

Manga Example 2: An "internal" relative clause



J.M. Ken Niimura

Here the relative clause: ミュンヘン大学の図書館で私が銃で撃ったdescribes the noun 男. It is an "internal" relative clause because the noun 男 is part of the basic phrase 私はミュンヘン大学の図書館で私が銃で撃った. **Note:** The subject of the relative clause (in this case 私) never takesは; it needs が.

Zange: 彼(かれ)は、ミュンヘン大学(だいがく)の図書館(としょかん)で私(わたし)が銃(じゅう)で撃(う)った男(おとこ)だ！！

he TOP, München university POP library PP I SP gun IP shoot man be

He is the man I shot with a gun in the library of the University of Munich!!

Manga Example 3: An "external" relative clause



Studio K˜osen

Here is an "external" relative clause, meaning the noun about which the information is given is totally independent, not part of a basic hypothetical phrase. Here, the noun is 噂, and the relative clause is おまえがムコ候補に肩入れしている.

We mentioned that some nouns require という when linked to a relative clause where the noun expresses an abstract concept, like thoughts or assertions. 噂 is such a concept, so we will use either という or the shorter colloquial form って, as here.

Sayama: おまえがムコ候補(こうほ)に肩入(かたい)れしているって噂(うわさ)は聞(き)いてるぜ

you SP son-in-law candidate support do say rumor TOP hear EP

I have heard the rumor that you support him as a candidate for son-in-law.

Manga Example 4: Two usages of *yō*



Xian Nu Studio

In this manga example we have two different usages of よう. In 食欲もそこそこ出てきたようだ, we have ようだ meaning "apparently" (Lesson 43). In 会話もできるようになった, we see ようになる, indicating a gradual change, literally, "She has become able to hold a conversation [after an adaptation period which has taken place gradually and which has already concluded]." **Note:** し is used to indicate "not only X, but also Y" (Lesson 46).

Doctor: 彼女(かのじょ)、食欲(しょくよく)もそこそこでてきたようだし、会話(かいわ)もできるようになった

she appetite too a little go out apparently besides, conversation too to get to

Apparently, she has recovered some of her appetite and, what's more, she is able to talk now.

Manga Example 5: In order to, using *yō ni*



Gabriel Luque

Here, ように expresses "so that" or "in order to." The aim is お客様に良いことがたくさんあります and the action to be performed to achieve it is ここで見守って. The phrase ように is placed in the middle, after the clause indicating the aim, to link both clauses and convey the meaning "in order to." **Note:** Before ように the verb is usually in the simple form, but since the register here is formal, she has chosen to leave the verb あります in the ***-masu*** form.

Boss: お客様(きゃくさま)に良(よ)いことがたくさんありますようにここで見守(みまも)ってね！

Mr. client IOP good thing SP many there is so that here PP pay attention EP!

Stay here and pay attention in order to make sure the clients have everything they need!

Manga Example 6: Request, using *yō* + verb

In this request we see the construction ように + verb for soft requests or orders.

The phrase 待つように言った is obviously a request. Other possible phrases could have been: 待つように頼んだ ***matsu yō ni tanon-da*** (you asked him to wait) or 待つように命令した ***matsu yō ni meirei shita*** (you ordered him to wait), etc. **Note:** The expression ～そうだ here is different to the one in Lesson 43, Manga Example 1 (to give information obtained from another source). Thus, 待つように言ったそうだ literally means "I've heard / been told that you have told him to wait."



Xian Nu Studio

Man: お母(かあ)さん、銀行(ぎんこう)の支店長(してんちょう)に融資(ゆうし)を待(ま)つように言(い)ったそうだね

mom, bank POP branch director IOP funds DOP wait (request) say looks like be EP

Mom, you've told the bank manager to wait for the funds, haven't you?

Manga Example 7: To try to do something, using *yō ni suru*

ようにする has the nuance of "try to" or "decide to do something." The sentence 彼女と話すようにしたい has the connotation of either "I want to try to talk with her" or "I want to have the intention of doing all I possibly can to talk with her." That is, using ようにする is more or less the same as a declaration of intent. **Note:** これから (literally, "from this") means "from now on," "after this."



Studio Kōsen

Naoya: これから、彼女(かのじょ)と話(はな)すようにしたいなぁ…

this from, her CP talk try to want EP . . .

From now on, I want to try to talk to her . . .

Exercises 練習

1 Which is the relative clause in this sentence?
"The man who loved Makiko is called Koji."

2 Translate the sentence in question 1. (man 男 ; to love 愛する ; Makiko 真紀子 ; Koji 浩二)

3 Translate: "The motorcycle Akira bought is very fast." (motorcycle バイク ; to buy 買う ; Akira 明 ; very とても ; fast 速い)

4 Are these sentences correct? Why/why not? 彼が売っている梨が甘い。彼の売っている梨が甘い。
(彼 he; 売る to sell; 梨 pear; 甘い sweet)

5 Translate: 彼がヤクザから賄賂をもらったという事件は本当ですか (彼 he; 賄賂 bribe; もらう to receive; 事件 case; 本当 true)

6 In Japanese temples, people write down prayers, such as 合格するように . What does this sentence mean? (合格する to pass an exam)

7 Translate: "The customer told the sales clerk to shut up." (customer お客さん ; to tell 言う ; sales clerk 店員 ; to shut up 黙る)

8 Translate: "I want to be able to read a book." (to read 読む ; book 本)

9 Translate: 毎日、8 時間は寝るようにしています。
(毎日 every day; 時間 time; 寝る to sleep)

10 Does Japanese distinguish between restrictive and non-restrictive relative clauses? Explain using an example.

— Answers to all the exercises can be found online by following the link on page 7. —


そうだ！今夜は昨日助けてもらった人と食事をしに行ったし、しゃべっているうちにとても遅くなったんだ！それに、たくさんの酒を飲んだなぁ…
KAGE 影
四日目
デート
ヒィヤアアアッ
え？どうしてここにいるの？何時だろう？ちょっと酔っているみたいだなぁ、あたし…
いいえ、実はオレもあの店員が嫌いだよ。彼がヌリアさんのカメラを取ろうとしたので、オレはちょっと助けようと思ったんだ、それだけ。あ、オレは達也だけど…
写真をとるのにこの店に入ったけど、だめだったみたいね。あ、ごめんなさい。あたしの名前はヌリアで、スペインから来たの。ありがとうね、助けてもらって。
昨日の夕方―渋谷―店を出たヌリアは…
いいよ！じゃ、また明日!!
あした？いいよ。七時にここで会おうか？
また明日！
ごめん、今日はだめだ。時間がない。明日の夜でどう？
ちょっと時間がある？この近くにあるおいしいレストランを知っている。一緒に食事でもどう？


今日の朝と午後、ヌリアは
元気に写真をとったり、
散歩をしたりした。


夜の七時…
こんばんは、ヌリアちゃん！元気!?
元気、元気！達也は？
オレも元気だよ。じゃ、行こうか？
ご案内します。
二人です。
何名さまですか？
メニュー
日本酒ですね。すぐ持ってきます。
日本酒をお願いします。
お飲み物は何にしますか？
こちらです。


おすすめか…寿司が好きなの？オレは寿司があまり好きじゃないけど、ヌリアちゃんが好きな寿司はどれ？
何でもいいんだけど…達也のおすすめの料理は何？
何を食べる？
え？スペイン人のくせにトマトが嫌いなの？うそ!!ハハハハ！
いいよ。トマトが入っている料理はないよね？あたしはトマトが嫌いだけど…
じゃ、それにしよう。それと、焼きそば、焼き鳥、餃子、うどんと味噌汁を注文しようか？
ニコッ
え？日本人なのに寿司が好きじゃないの？あたしはしゃけとか、まぐろとか、鉄火巻きとかが好きだよ。
リーン
リーン
ははは
ははは!


実は午後にヌリアさんの部長さんからファックスが届きました。そのファックスに「ヌリアの送った写真はあまりよくなくて、このような面白くない写真をとるためにヌリアを日本へ送っていない」と書いてあります。
渋谷のレストランだよ。何!?
こんばんは、谷村です。ヌリアさん、今どこにいますか?
もしもし?ヌリアですけど…
あたしは勝手にする!!じゃね!!!
パサッ
レストランでのんきにお酒を飲んでいる場合じゃないと思いますが…
そう?あたしの写真は面白くないって!?他の人を送ったほうがいいかもね!ごめん、今忙しいよ。酒を飲みながら、親切な人と話しているから!
バシン
ヒクッ
飲もうか?


ね、ヌリア。この近くにいいラブホテルがあるけど、行こうか？
ラブホテル？行かないよ！あたし、帰る!!
ツヤー
ツヤ

Review for Lessons 46–50

Answers to all the review exercises can be found online by following the link on page 7.

🎧 ***KAGE*** – New vocabulary 新しい単語

遅(おそ)い	slow / late	のんきな	carefree
うそ	lie	ラブホテル	love hotel
他の	other	勝手にする	to do as one pleases, to do what one likes

1. According to what you have read in the fourth episode of ***Kage***, what is the name of the young man who helped Nuria the day before? What does he suggest they do when they leave the manga store? Once they finally have a date, what does he suggest after leaving the restaurant?

2. Nuria had gone into a store to do something. What?

3. What do Nuria and her companion end up ordering at the restaurant?

4. What food doesn't the young man like? How about Nuria?

5. Why do they both laugh when they find out what food the other doesn't like?

6. Mina calls Nuria to give her a message. Who is the message from, and what is its approximate content?

7. What does のに indicate in the following sentences?

a) 写真をとるのにこの店に入った _____

b) 日本人なのに寿司(すし)が好きじゃない _____

8. In this episode of ***Kage***, there are two sentences with conjuctions that have a similar meaning to the two examples of のに in question 7, above. Find them.

a) _____.

b) _____.

9. Translate into English the following sentences from the text of ***Kage***.

a) しゃべっているうちにとても遅(おそ)くなった。

_____.

b) 彼(かれ)がヌリアのカメラを取(と)ろうとしたので、オレは助(たす)けようと思った。

_____.

c) ヌリアは元気に写真をとったり、散歩(さんぽ)をしたりした。

_____.

d) ヌリアの送った写真はあまりよくない。

_____.

e) 他(ほか)の人を送った方がいいかもね！

_____.

10. Why do we find the particle の in the sentence ヌリアの送った写真はあまりよくない？ Could we use the particle は instead? How about the particle が？

11. In this episode of the manga we see several sentences ending in けど or in が, such as あ、オレは達也(たつや)だけど… or あたしはトマトが嫌(きら)いだけど… or お酒(さけ)を飲んでいる場合(ばあい)じゃないと思いますが… What is the meaning of these けど or が at the end of the sentences?

12. Place each word from the box on the facing page into the correct place in the chart, according to its category.

Utensils	
Herbs and spices	
Fruit	いちご
Vegetables	

Meat	
Fish	
Drinks	

いちご	酢(す)	紅茶(こうちゃ)	ワイン	牛肉(ぎゅうにく)	トマト	にんじん
貝(かい)	キウイ	さくらんぼ	ステーキ	ジュース	鶏肉(とりにく)	ナイフ
豚肉(ぶたにく)	茶碗(ちゃわん)	かつお	かつお	水	カフェオレ	なす
びん	にんにく	塩(しお)	なべ	ハム	桃(もも)	コーヒー
ビール	オレンジ	バナナ	お箸(はし)	お皿(さら)	フォーク	にら
日本酒(にほんしゅ)	グラス	たこ	じゃがいも	キャベツ	いか	まぐろ
なし	ソーセージ	羊肉(ひつじにく)	みかん	いわし	ケチャップ	油(あぶら)

13. Link each Japanese dish with its corresponding description.

a) ご飯(はん)の上に牛肉(ぎゅうにく)を置(お)いたもの
b) ご飯(はん)に野菜(やさい)を入れて、炒(いた)めたもの
c) ご飯(はん)の上に生(なま)の魚を握(にぎ)ったもの
d) 肉(にく)を焼(や)いたもの
e) ご飯(はん)の上に鶏肉(とりにく)と卵(たまご)を置(お)いたもの
f) 野菜(やさい)や魚をたくさんの油(あぶら)で揚(あ)げたもの

1) 焼肉(やきにく)
2) 牛丼(ぎゅうどん)
3) 天ぷら
4) 親子丼(おやこどん)
5) 寿司(すし)
6) チャーハン

14. Fill in the blanks with the most suitable word from the box at the end of the exercise.

a) お茶(ちゃ)が＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿ので、甘(あま)いおかしも食べましょう。
b) 十二時になりました。＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿を一緒(いっしょ)に食べましょうか？

c) 私は辛(から)いものはだめなので、すしを＿＿＿＿＿＿なしにしてください。

d) ご飯(はん)を食べる前に、＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿で手をきれいにしてください。

e) もちは＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿から作ります。

f) 日本人は白い＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿をよく食べます。

g) ヨーグルトは＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿から作ります。

h) ワインは＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿から作る飲み物です。

i) 暑いの？じゃ、あの店で＿＿＿＿＿＿を買って、散歩(さんぽ)しながら食べよう！

j) 中国人はナイフとフォークを使わないよ。＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿を使うよ。

ぶどう	昼ご飯(はん)	お箸(はし)	米(こめ)	アイスクリーム
牛乳(ぎゅうにゅう)	ご飯(はん)	わさび	苦(にが)い	おしぼり

15. Choose the most suitable answer for each sentence.

a) 日本人はいつも１２時ごろに＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿を食べます。
1. 昼食(ちゅうしょく)　2. 朝食(ちょうしょく)　3. 夕食(ゆうしょく)　4. おやつ

b) どらやきは＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿食べ物だ。
1. すっぱい　2. 塩辛(しおから)い　3. 甘(あま)い　4. 苦(にが)い

c) カフェオレは＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿と＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿の飲み物です。
1. 水　2. 日本酒(にほんしゅ)　3. ビール　4. コーヒー
1. ジュース　2. 牛乳(ぎゅうにゅう)　3. ワイン　4. 抹茶(まっちゃ)

d) レモンの味(あじ)は＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿です。
1. すっぱい　2. 塩辛(しおから)い　3. 甘(あま)い　4. 苦(にが)い

e) 昨日(きのう)は＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿を一個(いっこ)切(き)ったので、たくさん泣(な)きました。
1. きゅうり　2. キウイ　3. 玉(たま)ねぎ　4. りんご

f) 醤油(しょうゆ)は＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿です。
1. 野菜(やさい)　2. 調味料(ちょうみりょう)　3. 飲み物　4. 器具(きぐ)

16. Form nouns using the adjectives from the box below and place them in the most suitable sentence.

a) 彼女の顔の＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿はプレタポルテのモデルのようだ。
b) 部屋の＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿をみてから、「ここにすみたい」と決めた。
c) 私はタイ人だから、札幌の冬の＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿が大嫌いです。
d) ボブは走ったり、サッカーをやったりする。あの人の＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿はせごいね！
e) この大変な仕事を始める前に、仕事の＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿が分かってほしいです。
f) この書類の＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿をわすれないでください！書類を守ってください！

大切な	明るい	元気な	美しい	危険な	寒い

17. This conversation is out of order. Rewrite it in the correct order.

1) じゃ、お勧め料理は何ですか？
2) すき焼きですか？いいですね！それをください！
3) 今日の寿司はとてもおいしいですよ。お勧めします！
4) そうですか？じゃ、寿司ではなくて、すき焼きをお勧めします。
5) ごめんなさい、英語のメニューがありません。しかし、私は説明できます。
6) しかし、僕たちは生の魚を食べられないんですよ。
7) いらっしゃいませ！何名様ですか？
8) ３人ですが、英語のメニューはありますか？

店員さん：＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿
お客さん：＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿
店員さん：＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿
お客さん：＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿

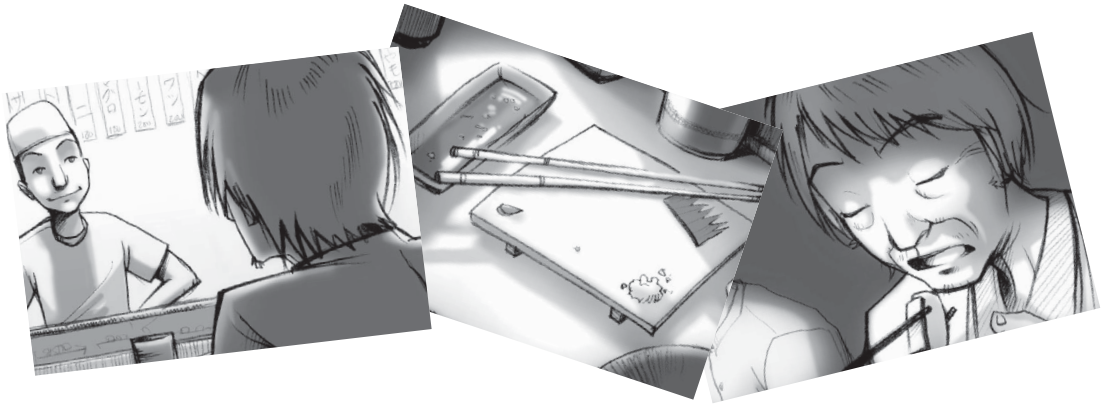
店員さん：＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿

お客さん：＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿

店員さん：＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿

お客さん：＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿

18. Complete the following dialogue held at a restaurant.



Waiter: いらっしゃいませ。

Client: こんにちは。夕方の８時なので、(1) ＿＿＿＿＿＿を食べたいです。

Waiter: 大丈夫ですよ。(2) ＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿ですか？

Client: 一人です。

Waiter: じゃ、こちらです。(3) ＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿はお決まりになりましたか？

Client: はい、寿司をお願いします。

Waiter: どんな寿司ですか？

Client: はい、そちらにあるまぐろの巻き寿司を２つください。

Waiter: まぐろの巻き寿司ですか？あ、(4) ＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿ですね！

Client: そうです。後は、えびやしゃけの (5) ＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿をください。

Waiter: ご飯の上に魚を握る寿司のことですね？

Client: はい、そうです。しかし、私は辛い食べ物が好きじゃないんですよ。

Waiter: じゃ、(6) ＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿抜きにしますか？

Client: はい。あと、米から作る日本の有名な飲み物も飲んでみたいです。

Waiter: あ、(7)_____ですね！熱いのと(8)_____のがありますが...
Client: じゃ、冬だから、(9) _____にします。体を温めなきゃね！

＊＊＊　三十分後　＊＊＊

Client: あ、とてもおいしかったです！(10) _____をお願いします。

Waiter: どうもありがとうございました。１２４０円です。

Client: はい、どうぞ。(goes out) (11) _____ ！

Waiter: ありがとうございました！

19. Fill in the blanks with the most suitable expression from the box below.

a) この仕事が終わった_____たくさん遊ぼうね！
b) 今日は遅くまで仕事をしなければならない_____、行けないよ。
c) あの人はかっこいい_____、彼女が全然できない。
d) 車を買う_____非常にがんばっています。
e) 私は大阪に住んでいた_____、よくたこ焼きを食べに行った。
f) 私は少年マンガは好きだ_____、少女マンガは嫌いだ。
g) 生きている_____、たくさんの国へ旅行するつもりです。

くせに	から	ために	時	うちに	後で	けど

20. Fill in the blanks with the most suitable expression from the box below.

a) くそ！山へ散歩をしに行きたかった_____、雨が降っている！
b) 大阪に住んでいる_____、いろいろな料理を食べたいなぁ！
c) 先生はバカな学生に日本語を教え_____としている。かわいそう ...
d) あのバカな学生に日本語を教え_____、だめだと思うよ。
e) 新しいパソコンを買いたい_____、秋葉原まで電車で行きました。
f) パソコンを買う_____、クレジットカードで払えるかどうか聞いてね。

ので	のに	前に	よう	間	ても

21. Fill in the blanks with the most suitable expression from the box below.

a) 大学へ入る＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿、すごく勉強しました。

b) ミホちゃんが来た＿＿＿＿＿＿、パーティーに誰(だれ)も来ていませんでした。

c) 明日は大学へ行った＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿よ。試験(しけん)があるんだから ...

d) 試験(しけん)がある＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿、大学へ行きました。

e) 私は若い＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿結婚(けっこん)したいと思います。

f) 私は彼女(かのじょ)と結婚(けっこん)したかった＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿、彼女(かのじょ)は「嫌(いや)だ」と言った。

g) 午後に、おじいさんと散歩(さんぽ)をし＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿と思います。

よう　方がいい　ので　けれど　ために　時　うちに

22. Link these sentence fragments so they form full valid sentences.

a) 彼女(かのじょ)は結婚(けっこん)したくないので、	1) 彼女(かのじょ)とたくさんの子どもを作りたい！
b) 彼(かれ)は日本語の先生のくせに、	2) あきらめた方(ほう)がいいよ。
c) おいしい料理(りょうり)を作るのに、	3) 漢字が読めないよ。
d) 私は彼女(かのじょ)と結婚(けっこん)しているうちに、	4) いい材料(ざいりょう)が必要(ひつよう)です

---

i) この難(むずか)しい本を読む前に	a) たくさんの単語(たんご)を覚(おぼ)えてください
ii) 僕(ぼく)は日本へ行きたいけど、	b) 何も分からなかったよ
iii) この映画(えいが)を見るのに、	c) ＤＶＤプレーヤーが必要(ひつよう)だよ
iv) この映画(えいが)を見たのに、	d) 航空券(こうくうけん)のためのお金がない

---

1) いくら勉強しても、	i) パーティーをやろうと思うよ！
2) 彼(かれ)は何も勉強しなかったくせに、	ii) たくさん勉強しなきゃならない
3) 東京(とうきょう)大学へ入りたいので、	iii) 東京(とうきょう)大学に入れないよ
4) 東京(とうきょう)大学に入った後で、	iv) 東京(とうきょう)大学へ入れたよ

23. As shown in the example, make only one sentence from the two provided, applying what you have learned in Lesson 50.

a) 川口先生はとてもやさしいです　／　川口先生は大学で働いている

大学で働いている川口先生はとてもやさしいです。

b) あの犬は黒いです　／　あの犬はいつも寝ている

_____。

c) 友達はとても頭がいいです　／　友達が結婚した

_____。

d) ヤクザは人を殺した　／　ヤクザは走っていた

_____。

e) 私は妻を愛している　／　妻はいつもおいしい料理を作ってくれる

_____。

f) 妻は天ぷらを作った　／　天ぷらはとてもおいしかった

_____。

g) 友達は小説を書いた　／　小説はおもしろかった

_____。

24. Choose the most suitable answer for each sentence.

a) 私は弟にその自転車を_____ので、今その自転車は私のだよ！

1. もらった　2. あげた　3. くれた　4. くださった

b) 私は社長にその自転車を_____ので、今その自転車は私のだよ！

1. もらいた　2. あげた　3. くれた　4. いただいた

c) 私は弟にその自転車を_____ので、今その自転車は弟のだよ！

1. もらった　2. やった　3. くれた　4. くださった

d) 弟は私にその自転車を_____ので、今その自転車は私のだよ！

1. くださった　2. やった　3. くれた　4. いただいた

e) 私は友達に雑誌を＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿のに、「欲しくないよ」と友達が言った。

1. さしあげた　2. くれた　3. あげた　4. もらった

f) 社長はママに新しい車を買って＿＿＿＿＿＿。どうしてパパは怒っているの？

1. あげた　2. くださった　3. もらった　4. やった

g) 山本くんは犬にご飯を＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿。

1. くれた　2. もらった　3. さしあげた　4. やった

h) ケイコさんは新しいゲームを＿＿＿＿＿＿よ！すごくうれしいです！

1. くれました　2. あげました　3. やりました　4. いただきました

i) 先生、明日のパーティーに来て＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿か？

1. くださる　2. いただけます　3. やれます　4. あげます

25. Correct the mistakes in the following sentences.

a) 今日、青山さんの犬は静かのに、カラスがうるさいね。

b) 車を買うためにとてものお金が必要ですね。

c) 昨日、私はエリコさんの家へ掃除をしに行ってくれました。

d) お母さんは作った親子丼はまずかった。

e) ご飯を食べる後で、買い物をしに行きましょう。

f) あの泥棒はレンブラントの絵を盗みようとしているぞ！

26. Choose the most suitable answer for each sentence.

a) 映画を見に行きましょうか？＿＿＿＿＿＿、どんな映画が見たいの？

1. それに　2. ところで　3. なのに　4. ところは

b) 社長＿＿＿＿お金をたくさんくださいましたよ、父＿＿＿＿＿＿。

1. は／に　2. から／は　3. に／は　4. は／から

c) ね、ね！天ぷらの＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿を教えてください！

1. 作り方　2. 作る方　3. 作ら方　4. 作った方

d) 彼女(かのじょ)は大学へ行ける＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿、非常(ひじょう)にがんばりました。

1. けれど　2. ように　3. ので　4. っても

e) あの家へ＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿方がいいよ。危(あぶ)ない犬がいるから！

1. 入る　2. 入った　3. 入らない　4. 入って

f) パトリックくんは漢字が読める＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿、書けない。

1. けど　2. ので　3. ても　4. ために

g) お母さんは弟に部屋(へや)の掃除(そうじ)を＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿ように命令(めいれい)した。

1. して　2. しろ　3. した　4. する

h) オレは車に乗(の)る＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿、いつも速(はや)く走るぜ！

1. ても　2. 時　3. けれども　4. ように

i) 今、この本を作る＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿、たくさんの練習問題(れんしゅうもんだい)を考(かんが)えている。疲(つか)れるぜ！

1. くせに　2. よう　3. ために　4. から

j) あの人はいくら＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿、いつも「お腹(なか)が減(へ)ったよ」と言っている。

1. 食べた　2. 食べるので　3. 食べても　4. 食べるために

k) アキラくんはレンブラントの絵(え)を盗(ぬす)める＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿。

1. ようになった　2. ようにした　3. ようとする　4. ようと思う

l) 彼(かれ)は日本人＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿、漢字が書けない。

1. くせに　2. にくせに　3. がくせに　4. のくせに

m) 昨日(きのう)はインド料理(りょうり)のレストランへ行った。＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿、カラオケへも行った。

1. それなのに　2. だから　3. それから　4. それでは

Kanji

肉 (171)	茶 (172)	味 (173)	飯 (174)	料 (223)	理 (224)	堂 (183)	寺 (186)	代 (206)	銀 (185)	音 (257)
映 (198)	画 (244)	毎 (192)	週 (193)	曜 (194)	夕 (195)	長 (201)	黒 (199)	色 (200)	特 (187)	紙 (259)

27. Link each kanji with its most common reading.

音	いろ	黒い	あじ
肉	おと	味	ちゃ
週	はん	茶	ながい
銀	しゅう	夕	くろい
色	ぎん	長い	ゆう
飯	にく	寺	てら

28. Choose the correct kanji or kanji combination for each reading.

a) 私は<u>まいしゅう</u>、<u>ぎんこう</u>のとなりにある店に<u>おちゃ</u>を飲みに行きます。

まいしゅう：1. 毎週　2. 毎月　3. 毎日　4. 毎年

ぎんこう：1. 金行　2. 飯行　3. 銀行　4. 食行

おちゃ：1. お余　2. お傘　3. お茶　4. お米

b) 明日は友達（ともだち）と大学の<u>しょくどう</u>で<u>りょうり</u>をします。

しょくどう：1. 食堂　2. 飲堂　3. 銀堂　4. 飯堂

りょうり：1. 物理　2. 料理　3. 心理　4. 地理

c) 京都（きょうと）には平安（へいあん）<u>じだい</u>のきれいな神社（じんじゃ）と<u>てら</u>がたくさんあります。

じだい：1. 寺代　2. 時代　3. 持代　4. 侍代

てら：1. 待　2. 時　3. 侍　4. 寺

d) あの方はいつもがかを守っている。彼(かれ)らのみかただそうですよ。

がか：1. 画家　2. 映画　3. 画内　4. 画肉

みかた：1. 味方　2. 見方　3. 未方　4. 和方

29. Choose the correct reading for each kanji combination.

a) 月曜日に白黒写真の本を大学の食堂で見ました。

月曜日：1. げつよび　2. げつゆうび　3. げつようび　4. げつゆび

白黒：1. はくこく　2. しろくろ　3. はくごく　4. しろぐろ

食堂：1. しょくとう　2. しょくどう　3. しょっどう　4. しょっとう

b) 昨日(きのう)、私は社長が安い飯屋に入るのを見ました。

社長：1. しゃちょ　2. しゃなが　3. しゃちょう　4. じゃなが

飯屋：1. はんや　2. はんじょう　3. めしじょう　4. めしや

c) タイ人は日本語の母音の発音に慣(な)れていないみたい。

母音：1. ぼいん　2. ぼおん　3. ははおと　4. ぼおと

発音：1. はついん　2. はつおん　3. はつおと　4. はっおん

30. Write the kanji for the given ***furigana***.

a) 土 _____(よう)日は彼女(かのじょ)と_____(えいが)を見に行きます。

b) お姉さんは_____(いろ)っぽくて、_____(くろ)い服を着ています。

c) 今日の_____(ゆうがた)に_____(なが)い_____(てがみ)を書くつもりです。

d) 神戸(こうべ)の_____(にく)は_____(とく)においしいと皆(みな)は言う。

e) 彼女(かのじょ)は_____(まいにち)、苦(にが)いお_____(ちゃ)を飲みます。

f) _____(ぎんこう)の中でご_____(はん)を食べてはいけないですか？

Lesson 51 • 第 51 課

Unexpected Events and Accidents

In this lesson we will learn how to face theft, accidents and sickness along with a lot of useful new vocabulary.

The role of the police

Japan is very safe and the possibilities of being robbed or attacked are slim. The role of the Japanese police tends to be watching traffic, taking care of lost children or objects, giving directions, etc. Each neighborhood has a 交番 ***kōban***, a mini-police station with only two or three policemen, who see to the safety in the neighborhood. If you ever get lost, go to the closest 交番: there they will kindly and diligently help you find your way.

- すみませんが、道に迷ってしまいました Excuse me, I'm lost. (Lessons 35 and 37)
- ここは何という町ですか？ What is this city called? (Lesson 41)
- この住所はここから近いですか？ Is this address near here? (Lesson 41)
- 電車の駅へ行く道を教えてください Please tell me the way to the railway station.
- 東京タワーに行きたいんですが I'd like to go to Tokyo Tower (Lessons 37 and 40)
- 代々木公園まで歩いて行けますか？ Can I walk to Yoyogi park?

Emergencies	
accident	事故
ambulance	救急車
bag	バッグ
emergency	緊急
injured person	けが人
injury	けが
pickpocket	スリ
police	警察官
to rob	盗む
thief	泥棒
wallet	財布
witness	目撃者

Theft

As we have just mentioned, to be the victim of theft in Japan is extremely rare. Nevertheless, let's look at a few sentences to practice vocabulary and grammar.

- 一番近い交番はどこですか？ Where is the closest koban?
- 誰かが私の財布を盗んだ Someone has stolen my wallet. (Lesson 41)
- 泥棒が私のバッグをひったくって逃げた The thief snatched my bag and ran off.

- リュックには財布(さいふ)とクレジットカードが入(はい)っています
  My wallet and my credit cards are in my (stolen) backpack.
- 盗難証明書(とうなんしょうめいしょ)を作(つく)ってください Fill in the theft report, please.

🎧 Losing something

The Japanese are very considerate when they find lost property, and usually take it to the closest 交番. If the lost object is a wallet with money that is returned intact, it is customary to give 10% of the money as a token of gratitude to the person who found it.

- ここに財布(さいふ)がありませんでしたか？ Wasn't there a wallet here?
- 忘(わす)れ物係(ものがかり)はどこですか？ Where is the lost and found office?
- 地下鉄(ちかてつ)にカメラを忘(わす)れてしまいました I left my camera on the subway.
- どんなカメラですか？ What kind of camera is it?
- 銀色(ぎんいろ)で、メーカーはカシオです It's silver and its make is Casio. (Lessons 35 and 46)
- 見(み)つかった場合(ばあい)、連絡(れんらく)してください If you find it, let me know, please. (Lesson 46)
- パスポートをなくしました。再発行(さいはっこう)していただきたいのですが . . .
  I have lost my passport. I would like you to reissue it . . . (Lessons 35, 31 and 45)

🎧 What's wrong with me, Doctor?

Let's turn our focus to visits to the doctor and hospitals.

- 気分(きぶん)が悪(わる)いですが I don't feel good. (Lesson 37)
- 医者(いしゃ)(救急車(きゅうきゅうしゃ))を呼(よ)んでください Call a doctor (an ambulance), please.
- 病院(びょういん)に連(つ)れていってください Take me to a hospital, please. (Lesson 35)
- 診療(しんりょう)の予約(よやく)をとってくれますか？ Can you make me an appointment for a consultation, please? (Lesson 45)
- どんな症状(しょうじょう)ですか How do you feel? | What symptoms do you have?
- お腹(なか)が痛(いた)いです I have a stomachache. (Lesson 26)
- 風邪(かぜ)をひいたようです I think I've caught a cold. (Lesson 43)
- 熱(ねつ)があります I have a fever.
- せきが止(と)まりません I can't stop coughing. (lit. The cough doesn't stop)
- 転(ころ)んで腕(うで)を痛(いた)めました I've fallen and hurt my arm.
- 手(て)をやけどしました I've burnt my hand.
- 足首(あしくび)をねんざしました I've sprained my ankle.

- ペニシリンのアレルギーがあります I'm allergic to penicillin.
- 毎日(まいにち)この薬(くすり)を飲(の)んでいます I take (lit. drink) this medicine every day.
- 生理中(せいりちゅう)です I have my period.
- どのくらいで治(なお)りますか？ How long will I take to recover?
- 旅行(りょこう)は続(つづ)けられますか？ Can I continue my trip? (Lesson 32)
- 処方(しょほう)せんを書(か)いてもらえますか Could you write me a prescription? (Lesson 45)

Talking with the doctor

Let's look at some typical things a doctor might say:

- いつからその症状(しょうじょう)がありますか？ How long have you had those symptoms? (Lesson 41)
- どこが痛(いた)いですか？ Where does it hurt you?
- 横(よこ)になってください Lie down, please.
- シャツを脱(ぬ)いでください Take your shirt off, please.
- 深呼吸(しんこきゅう)をしてください Breathe deeply.
- 血液(けつえき)(尿(にょう))検査(けんさ)が必要(ひつよう)です You need to have a blood (urine) test. (Lesson 37)
- アレルギーはありますか？ Do you have any allergies?
- 血圧(けつあつ)(体温(たいおん))を測(はか)りましょう I'll take your blood pressure (temperature). (Lesson 34)
- 大(たい)したことはありません It's nothing serious.
- この処方(しょほう)せんをもって薬局(やっきょく)に行って、薬(くすり)を買(か)って飲(の)んでください
  Take this prescription, go to the pharmacy, buy the medicine and take it. (Lessons 35 and 46)

Accidents

We will conclude this section with some useful phrases in case of a traffic accident.

- 交通事故(こうつうじこ)があって、けがをしています There was a traffic accident, and I'm hurt.
- 友達(ともだち)が車(くるま)にはねられました My friend has been run over by a car.
- 救急車(きゅうきゅうしゃ)が来(く)るように電話(でんわ)してください Call an ambulance, please. (Lesson 50)
- 警察(けいさつ)も呼(よ)んでください Call the police as well. (Lesson 37)
- 右腕(みぎうで)を折(お)ったみたいです I think I've broken my right arm. (Lesson 43)
- 出血(しゅっけつ)が激(はげ)しくて止(と)められない I am bleeding heavily and I can't stop it.
- 事故証明書(じこしょうめいしょ)を書(か)いてください Fill in the accident report, please.

Medical vocabulary

Basic vocabulary

doctor	医者(いしゃ)
hospital	病院(びょういん)
hospitalization	入院(にゅういん)
insurance	保険(ほけん)
leaving the hospital	退院(たいいん)
medicine	薬(くすり)
pain	痛み(いた)
patient	患者(かんじゃ)
pharmacy	薬局(やっきょく) or 薬屋(くすりや)
surgery	手術(しゅじゅつ)
symptom	症状(しょうじょう)

Sickness 病気(びょうき)

allergy	アレルギー
anemia	貧血(ひんけつ)
appendicitis	盲腸炎(もうちょうえん)
asthma	ぜんそく
bronchitis	気管支炎(きかんしえん)
bruise	打撲(だぼく)
burn	やけど
cancer	癌(ガン)
cold	風邪(かぜ)
diabetes	糖尿病(とうにょうびょう)
diarrhea	下痢(げり)
food poisoning	食中毒(しょくちゅうどく)
fracture	骨折(こっせつ)
gastric ulcer	胃潰瘍(いかいよう)
gastritis	胃炎(いえん)
inflammation of the ear	中耳炎(ちゅうじえん)
influenza	インフルエンザ
hepatitis	肝炎(かんえん)
high blood pressure	高血圧(こうけつあつ)
indigestion	消化不良(しょうかふりょう)
low blood pressure	低血圧(ていけつあつ)
pneumonia	肺炎(はいえん)
rheumatism	リューマチ
rhinitis	鼻炎(びえん)
sprain	ねんざ
sunstroke	日射病(にっしゃびょう)
tetanus	破傷風(はしょうふう)

Parts of the body 部位(ぶい)

bone	骨(ほね)
blood	血(ち) or 血液(けつえき)
blood vessel	血管(けっかん)
heart	心臓(しんぞう)
intestines	腸(ちょう)
joint	関節(かんせつ)
kidney	腎臓(じんぞう)
liver	肝臓(かんぞう)
lung	肺(はい)
muscle	筋肉(きんにく)
skin	皮膚(ひふ)
urine	尿(にょう)

Types of doctor 医者(いしゃ)

dentist	歯科医(しかい)
gynecologist	婦人科医(ふじんかい)
internist	内科医(ないかい)
ophthalmologist	眼科医(がんかい)
otolaryngologist	耳鼻咽喉科医(じびいんこうかい)
pediatrician	小児科医(しょうにかい)
surgeon	外科医(げかい)

Miscellaneous

bandage	包帯(ほうたい)
blood pressure	血圧(けつあつ)
breathing	呼吸(こきゅう)
injection	注射(ちゅうしゃ)
pulse	脈拍(みゃくはく)
temperature	体温(たいおん)
X-ray	レントゲン

Cultural Note: Japanese Addresses

One of the most surprising things in 日本 ***Nihon*** is that the vast majority of streets don't have names, and houses don't have numbers. The question is obvious: how do the poor postmen find their way around? And, if we want to go to a specific address (住所 ***jūsho***), how will we find it? Let's look at a typical Japanese address, in this case, that of the famous Nintendo head office, in Kyoto:

〒**601-8501** 京都府京都市南区上鳥羽鉾立町１１番地１　任天堂株式会社.
きょうとふきょうとしみなみくかみとばほこだてちょうじゅういちばんちいちにんてんどうかぶしきがいしゃ



If you get lost, go to the *kōban*!
(Photo: M. Bernabé)

The first number (601-8501) is the zip code (the sign 〒 means "zip code"). Then, we have the prefecture 京都府 ***Kyōto-fu*** (府 ***fu***: prefecture, only when used with Kyoto and Osaka, with other prefectures we use 県 ***ken***, except for Tokyo, which is 都 ***to***, and Hokkaido, which is 道 ***dō***), the city 京都市 ***Kyōto-shi*** (市 ***shi***: city), the district 南区 ***Minami-ku*** (区 ***ku***: ward, district), the town 上鳥羽鉾立町 ***Kamitoba Hokodate-cho*** (町 ***cho***: neighborhood), the block within the neighborhood, ***11-banchi*** (番地), and, finally, the plot number, 1. At the end, we have the name of the person or company, 任天堂株式会社 ***Nintendō Kabushikigaisha*** (株式会社 ***kabushikigaisha***: public corporation). Notice how everything is the other way round compared to Western addresses: in Japan, they start from the prefecture and work their way down until they reach the plot of land. Following Western criteria, we would have something like Nintendo, 1-11 Kami-toba Hokodate-cho, Minami-ku, Kyoto-shi, Kyoto-fu 601-8501. That is, we would have to reverse the order of the elements, because we start from the plot and we finish with the prefecture or state.

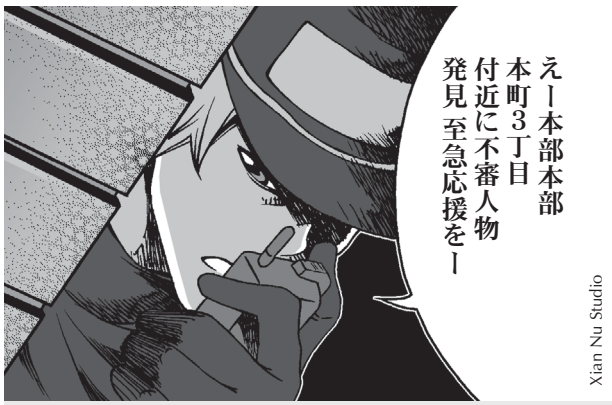
So, to find an address, we must have a good map, and look for the city first, then the district, then the town / neighborhood, etc. It is no wonder the Japanese draw maps (usually from the nearest train or subway station) when they want to indicate the location of a place. But if you ever get lost or can't reach your destination, you can always go to the closest 交番 ***kōban*** (police box) and ask the 警察官 ***keisatsukan*** (police officer). They are prepared for this, and will be glad to help you.

漫画例 Manga Examples

Although, ideally, you should never have to use the language you have learned in this chapter in real life, it will certainly be useful if you want to understand the jargon which appears in the thousands of comics and movies involving policemen or doctors. Let's see some examples.

Manga Example 1: Police jargon

In this first example we find two different things. First, there is quite a lot of police-related vocabulary, which is essential if you want to enjoy watching police or yakuza movies and reading detective manga. Useful police- and crime-related vocabulary that you can find in this manga example includes 本部 (headquarters), 不審 (suspicious), 人物 (person), 至急 (immediately) and 応援 (reinforcements). Other typical words in police jargon—which you won't usually find in dictionaries —include デカ, a colloquial word used when referring to a 刑事 ***keiji***, (police officer, detective), ガイシャ (a contraction of 被害者 ***higaisha*** "victim"), ホシ (another word for 犯人 ***hannin***, meaning "criminal"), and チャカ ("gun," which has many other names in Japanese, including 銃 ***jū***, 拳銃 ***kenjū***, ピストル and ハジキ).



This manga example also gives us the opportunity to review the subject of addresses studied in the Cultural Note on the facing page. Here you will notice how the policeman indicates his location: 本町３丁目付近: "in the vicinity of the 3rd block of Honmachi."

Police.: えー本部(ほんぶ)本部(ほんぶ)本町(ほんまち)３丁目付近(さんちょうめふきん)に不審人物(ふしんじんぶつ)発見(はっけん) 至急応援(しきゅうおうえん)をー

err . . . headquarters headquarters Honmachi 3 block vicinity PP suspicious man discover immediately reinforcements DOP . . .

Err . . . Headquarters, headquarters. I've discovered a suspicious man in the vicinity of the 3rd block of Honmachi. Send reinforcements immediately . . .

Manga Example 2: Asking for directions

This time we see a man who wants to ask for directions and goes to a 交番 ***kōban*** (police box) to do it. He first breaks the ice with すいません (a colloquial version of すみません, "excuse me"), and then he asks his question. At the end of the sentence he adds the のです tag (Lesson 40), and a が (Lesson 37), all in order to make the question less brusque. This is a very common way of expressing oneself in Japanese.



Gabriel Luque

Observe now the ちょっと. It literally means "a little," as in ちょっと待って ***chotto matte*** (wait a little), but it really has countless usages: to call for attention, ちょっとすみません (excuse me a minute), to soften something difficult to say: ちょっと無理ですね ***chotto muri desu ne*** (I'm afraid that's impossible) or as an "aid" when asking ちょっと道をききたい as in this example.

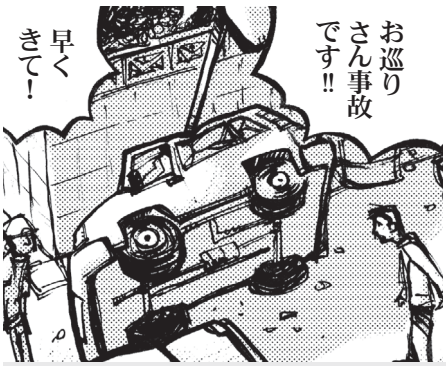
Man: すいません　ちょっと道(みち)をききたいのですが…

excuse me a little way DOP ask be but . . .

Excuse me, I would like to ask for directions . . .

Manga Example 3: Calling the police

Here's what to say if we witness an accident and we want to call the police. By the way, the number of names that exist for policemen is fascinating. The generic name for the police is 警察 ***keisatsu***, from which the word 警察官 ***keisatsu kan*** (police officer) is derived. Other words for police officer are 巡査 ***junsa***, the colloquial 警官 ***keikan***, デカ, or お巡りさん, like in this example. The word 刑事 ***keiji*** means "detective." A criminal's most typical word for a police officer is サツ (from 警察), or ポリ.



J.M. Ken Niimura

Note: The telephone number for emergencies in Japan is １１０番 ***hyakutōban*** (be careful with the irregular reading).

Man: お巡(まわ)りさん　事故(じこ)です！！　早(はや)くきて！

police SUF accident be! quickly come!

Officer, there's been an accident! Come quickly!

Manga Example 4: Calling the hospital to report an emergency

Let's now enter the doctors' world. In this example, we can see that the doctor is being informed on the phone about a patient who has just been hospitalized. Since the sentence itself has no difficulty, we will focus on the grammar. We can see in the 打って portion two sentences linked with the ***-te*** form (Lessons 37 and 46). We can also see an adverb (Lesson 22) formed from the ***-i*** adjective うまい. うまい is the colloquial version of いい (good), therefore, うまくできない means "cannot do it well." And, finally, notice the expression using the conjecture そうです (Lesson 43), used to give information obtained from another source (similar to "I've been told that . . .").



Tel.: 事故(じこ)です！患者(かんじゃ)は胸(むね)を打(う)って呼吸(こきゅう)がうまくできないそうです！

accident be! patient TOP chest DOP hit breathe SP well can looks like be!

It's an accident! The patient has hit himself on the chest and can't breathe well!

Manga Example 5: A demanding patient



Another medical example. This time we have a 患者 ***kanja*** (patient) asking the nurse for 薬 ***kusuri*** (medicine). Notice the word 痛み止め, literally something that stops (止める ***tomeru***) the pain (痛み), and then we have the verb "drink" (飲む) for taking medicine. By the way, the verb 効く means "to take effect."

Regarding grammar, we have a sentence linked with the ***-te*** form (Lessons 35 and 46) using 飲んで, and a construction with けど (Lesson 49), indicating "but." **Note:** ブスコパン is a brand of painkiller.

Miura: 痛(いた)み止(ど)め飲(の)んで2(に)時間(じかん)たったけど効(き)かないよ。ブスコパン頼(たの)むよ

painkiller drink 2 hours pass but take effect EP. Buscopan ask EP

Two hours have passed since I took the painkiller, but it doesn't take effect. Come on, give me some Buscopan.

Manga Example 6: Names of illnesses



Gabriel Luque

Here we find some names of illnesses (病気 ***byōki***), including 食あたり (the term 食中毒 ***shokuchūdoku*** is also used). Notice the suffix 炎 ***en***, the equivalent of the English suffix "–itis" (meaning "inflammation"). Thus, 肺炎 ***haien*** is "pneumonia" or "lung (肺) inflammation (炎)," 扁桃腺炎 ***hentōsenen*** is "tonsillitis" or "tonsil (扁桃腺) inflammation (炎)," and 胃炎 ***ien*** is "gastritis" or "stomach (胃) inflammation (炎)," etc. There are more suffixes, like 病 ***byō***, indicating "disease": 心臓病 ***shinzōbyō*** means "heart disease," and アルツハイマー病 is "Alzheimer's disease."

Doctor: 肺炎(はいえん)じゃない…食(しょく)あたりじゃない… 扁桃腺炎(へんとうせんえん)でもない…

pneumonia not be . . . food poisoning not be . . . tonsillitis neither be . . .

It's not pneumonia . . . or food poisoning . . . or tonsillitis . . .

Manga Example 6: Tests and hospitalization

To conclude, here is a good example of medical jargon: notice how the doctor tells the patient she must be hospitalized (入院する) so that she can take some tests (検査を受ける), and that they will know more when they obtain the results (結果). On the grammatical level, notice the 〜てもらう form (Lesson 45), which adds the nuance that the listener will perform the action for the benefit of the speaker. There is also an example of the ***-ō*** form (Lesson 34) in 入院しましょう. Last of all, notice the usages of から as the particle "from" (Lesson 41) (これから and 明日から), and as a connector indicating cause/reason (Lesson 48) (わかりますから).



Xian Nu Studio

Doctor: これからいろいろ検査(けんさ)を受(う)けてもらいます

this from several tests DOP take (receive)

From now on, we will have you take several tests.

くわしくは結果(けっか)でわかりますから 明日(あした)からさっそく入院(にゅういん)しましょう

in detail TOP result IP understand because tomorrow from immediately hospitalize

The results will give us more details, so tomorrow we shall hospitalize you.

Exercises 練習

1 Translate the following words: 財布 (さいふ), 事故 (じこ), 熱 (ねつ), 薬局 (やっきょく), レントゲン, 心臓 (しんぞう) and 痛み (いたみ).

2 Translate the following words: "doctor," "hospital," "injury," "ambulance," "cough" and "cold."

3 You go into a 交番 (こうばん) to report that you've lost a ring. What do you say? (to lose 失く (な) す; ring 指輪 (ゆびわ))

4 Translate: "I've got a headache, a fever, and I can't stop coughing."

5 Translate: ただのインフルエンザかもしれないが、血液検査 (けつえきけんさ) が必要 (ひつよう) です。(ただの a simple . . .)

6 Translate this address: 〒100-8280 東京都千代田区神田駿河台町 (とうきょうとちよだくかんだするがだいちょう) 4丁目 (ちょうめ) 6番地 (ばんち)。

7 How words do you know for "gun"? And "policeman"? List them.

8 Translate: ちょっと分 (わ) からないので、説明 (せつめい) してください。(分かる to understand; 説明する to explain)

9 Translate: "I'm taking medicine because I have a headache." (painful 痛 (いた) い; head 頭 (あたま); medicine 薬 (くすり))

10 What does the suffix 炎 (えん) mean? Write at least four words with 炎 that we have studied and give their meanings.

— Answers to all the exercises can be found online by following the link on page 7. —

Lesson 52 • 第 52 課

Formal Language

Japanese has formal language to show respect and to enable us to speak in a polite way. There are three modes of honorific speech, which we will study in this chapter.

Honorific speech

Japanese honorific speech is called 敬語 ***keigo***. We use 敬語 when speaking with or about people superior to us (bosses, teachers or elders), with people we have just met, and in formal situations such as speeches, weddings, work meetings and dealing with clients. In Japanese, there are three kinds of 敬語. These are 尊敬語 ***sonkeigo*** (language of respect), 謙譲語 ***kenjōgo*** (language of modesty), and 丁寧語 ***teineigo*** (polite speech). Take care not to mix them up!

🎧 *Sonkeigo*: The language of respect

尊敬語 literally means "language (語) of respect (尊敬)." We use 尊敬語 when talking with or about another person, raising his or her position to express our respect. The subject of the action is always the other person. To be formal in English, we use certain polite words and address people by their title, such as Mr. or Ms. But Japanese formal language, however, has other grammatical and lexical changes. The table (right) gives 尊敬語 and 謙譲語 versions of verbs you already know. Let's see some examples:

- 田中(たなか)さん、何(なに)をなさっていますか？ What are you doing, Mr. Tanaka?
- ご希望(きぼう)をおっしゃってください Please tell me what you wish.
- 鈴木(すずき)さんはもうご存知(ぞんじ)です Ms. Suzuki already knows.
- 先生(せんせい)は（私(わたし)に）本(ほん)をくださった The teacher gave me a book. (Lesson 45)

🎧 **Special verbs**

	Normal	*Sonkeigo*	*Kenjōgo*
to do	する	なさる	いたす
to be	いる	いらっしゃる	おる
to go / come	行(い)く | 来(く)る	いらっしゃる	参(まい)る | 伺(うかが)う
to eat / drink	食(た)べる | 飲(の)む	召(め)し上(あ)がる	いただく
to see	見(み)る	ご覧(らん)になる	拝見(はいけん)する
to borrow	借(か)りる	——	拝借(はいしゃく)する
to know	知(し)っている	ご存知(ぞんじ)だ	存(ぞん)じている
to die	死(し)ぬ	お亡(な)くなりになる	——
to say	言(い)う	おっしゃる	申(もう)す | 申(もう)し上(あ)げる
to give	くれる	くださる	——
to give (2)	あげる	——	さしあげる
to receive	もらう	——	いただく

Conjugation お + **Root** + になる: Take the root of any verb (Lesson 31), add お at the beginning and になる at the end. For example, 書く ***kaku*** (to write) ⇒ ***-masu*** form: 書きます ⇒ (without ます): 書き ⇒ add お and になる: お書きになる. **Note:** This conjugation is not used with ***suru*** verbs (with those verbs we use なさる. For example, 勉強する ***benkyō suru***⇒ 勉強なさる to study).

- 先生はお手紙をお書きになった The teacher wrote a letter.
- すみません、お立ちになってください Excuse me, please stand up.
- この本をお読みになっていないと思います I don't think you've read this book.

The ～られる form

Sonkeigo has a special conjugation (see table, right). Group 1 verbs replace the last ***–ru*** with ***–rareru***, and Group 2 verbs replace the last ***-u*** with ***-a*** and add ***–reru***. (See Lesson 19 for a definition of Group 1 and Group 2 verbs.) Thus, ***kaku*** ⇒ ***kak–*** ⇒ ***kaka–*** ⇒ ***kakareru***. Note 買う ***kau*** becomes ***kawareru*** (not ***kaareru***), and 待つ ***matsu*** becomes ***matareru*** (not ***matsareru***).

	Simple f.	Meaning	Rule	*Sonkeigo*
Group 1	教える	to teach	–る→られる	教えられる
	起きる	to wake up		起きられる
Group 2	貸す	to lend	–す→される	貸され
	待つ	to wait	–つ→たれる	待たれる
	買う	to buy	–う→われる	買われる
	帰る	to return	–る→られる	帰られる
	書く	to write	–く→かれる	書かれる
	急ぐ	to hurry	–ぐ→がれる	急がれる
	遊ぶ	to play	–ぶ→ばれる	遊ばれる
	拒む	to refuse	–む→まれる	拒まれる

- 清水さんは本を書かれたそうです Apparently, Mr. Shimizu wrote a book.
- (あなたは)仙台へ行かれましたか？ Did you go to Sendai?
- (あなたは)英語を教えられていますか？ Do you teach English?
- 木村さんは結婚されていますか？ Mr. Kimura, are you married?

Notice the table has no verbs ending in ぬ, nor the irregular verbs する (to do) or 来る ***kuru*** (to come). There is only one regular verb ending in ぬ, and that is 死ぬ ***shinu*** (to die), which already has its own 尊敬語 version: お亡くなりになる ***onakunari ni naru*** (see table, facing page). Even though する and 来る have a ***–rareru*** version (される and 来られる ***korareru***), they also have 尊敬語 versions: なさる and いらっしゃる, respectively.

Important observation

If talking with someone equal about someone hierarchically superior, use the strategies we have seen to show respect to the superior person but with the verb in the simple form:

- 先生はいらっしゃらないぞ (Talking with a classmate) The teacher is not here.

In the previous sentence, we are talking about someone we respect (先生), so we use the verb いらっしゃる (to be), but in the simple form because we are talking to an equal, a classmate. We have also added the colloquial end-of-sentence particle ぞ. Other examples:

- 社長はもうお帰りになったよ The president has already gone.
- 加藤さんは大学まで歩かれたよね Mr. Kato walked to university, didn't he?

Kenjōgo: The language of modesty

Let's look at 謙譲語 ***kenjōgo***, literally "language (語) of modesty (謙譲)" used when talking with a person we consider superior, lowering our position to indirectly raise the other person's position. The subject of the action is always "I" or someone in the ***uchi*** group. We never use 謙譲語 to refer to actions by someone who is not "I" or not in the ***uchi*** group, as it would sound as if we were degrading the other person. As with 尊敬語, there are "modest" versions of several of the most common verbs (see the first table in this lesson).

- 私はアルゼンチンから参りました I come from Argentina | I'm from Argentina.
- 妹 は医者と結婚いたしております My sister is getting married to a doctor.
- すみませんが、社長は出かけております I'm sorry, the president has gone out.*

*The company president is hierarchically superior, but he belongs to the speaker's ***uchi*** group. When talking with someone ***soto*** about anybody in our ***uchi*** group, we use 謙譲語.

Conjugation: お + **Root** + する/いたす: Take the root of any verb (Lesson 31) and add お at the beginning and する or, more formally, いたすat the end:書く ***kaku*** (to write)⇒ ***-masu*** form: 書きます ⇒ root (without ます): 書き ⇒ add お and する: お書きする. **Note:** Some suru verbs add ご (not お) at the beginning, for example: ご案内する ***go annai suru*** (I'll guide you).

- 先生の本をお読みしたいです Professor, I'd like to read your book.
- ご相談したいと思っております I'd like to consult with you.

Observations

If talking to somebody equal or inferior about an action we did in the interest of somebody superior, or in their presence, we use 謙譲語 in its simple form:

- 私は先生に本をさしあげたよ (To a classmate) I gave the teacher a book.
- 社長の計画書を拝見したぞ (To a colleague) I've seen the president's project.

The respectful prefix お or ご is used with nouns or adjectives. お is used before words of Japanese origin, usually written with one kanji: e.g., お早い ***ohayai*** (early), お車 ***okuruma*** (car) etc., and ご before words of Chinese origin, which usually have two or more kanji: ご家族 ***gokazoku*** (your family), ご心配 ***goshimpai*** (worry). Exceptions include お食事 ***oshokuji*** (meal), お元気 ***ogenki*** (healthy) and お電話 ***odenwa*** (telephone).

🎧 *Teineigo*: Polite speech

丁寧語 ***teineigo*** means "polite language," perhaps the closest in usage to our English use of Mr., Mrs., etc., and the corresponding polite language. It is merely polite, involving no special hierarchies and is based on always using the です and ～ます verb forms.

- 私(わたし)は脳外科医(のうげかい)です I'm a neurosurgeon.
- ここには亀(かめ)がいます There is a turtle here.

To be politer, use ございます for ある and いる, and でございます forです.

- 私(わたし)は脳外科医(のうげかい)でございます I'm a neurosurgeon.
- ここには有名(ゆうめい)な絵(え)がございます There is a famous picture here.

In 丁寧語, the prefixes お～ and ご～ are profusely used before nouns and adjectives, although it is women who, by far, tend to use them more often:

- 社長(しゃちょう)の奥様(おくさま)、お美(うつく)しいですね (To the company president) Your wife is beautiful.
- お店(みせ)でご飯(はん)を食(た)べてきました I have had lunch in the shop.

🎧 Formal language: Summary			
尊敬語(そんけいご) *(language of respect)*	We raise somebody else's position.	1. Special verbs.	先生、何かおっしゃいましたか？ Did you say something, teacher?
		2. お + Root + になる	三浦さんはお待ちになっています Mr. Miura is waiting.
		3. ～られる	三浦さんは待たれています Mr. Miura is waiting.
謙譲語(けんじょうご) *(language of modesty)*	We lower our position.	1. Special verbs	その本を拝見しました I saw that book.
		2. お/ご+ Root + する	あ、お待ちしておりました Oh, I was waiting for you.
丁寧語(ていねいご) *(polite speech)*	Formal language.	1. Use of the ***-masu*** form	三浦さんは待っています Mr. Miura is waiting.
		2. Use of でございます, よろしい, etc.	これは先生の本でございます This is the teacher's book.
		3. お～/ご～ before nouns and adjectives	先生のご意見は何ですか？ What's the teacher's opinion?

漫画例 Manga Examples

Mastering the usage of Japanese honorific speech can be tricky and takes time. For the moment, try to concentrate only on understanding what you are being told in formal Japanese; as your language skills improve and you become more confident, you can try using it yourself.

Manga Example 1: *Sonkeigo*

Our first example gives us an instance of the usage of the language of respect or 尊敬語 ***sonkeigo***. The normal version of the sentence in this panel would be 何をしているのですか？ ***Nani o shite iru no desu ka?*** Notice how the verb なさる is used here, it being the "respectful" version of する (to do). An important point is that even when forming the gerund (Lesson 24), which is usually formed with the ***-te*** form and the verb いる (to be), the latter is sometimes replaced with its respectful version いらっしゃる. Thus, the している part (to be doing) finally becomes なさっていらっしゃる.

It is worth mentioning that the verbs いらっしゃる, なさる, おっしゃる and くださる are slightly irregular, because their ***-masu*** forms are, respectively, いらっしゃいます, なさいます, おっしゃいます and くださいます. That is, before the final ます we add an い which, according to the rules, should not be there. Therefore, if we changed the sentence we are now examining into the ***-masu*** form, we would obtain 何をなさっていらっしゃいますか.



Studio Kōsen

Likewise, it is essential to know that there are "formal" versions of some words. The most typical examples are 方 ***kata*** (replacing 人 ***hito*** "person"), どなた (formal version of 誰 ***dare*** "who?"), or the adjective よろしい (instead of いい, "good"). Likewise, in formal language, we opt for the ***kosoado*** こちら, そちら and あちら instead of ここ, そこ and あそこ (Lesson 34).

Man: …お客様（きゃくさま）。なにをなさっていらっしゃるのですか…？

. . . customer SUF what DOP do be be Q? . . . ?

Madam, what are you doing?

Manga Example 2: *Sonkeigo* in the simple form

In this example we see two instances of the formal language of respect or 尊敬語 ***sonkeigo***. First, we have the special verb いらっしゃる, here replacing 来る ***kuru*** (to come). The speaker also uses the ***-rareru*** form of the ***suru*** verb 執刀する ***shittō suru*** (to operate), that is, 執刀される. In this last case, 執刀なさる could have been used as well (remember なさる is the respectful version of する), with hardly any nuance differences.

Notice how in the sentence, the speaker talks about 堀部教授, who is someone he respects, someone superior to himself: that's why he uses 尊敬語 when speaking. However, since he is talking with someone who is his equal or inferior, he deliberately leaves his verbs in the simple form to denote familiarity toward them.



J.M. Ken Niimura

Doctor: 間(ま)もなく堀部教授(ほりべきょうじゅ)がいらっしゃる
soon Horibe professor SP come
Professor Horibe will come soon.
今日(きょう)は教授(きょうじゅ)みずから執刀(しっとう)されるとの事(こと)だ
today professor himself operate do SBP NOM be
The professor himself will operate today.

Manga Example 3: *Sonkeigo* and *kenjōgo* in the same sentence

The languages of respect and modesty can be used at the same time, combining forms as we see here. Yoshida is talking with a stranger, so he uses the respectful form (尊敬語 ***sonkeigo***) of the verb おっしゃる (to say), with which he raises the position of the person he is talking to. But when speaking about himself, he uses the modest form (謙譲語 ***kenjōgo***) of the verb to be, おる, lowering his position to indirectly raise that of the person he is talking to. Notice how in 謙譲語 the gerund ～ている is changed into ～ておる (～ております in the ***-masu*** form). **Notes:** We studied the ～ても form (although) in Lesson 49. The verb わかる (to understand) is usually written 分かる, but, sometimes, either for style reasons or because of the author's preference, 判る is used.

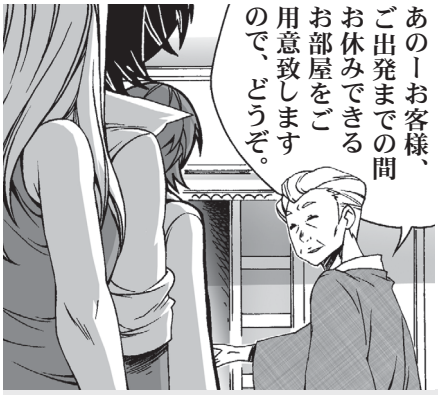


Xian Nu Studio

Yoshida: 何(なに)もおっしゃらなくても、すべて判(わか)っております。
nothing say (although), everything know be
Even if you say nothing, I know everything.

Manga Example 4: Honorific prefixes and *kenjōgo*

In all three modes of formal language the honorific prefixes お～ and ご～ are very frequent. You can see quite a few in this manga example. By the way, there are some very common words in Japanese that always use honorific prefix, even when talking in colloquial Japanese: お茶 ***ocha*** (tea), お金 ***okane*** (money), ご飯 ***gohan*** (rice, meal), お湯 ***oyu*** (hot water), お菓子 ***okashi*** (cake), お風呂 ***ofuro*** (bath), etc. **Notes:** Sometimes we find the ご～ or お～ prefix in kanji: 御～. Also notice in this sentence how the customer (客) is addressed as お客様, with the suffix of highest respect ～様 (Lesson 15), and that's because, as you know, the customer is "god" in Japan.



Xian Nu Studio

Kumi: あのーお客様(きゃくさま)、ご出発(しゅっぱつ)までの間(あいだ)お休(やす)みできる

well . . . customer SUF, departure until NOM recess rest can

If you please . . . Ladies and gentlemen, I'll get a room ready at once . . .

お部屋(へや)をご用意致(ようい いた)しますので、どうぞ。

room DOP prepare do because, go ahead

. . . where you can rest until departure time. Come in, please.

Manga Example 5: The *uchi–soto* relationship in formal language

As we saw in Lesson 45, the difference between one's own group (***uchi***) and those outside it (***soto***) is very important. Here, Chiaki says "Kawai is coming" using the verb 参る ***mairu*** (to come), which belongs to the language of modesty (謙譲語 ***kenjōgo***). Moreover, for extra "humbleness," she doesn't use the honorific ～さん after Kawai's name, something surprising if we think that he is actually Chiaki's boss, whom we would expect her to treat with respect. Chiaki considers Kawai as an ***uchi*** member when talking to a visitor from another company who clearly belongs to the ***soto*** group, and that's why she uses 謙譲語.



Xian Nu Studio

Chiaki: ただいま川井(かわい)が参(まい)りますので…

now Kawai SP come because . . .

Kawai will come right away . . .

Manga Example 6: A new form

There is a very common request form which, despite being quite formal, is not considered part of 敬語 ***keigo***: it is お + Root + ください, equivalent to the request made with 〜てください (Lessons 24 and 35), but more formal. This construction is formed by placing お (or ご with ***suru*** verbs) in front of the root of the verb (Lesson 31), and placing ください after it. In this panel we see お待ちください (wait, please), which comes from the verb 待つ (to wait).



J.M. Ken Niimura

Other examples would be: お書きください ***okaki kudasai*** (please write), お座りください ***osuwari kudasai*** (please sit down), or ご注意ください ***go chūi kudasai*** (please be careful), which come from the verbs 書く (to write), 座る (to sit) and 注意する (to be careful) respectively. Learn this form well, because you will find it more than once. In the panel we also have お調べ致します (I check), an instance of the structure お + Root + いたす, from the verb 調べる. Notice how いたす is sometimes written 致す in kanji, as in the example.

Receptionist: ただ今(いま)お調(しら)べ致(いた)しますので少々(しょうしょう)お待(ま)ち下(くだ)さい。
now investigate do because a little wait please
I'll check it at once. Wait a minute, please.

Manga Example 7: *Teineigo*

Finally, we will see an instance of polite speech or 丁寧語 ***teineigo***: notice how Aiko uses the verb でございます instead of です. The usage of でございます is one of the most common characteristics of 丁寧語.

For the moment, you don't need to master honorific speech. If it is any consolation, many native Japanese, especially the young, find these forms difficult to use. However, recognizing the different patterns of usage will be helpful, because they are widely used in daily life, mainly in sales clerk-customer relationships.



Gabriel Luque

Aiko: はい。こちら伊丹(いたみ)空港(くうこう)の受付(うけつけ)でございます。
yes. here Itami airport POP reception be
Yes? This is Itami airport reception office.

Exercises 練習

1 What are the three kinds of honorific speech in Japanese, and when do we use each of them?

Give the 尊敬語 version of the verbs 言う, 知っている, 飲む, あげる and 行く. **2**

3 To what normal verbs do these 謙譲語 verbs correspond: 申す, いただく, いたす, 拝見する and 伺う?

Translate: 野村先生は記事をお書きになっている. (野村 Nomura; 先生 teacher; 記事 article; 書く to write) **4**

5 Conjugate the following verbs in the ～られる form: 歩く (to walk), 寝る (to sleep), 殺す (to kill), and 走る (to run).

Translate: 私は本の内容を存じております。(私 I; 本 book; 内容 contents) **6**

7 Is the following sentence correct: 私は映画をご覧になっております? Why/why not? If not correct, correct it. (私 I; 映画 movie)

Translate: そちらにおいしいお魚のお店がございます。(おいしい tasty; 魚 fish; 店 shop) **8**

9 When would you use this sentence? 先生はご質問したいと申し上げました. Translate it. (先生 teacher; 質問する to ask a question)

Translate: そちらのいすにお座りください。Which of the three kinds of 敬語 does it correspond to? (いす chair; 座る to sit) **10**

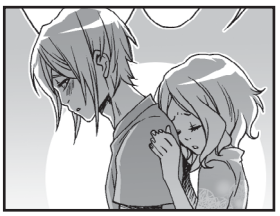
— Answers to all the exercises can be found online by following the link on page 7. —

Lesson 53 • 第 53 課

Casual Speech

After the intense formal language lesson, let's look at the other side of the coin: casual speech—the spontaneous street language essential for understanding manga!

Overview



There are several registers of casual speech, but we will focus on the colloquial and vulgar. Colloquial language can be used with close friends, but avoid vulgar language, mostly used in movies and manga; in real life you will seldom hear it. We'll use (C) to indicate "colloquial" and (V) for "vulgar." Let's look at the characteristics of Japanese casual speech.

🎧 Particles

One characteristic of spoken and spontaneous Japanese is the frequent omission of grammatical particles, which you will have seen in the manga in this book:

- マリア、帽子(ぼうし) 買(か)ったわ Maria bought a hat. (female C)
- 映画館(えいがかん)、行(い)きたいんだよ I want to go to the movies. (C)

In the first sentence the topic particle は that should follow マリア is omitted (Lesson 37), as is the direct object particle を (Lesson 40) after 帽子. In the second sentence, the direction particle に (or へ, Lesson 38) after 映画館 has been left out. End-of-sentence particles are frequent in casual speech. The first sentence above has the female emphatic particle わ; the second, statement particle よ and emphatic tag んだよ (Lesson 40).

🎧 Imperative, swearwords and dislocations

Japanese vulgar language (and sometimes the colloquial) is almost the only register that uses the direct imperative studied in Lesson 30 (plus the 〜てくれ form in Lesson 45), and the various swearwords we saw back in Lesson 23:

- 日本(にほん)へ行(い)けよ、バカ野郎(やろう)！ Go to Japan, you stupid ass! (V)
- 貸(か)してくれよ、その辞書(じしょ) Come on, lend it to me, that dictionary. (C/V)
- 行(い)きたくないんだよ、クソ学校(がっこう)へ I don't want to go to the damn school. (V)

Notice how we often find dislocated phrases, like the second and third ones, where the usual order of the elements has been changed to highlight a certain part of the sentence.

🎧 The most common contractions			
Normal ⇒ Colloquial	**Type**	**Normal form**	**Colloquial version**
-t/de iru* ⇒ *-t/deru (Lesson 35) ***-t/den***	(C) (V)	食べている	食べてる 食べてん（だ）
-t/de iku* ⇒*-t/deku (Lesson 35)	(C)	飲んでいく	飲んでく
-t/de oku* ⇒*-t/doku (Lesson 35)	(C)	食べておく	食べとく
-t/de ageru* ⇒*-t/dageru (Lesson 45)	(C)	食べてあげる	食べたげる
-t/da darō* ⇒*-t/darō (Lesson 43)	(C)	飲んだだろう	飲んだろう
-te shimau* ⇒*-chau (Lesson 35)	(C)	食べてしまう	食べちゃう
-de shimau* ⇒*-jau (Lesson 35)	(C)	飲んでしまう	飲んじゃう
-te wa* ⇒*-cha (Lesson 32)	(C)	食べてはいけない	食べちゃいけない
-de wa* ⇒ *-ja (Lesson 32)	(C)	飲んではいけない	飲んじゃいけない
-nai* ⇒*-n (except: しない ⇒ せん)	(V)	食べない	食べん
-nakereba naranai* ⇒*-nakya (Lesson 32) ***-nakya nannai***	(C)	飲まなければならない	飲まなきゃ 飲まなきゃなんない
-reba ⇒*-rya* (Lesson 56)	(C)	食べれば	食べりゃ
-nakereba* ⇒*-nakya (Lesson 56)	(C)	食べなければ	食べなきゃ
to iu* ⇒ *tte* | *teyuu* | *ttsuu (Lesson 41)	(C)	彼という	彼って | 彼てゆう | 彼っつう
-ai* | *-oi* ⇒ *-ee	(C)	高い | すごい	たけえ | すげえ
食べる ***taberu*** to eat; 飲む ***nomu*** to drink; 彼 ***kare*** he; 高い ***takai*** expensive, high; すごい cool, amazing, fantastic			

🎧 Contractions

The table above shows common colloquial and vulgar contractions. If you find a written contraction not in the table, read it aloud: you may be able to figure out where it came from

- ビール、買(か)っといたぞ！ I've bought beer (just in case)! (C)
- 食(た)べちゃっていいの、ケーキ？ Can I eat it, the cake? (C)
- 大阪(おおさか)って街(まち)、面白(おもしろ)くてたまらん The city of Osaka is great fun. (V)
- 明日(あした)、すげえ雑誌(ざっし)を読(よ)んじゃおう Tomorrow I'll read a fantastic magazine. (C)
- 何遊(なにあそ)んでんだ？働(はたら)けって言(い)ったろう？ What are you doing, playing? I've told you to work, haven't I? (V)

Other contractions include 何か ***nani ka*** ⇒ なんか (something, Lesson 41); どこか ⇒ どっか (somewhere, Lesson 41); これは/それは/あれは ⇒ こりゃ/そりゃ/ありゃ (this, that, that over there, Lesson 34); こちら/そちら/あちら ⇒ こっち/そっち/あっち (this way, that way, that way over there, Lesson 34); 仕方がない ***shikata ga nai*** ⇒ しょうがない (it's no use / it can't be helped).

🎧 Shortenings

A characteristic of casual speech is shortening certain words or phrases, such as もの ⇒ もん (thing, Lesson 57); ところ ⇒ とこ (place, Lesson 58); かもしれない ⇒ かも (perhaps, Lesson 43); のだ ⇒ んだ (emphatic tag, Lesson 40). Notice the omission of the potential form ら of Group 1 verbs: 食べられる ***taberareru*** ⇒ 食べれる (Lesson 32).

- どっかいいとこ 行(い)かなきゃ We must go somewhere good. (C)
- おっす！ピーマン 食(た)べれる？ Hey! Can you eat (do you like) green pepper? (C)
- 俺(おれ)んちには面白(おもしろ)いもんがあるかも In my house there might be something cool. (C)

In the second sentence, おっすis short for おはようございます (good morning).
俺んち ***orenchi*** in the third sentence is short for 俺の家 ***ore no uchi*** (my house).

🎧 Colloquial vocabulary					
Nouns		奴 ***yatsu***	guy / man	**Verbs**	
こいつ	this guy	野郎 ***yarō***	guy / moron	エッチする	to have sex
そいつ	that guy	**Adjectives**		なめる	to take for a fool
あいつ	that guy there	エッチな	sexy	ナンパする	to pick up
ガキ	kid / brat	かっこいい	handsome, cool	びびる	to be scared stiff
きさま	you (threat)	かっこわるい	not cool	ふざける	to mess around
ちび	kid / midget	すごい	great; cool	むかつく	to get angry
チャリ	bicycle	せこい	stingy	**Expressions**	
つら	face / mug	ださい	tacky	こら！	hey! (threat)
てめえ	you (threat)	でかい	huge	ざまあみろ	serves you right
変態 ***hentai***	weird / pervert	ひどい	horrible	超 ***chō***	super (very)
マジ	truly	やばい	risky; dicey	めっちゃ	very

Grammatical patterns

The table on the right shows grammatical patterns in colloquial or vulgar language. For instance, ～てやがる is a vulgar verb ending with a nuance of contempt; ～てたまるか means "I'll be damned if . . ." and ぶっ～ adds menace to words like 殺す ***korosu*** (to kill).

- てめえ、なめてやがんのかぁ！ You, do you take me for a fool?! (very V)
- この試合、負けてたまるかよ！ I'll be damned if I lose this match! (V)
- 何を笑ってんだ？ぶっ殺すぞ！ What you laughing at? I'm gonna kill you! (very V)

Patterns in casual Japanese		
～てやがる	(V)	歩いてやがる He's walking
～たまるか	(V)	飲んでたまるか I won't drink it
ぶっ～	(V)	ぶっ殺す I'll kill you
すごく	(C)	すごく高い Really expensive
すごい	(C)	すごい高い Really expensive

歩く ***aruku*** to walk; 飲む ***nomu*** to drink; 殺す ***korosu*** to kill; 高い ***takai*** expensive, high; すごい cool, terrific

The adverb すごく comes from すごい, a colloquial adjective meaning "fantastic, cool," etc. すごく means "very," synonymous with とても (Lesson 45). Often すごい is used instead of すごく even though it is grammatically wrong.

- すごく / すごい甘いんだね、このりんご！ It's real sweet, this apple, isn't it? (C)

There are also words whose main consonant is "doubled" in casual register: ばかり ⇒ ばっかり (only, Lesson 58); やはり ⇒ やっぱり (I knew it); あまり ⇒ あんまり (not much, Lesson 45); さき ⇒ さっき (a while ago); まま ⇒ まんま (as it is, Lesson 47).

- 文句ばっかり言うなよ、お前 Don't just complain (don't complain so much), man! (C)
- ごめんね、友達のまんまでいたいけど I'm sorry, but I want to stay friends. (C)

Questions in the negative

In English, we can make a request in the form of a question using a negative verb as a softener (Won't you come?) In Japanese this is frequent and in all registers, including formal, colloquial and vulgar.

- こちらへ来ていただけませんか？ Could you come here, please? (Formal)
- 私と一緒に博物館へ行かない？ Won't you come with me to the museum? (C)
- 君、電話に出てくれない？ You, how about answering the phone? (C)
- 遠いんじゃないの、それ？ Isn't that very far? (C/V)

Notice the end-of-sentence tag じゃない？ The more colloquial じゃん is used mainly in Tokyo.

- 彼女のかばん、高いんじゃない？ Her bag is very expensive, don't you think?
- あのマンガ、面白いじゃん？ That manga is interesting, isn't it?

Answering yes / no questions

In English if asked "You're not hungry?," and we are not hungry, we answer "No." In Japanese, we answer "Yes" (Yes, it's true that I'm not hungry.) If we are hungry, we answer "No" (No, it's not true that I'm not hungry), i.e., denying a negative, which gives an affirmative.

- お肉を食べたくないんですか？ | はい（食べたくない）
  You don't want to eat meat? | Yes (I don't want to eat).
- 真理子が好きじゃないの？ | いいえ、違う（好きだ）
  You don't like Mariko? | No, you're wrong (I like her).

漫画例 Manga Examples

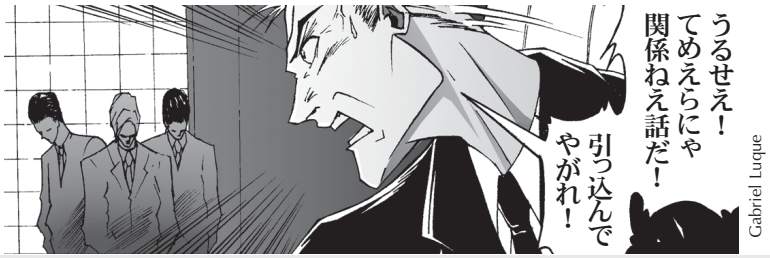
Let's look at some manga examples that will clarify the usage of colloquial and vulgar language that we've studied so far in this chapter. A word of advice: take this lesson only as a simple guide to casual speech that will help you understand comic books and movies. In real life, avoid using this kind of Japanese whenever you can.

Manga Example 1: Vulgar language

This panel contains some of the most vulgar Japanese there is, full of contractions, rough words and even special grammatical constructions. Notice first the words うるせえ and 関係ねえ ***kankei nee***, very vulgar versions of the words うるさい (noisy) and 関係がない (having no relation to). Originally, contracting the last part of words ending in ***-ai*** and ***-oi*** into ***-ee*** was a characteristic of the vulgar dialect in Tokyo, but it has spread all over Japan and is often used in comic books and movies.

The word てめえら is the plural of てめえ, a vulgar way of saying "you," with a strong nuance of threat and insult. てめえ is a distortion of 手前 ***temae*** (a form of address used by men to address an inferior). In this example we have a contraction we haven't studied: it is にゃ, its normal form being に and は together.

Notice the final ～てやがれ, the imperative form of ～てやがる, a rough and rude form of the gerund ～ている. You will find ～てやがる in manga, but never in real life.



Katsuichi: うるせえ！てめえらにゃ関係(かんけい)ねえ話(はなし)だ！引(ひ)っ込(こ)んでやがれ！

noisy! you IOP relation there isn't topic be! withdraw (vulgar)!

Shut up! This has nothing to do with you! Out!

Manga Example 2: Threats

Here is another instance of vulgar language. Notice first, at the end, じゃねえ, a vulgar contraction of じゃない, or the more orthodox form ではない. では is usually contracted in all registers in Japanese into じゃ, and the ねえ at the end is a rough contraction of ない. In this example we also have the prefix ぶっ〜, which adds brusqueness to a word. By adding ぶっ〜 to the verb 殺す ***korosu*** (to kill), the speaker is strengthening his sentence and adding, as well, the nuances of "threat" and "resolve."

Last of all, the 〜てやる form is common in vulgar language to indicate disdain toward the other person or to sound more macho; it has little to do with the meaning of "give or do a favor to someone inferior" of the 〜てやる we saw in Lesson 45.



Xian Nu Studio

Kaneshiro: ぶっ殺(ころ)してやる
(prefix) kill (give)
I'm gonna kill you.
おどしじゃねーぞ
threat not be EP
And I'm not bluffing.

Manga Example 3: A belligerent girl

Generally, a girl would never use this type of vulgar language, because this register is too rough and "macho" for a woman. However, in this example, we have quite an exception. The girl uses two very vulgar words: the verb ふざける (to mess around, to bug), and the noun 野郎 ***yarō*** (guy, man). The word デブ (fat guy) is slightly less vulgar.

The word ふざけん is a vulgar contraction of ふざける (the る becomes ん when talking very fast), and the な, as we have seen before, is used to form the direct negative imperative. Therefore, ふざけんな means "Don't bug me." As a curiosity, we will mention that in the most gangster-like register in Japanese some speakers roll their "r," like in Spanish.



Studio Kōsen

Tokiwa: ふざけんな デブ野郎(やろう)————っ
lark around (negative imperative), fat guy
Stop fucking with me, fat-ass!!

Manga Example 4: A very vulgar negative imperative

Here we have a negative imperative of the kind exclusively used in vulgar register: "verb + んじゃない."

Take a look at the example: いい気になる ***ii ki ni naru*** is a set phrase with the meaning of "to get smart with, to be stuck up." じゃねえ is the distortion of じゃない. Therefore, いい気になってんじゃねえ (its non-distorted version being いい気になっているんじゃない) means more or less "don't get smart." More examples of this kind of (very) vulgar negative imperative are: ケーキを食べるんじゃない！ ***Kēki o taberu n ja nai!*** (Don't eat the cake!), こっちで遊ぶんじゃない！ ***Kotchi de asobu n ja nai!*** (Don't play here!), マンガを読むんじゃない！ ***Manga o yomu n ja nai!*** (Don't read manga!)



J.M. Ken Niimura

Kumasaka: いい気(き)になってんじゃねえ！
good feeling become not be!
Don't get smart with me!

Manga Example 5: Using the negative to ask

Here is an example of a question in the negative. Notice how, despite conjugating the verb in the ***-masu*** form (ありません), Asakawa omits all grammatical particles: a very obvious characteristic of spoken language. In its most orthodox form the sentence would be この４人に見覚えがありませんか？ ***Kono yonin ni mioboe ga arimasen ka?*** Here, however, the speaker has avoided the particles に, が and か, something we don't generally recommend.

Notice the negative form of the question: its literal translation would be "Don't these 4 people ring a bell?" In Japanese, the negative is often used when asking things, since it a "softens" a direct question.



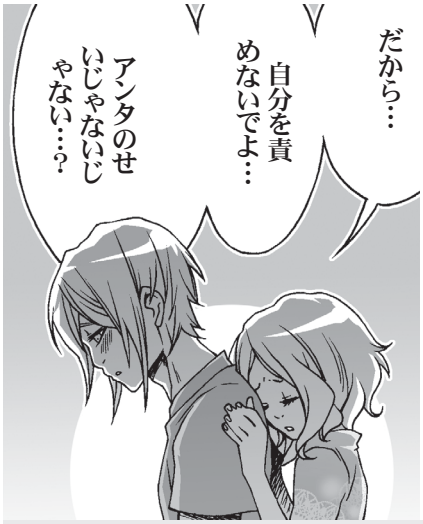
Studio Kōsen

Asakawa: この４人(よにん) 見(み)おぼえありません？
this 4 people see remember not there are?
Do these 4 people ring a bell?

Manga Example 6: A tag for agreement

The tag じゃない at the end of a sentence used with an interrogative intonation, is a way of looking for the other person's agreement.

This example offers us a peculiar instance of this. The sentence seeking agreement is アンタのせいじゃない (it's not your fault). If we add the colloquial expression for statement じゃない, we obtain アンタのせいじゃないじゃない？, as in the example. This gives us two じゃない together, something that may sound really strange but which is not unusual in colloquial language. Therefore, the literal translation of this sentence is "It's not your fault, isn't it?" Giving this last じゃない an interrogative tone is very important, because, otherwise, the other person would interpret it as a negative. The tag じゃない？ is extremely common in spoken Japanese.



Xian Nu Studio

Kawami: だから…自分(じぶん)を責(せ)めないでよ…アンタのせいじゃないじゃない…？
so . . . yourself DOP attack EP . . . you POP fault not be not be . . . ?
So . . . don't blame yourself . . . It wasn't your fault, right?

Manga Example 7: Answer to a question in the negative

We will conclude with an example of something which might confuse you. Take a look at the conversation in the panel: literally, it would be "You can't see me?" and then the answer "Yes."

In English, we would interpret that he can see him, but in Japanese we are saying "indeed, I cannot see you." That is, in Japanese we corroborate the speaker's words "you can't see me." In our final translation, however, we have followed the English convention, and have answered "No." Don't feel discouraged if you are not grasping this immediately, this is a concept that takes a while to master!



Gabriel Luque

Man 1: え？オレが見(み)えない？
hey? I SP not see?
Hey? Can't you see me?

Man 2: はい
yes
No.

Exercises 練習

1 To what forms are these contractions equivalent: ～ちゃう, ～てゆう and ～なきゃ?

2 Give the casual or vulgar version of 買(か)っておく, 行(い)きたい and 遊(あそ)んではだめだ。(買う to buy; 行く to go; 遊ぶ to play)

3 Translate: 買(か)ってくれよ、車(くるま)！
(買う to buy; 車(くるま) car)

4 Translate: なんか言(い)えよ、これってつまらないんだよ . (言う to say; つまらない boring)

5 What do we use the construction ～てやがる for? Form a sentence with it.

6 Is the following sentence grammatically correct: あの家(いえ)、すごいでかいね ? Why/why not?
(家 house)

7 Translate: あいつ、めっちゃむかつくんだ、すぐびびりやがって . . . (すぐ at once)

8 Translate "Can you give me a hand?" using the negative and the ～てくれる form (Lesson 45). (to give a hand 手(て)を貸(か)す)

9 Translate: 舞子(まいこ)ちゃん、やせたじゃん？(舞子 Maiko; やせる to lose weight)

10 You <u>don't</u> have a stomachache and someone asks you お腹(なか)、痛(いた)くない？ What do you answer?
(お腹 stomach; 痛い painful)

— Answers to all the exercises can be found online by following the link on page 7. —

Lesson 54 • 第 54 課

Comparatives

After studying informal and formal registers in Japanese, let's return to our grammar studies to see how to form comparative and superlative sentences.

As . . . as



In Lessons 43 and 50, we said that ようだ means "apparently . . . ," and that a small variation of this expression could be used to form comparative sentences: "A is as . . . as B." The basic structure of this kind of sentences is "AはBのように . . ."

Usage: After verbs and ***-i*** adjectives, we add nothing. ***-na*** adjectives keep the な, and we add の between nouns and ように. **Be careful:** ように is an adverbial form that modifies verbs and adjectives, but never nouns.

- 彼(かれ)はきつねのようにずるいです He is as sly as a fox.
- この家(いえ)は宮殿(きゅうでん)のように広(ひろ)い This house is as roomy as a palace.
- 今(いま)は夏(なつ)のように暑(あつ)いです It is now as hot as in summer.
- 美穂(みほ)は宇多田(うただ)ヒカルのように歌(うた)えるよ Miho can sing like Hikaru Utada.

To establish a comparison between nouns, we use the adjectival form ような.

- 彼(かれ)は宮殿(きゅうでん)のような家(いえ)に住(す)んでいる He lives in a house that is like a palace.
- 舞子(まいこ)の彼氏(かれし)はゴリラのような男(おとこ)だ Maiko's boyfriend is a man like a gorilla.

Finally, we can also make metaphors and similes with ようだ:

- 舞子(まいこ)の彼氏(かれし)はゴリラのようだ Maiko's boyfriend is (looks like) a gorilla.

Remember, as we saw in Lesson 43, みたいに and みたいな are the colloquial versions of ように and ような, respectively. **Usage:** We don't need to add or eliminate anything.

- 彼(かれ)はきつねみたいにずるいです He is as sly as a fox.
- 彼(かれ)は宮殿(きゅうでん)みたいな家(いえ)に住(す)んでいる He lives in a house that is like a palace.
- 舞子(まいこ)の彼氏(かれし)はゴリラみたいだ Maiko's boyfriend is (looks like) a gorilla.

More . . . than

The basic structure to form this kind of sentence is "AはBより . . ." **Usage:** Don't add anything after a simple-form verb, ***-i*** adjective, or noun. ***-na*** adjectives take な. **Be careful:** "AはBよりも . . .," with identical meaning and usage, is another valid form, as well as the dislocated forms "BよりAは . . ." or "BよりもAは . . ."

- 日本語は英語より難しいだろう Japanese is probably more difficult than English.
- 美穂は宇多田ヒカルよりうまく歌える Miho can sing better than Hikaru Utada.
- この仕事は地獄よりも大変だ This job is tougher than hell.
- アニメよりマンガは面白いと思う I think manga is more interesting than anime.
- 寿司よりもスパゲッティを食べたいな More than sushi, I want to eat spaghetti.

Note: "AはBより . . ." is only used when we know what we are talking about: the subject has already been raised in the conversation or all parties know about it (Lesson 39). If the subject is unknown, we must use the expression "Aのほうが Bより . . ." The dislocated form "BよりAのほうが . . ." is also possible.

- ジョンのほうがマイクよりハンサムだ John is more handsome than Mike.
- 天ぷらのほうがカレーよりおいしい Tempura is nicer than curry.
- 九州より四国のほうが静かだ Shikoku is quiet, more so than Kyushu.

Not as . . . as

In Japanese there is no way of saying "A is less . . . than B," maybe due to the Japanese aversion to stating things clearly. The closest expression is "AはBほど + negative," which literally means "A is not as . . . as B" **Usage:** B is only used with simple-form verbs and nouns. The overall sentence must compulsorily be in the negative.

- 英語は日本語ほど難しくない English is not as difficult as Japanese.
- カレーは天ぷらほどおいしくない Curry is not as nice as tempura.
- マイクはジョンほどハンサムじゃない Mike is not as handsome as John.
- 歌うのは踊るほど疲れない Singing is not as tiring as dancing.
- 富士山はエベレストほど高くない Mount Fuji is not as high as Mount Everest.

Adverbs of gradation

Adverbs of gradation are usually used in sentences of the kind "more . . . than" and "not as . . . as." They follow より and ほど, and give different gradations to our comparisons:

1) やや: slightly
- 秀(ひで)は知宏(ともひろ)よりやや背(せ)が高(たか)い Hide is slightly taller than Tomohiro.

2) 少し/ちょっと: a little (ちょっと is more informal than 少し)
- 秀(ひで)は知宏(ともひろ)よりちょっと背(せ)が高(たか)い Hide is a little taller than Tomohiro.

3) かなり/ずいぶん: quite (ずいぶん is somewhat stronger than かなり)
- 秀(ひで)は知宏(ともひろ)よりかなり背(せ)が高(たか)い Hide is quite taller than Tomohiro.

4) ずっと: much more
- 秀(ひで)は知宏(ともひろ)よりずっと背(せ)が高(たか)い Hide is much taller than Tomohiro.

The adverb もっと (more) can also form comparative sentences:
- この本(ほん)はもっと高(たか)いよ This book is more expensive.
- 彼(かれ)(のほう)がもっと頭(あたま)がいいです He is more intelligent.

The same . . . as / As . . . as

The structure A は B と同じぐらい ***A wa B to onaji gurai*** is used to form sentences of the kind "A is more or less the same . . . as B," or "A is as . . . as B." The word 同じ means the same as, and the adverb ぐらい (Lesson 40), means more or less or about. **Usage:** Only nouns or noun phrases are used for B. **Be careful:** Although grammatically correct, the structure "Aは B と同じ . . . ," that is, without ぐらい, is hardly ever used in real life.

- 秀(ひで)は知宏(ともひろ)と同(おな)じぐらい背(せ)が高(たか)い Hide is more or less the same height as Tomohiro.
- ジョンはマイクと同(おな)じぐらいハンサムだ John is more or less as handsome as Mike.
- 天(てん)ぷらはカレーと同(おな)じぐらいおいしい Tempura is more or less as nice as curry.
- 数学(すうがく)は化学(かがく)と同(おな)じぐらい嫌(きら)いです I hate math more or less the same as chemistry.
- そのパソコンは車(くるま)と同(おな)じぐらい高(たか)い That computer is more or less as expensive as a car.

Questions

Let's look at the question "Which is more . . . , A or B?" The basic structure in Japanese is "AとBではどちらが . . . ?" **Be careful:** in this kind of sentence always use the interrogative pronoun どちら or its colloquial version どっち (which?); never use 誰 ***dare*** (who?), どれ (which?), or 何 ***nani*** (what?).

- 日本語と英語ではどちらが難しいか？ Out of Japanese and English, which is more difficult?
- 日本語は英語と同じぐらい難しい Japanese is more or less as difficult as English.
- 秀と知宏ではどっちが背が高いの？ Who is taller: Hide or Tomohiro?
- 知宏は秀ほど背が高くない Tomohiro is not as tall as Hide.
- 天ぷらとカレーではどちらがおいしいの？ Which is tastier: tempura or curry?
- 天ぷらはカレーよりずっとおいしい Tempura is much tastier than curry.

🎧 Superlatives

There are two ways of forming superlative sentences ("A is the most (adj.) in . . ."). Both structures must always be used with an adjective, and never with a noun or an adverb.

The first is "A は . . . (の中で / で) 一番 (adj.)" ***A wa . . .(no naka de/de) ichiban*** (adj). **Note:** で is used when we are talking about places, and の中で is used when we are talking about groups of something. However, both are often used without distinction.

- 富江はクラスの中で一番頭のいい人です Tomie is the most intelligent in the class.
- エベレストは世界で一番高い山です Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
- 世界で一番安全な国は日本でしょう Japan might be the safest country in the world.

The second structure for superlatives is "A は . . . (の中で / で) 最も (adj.)" ***A wa . . . (no naka de/de) mottomo*** (adj). We use it just like its "sibling" 一番 .

- 富江はクラスの中で最も頭のいい人です Tomie is the most intelligent in the class.
- エベレストは世界で最も高い山です Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
- 世界で最も安全な国は日本でしょう Japan might be the safest country in the world.

Note: 一番 means the first or sometimes the best (for example, 彼は一番だ ***kare wa ichiban da***, He is the first / the best), while 最も is an adverb meaning the most (something).

🎧 Too (much)

The English adverbs "too" and "too much" modify adjectives and verbs. In Japanese we must form compound verbs and adjectives with the auxiliary verb ～すぎる. For verbs, add ～すぎる to the root: 働く ***hataraku*** (work) ⇒ Root:働き ⇒ add ～すぎる: 働きすぎる (work too much). For ***-i* and *-na* adjectives:** replace い or な with ～すぎる: 広い ***hiroi*** (wide) ⇒ 広すぎる (too wide) | 静かな ***shizuka-na*** (quiet) ⇒ 静かすぎる (too quiet).

- あの人(ひと)はいつも話(はな)しすぎますね That man always talks too much, doesn't he?
- 昨日(きのう)はお酒(さけ)を飲(の)みすぎた Yesterday, I drank too much (alcohol).
- このサンドイッチはまずすぎるな This sandwich tastes really bad.

Exceptions: いい (good) ⇒ よすぎる (too good) | Negative: ～ない ⇒ ～なさすぎる

- 君(きみ)は勉強(べんきょう)しなさすぎるんじゃない？ Don't you study too little?

🎧 Comparative and superlative expressions		
A は ***B*** のように . . .	***A*** is as . . . as ***B***	百合は天使のようにきれいです Yuri is as beautiful as an angel.
A は ***B*** みたいに . . .	***A*** is as . . . as ***B*** (colloquial)	百合は天使みたいにきれいだ Yuri is as beautiful as an angel.
A は ***B*** より . . .	***A*** is more . . . than ***B***	百合は久美よりきれいだ Yuri is more beautiful than Kumi.
A のほうが ***B*** より . . .	***A*** (new topic) is more . . . than ***B***	百合のほうが久美よりきれいだ Yuri is more beautiful than Kumi.
A は ***B*** ほど . . . (neg.)	***A*** is not as . . . as ***B***	久美は百合ほどきれいじゃない Kumi is not as beautiful as Yuri.
A は ***B*** と同じぐらい . . .	***A*** is more or less the same . . . as ***B***	百合は久美と同じぐらいきれいだ Yuri is more or less as beautiful as Kumi.
. . .の中で/で一番 (Adj.)	the most (adj.) in . . .	百合は会社の中で一番きれいだ Yuri is the most beautiful in the company.
. . .の中で/で最も (Adj.)	the most (adj.) among . . .	百合は会社の中で最もきれいな女性だ Yuri is the most beautiful woman in the company.
～すぎる	too much . . .	百合は背が低すぎる Yuri is too short.
天使 ***tenshi*** angel; きれいな beautiful; 会社 ***kaisha*** company; 女性 ***josei*** woman; 背が低い ***se ga hikui*** short		

漫画例 Manga Examples

And now let's get on with the manga examples, which, as usual, will help us study in greater depth some of the points we have studied in this chapter. We will also expand on what we've already learned with some new expressions or nuances.

Manga Example 1: The comparative "more than"

This is an example of the "A is more . . . than B" kind. The basic structure in Japanese is "AはBより . . ." However, this structure is only valid if both speakers are familiar with the subject they are talking about.

If you want to introduce a new topic in a comparative sentence of the "more than" kind, then remember that you must use the "Aのほうが Bより . . ." structure, as in the example here (Notice ほう is written in kanji [方] here, a perfectly valid option and very common in written Japanese.) If the sentence in the manga example had been preceded by the question この薬は効くね (This pill is effective, isn't it?) the response wouldn't use の方が because the pill has previously appeared in the conversation, and it has become the topic in it. You can review the concept of "topic" in Lesson 37. **Note:** かもしれない (Lesson 43), means "perhaps" or "maybe." It is always placed at the end of the sentence.



George: この薬(くすり)の方(ほう)が麻薬(まやく)より効(き)くかもしれないよ

this medicine on its part SP drug more than effective perhaps

This pill might be more effective than a drug.

Manga Example 2: The comparative "to be like"

The construction "to be like" is formed with the adverbial form ように (before verbs and adjectives) and the adjectival form ような (before nouns). There are colloquial versions, which are, respectively, みたいに and みたいな.

In our sentence, Haruki states that 女王のように見える, literally, "She is seen like (as if she were) a queen." Remember that between the noun and ように or ような, we must add の. A more colloquial version of this sentence would be 女王みたいに見える. (Be careful, with みたいに and みたいな, we don't need の).



Studio Kōsen

Notice, too, the word まるで, which means something like "completely," "utterly," or "just like," and is often used in these kinds of sentences to strengthen them rhetorically.

Haruki: まるで女王(じょおう)のように見(み)える
completely queen like see
She looks just like a queen.

Manga Example 3: A special usage of *yori*

Just as we said in Manga Examples 4 and 6 in Lesson 48, finding grammatical structures that are used with the ***kosoado*** pronouns (Lesson 34) is quite common. The case of より is somewhat special, because it is usually seen only with それ (that), as in the example here, and is hardly ever combined with other ***kosoado*** pronouns. それより is used when changing subject suddenly in a conversation; its literal translation is something like "more than that." This expression is very difficult to translate directly, although we could paraphrase it with expressions such as "aside from that" or "I agree with what we've just said, but now we must talk about . . ."



Gabriel Luque

Jun: それより後半(こうはん)も今(いま)までの調子(ちょうし)でいこうぜ！ 勝(か)てるぞ みんな！
this more than 2nd part too now until POP way IP let's EP! win EP everybody!
Aside from that, in the second part we must play the way we've been playing until now! We can win, guys!

Manga Example 4: The comparative "not as"

We saw earlier in this chapter that in Japanese there are no comparative expressions of the "less than" kind, and that we must use subtleties such as "not as much as." The basic structure of this kind of sentence is "AはBほど . . . (negative)." In the manga-example sentence here, there is no comparative element because it has previously appeared in the conversation. Probably, the original sentence said by this man was something like ウチの雪子ほど太っていない ***uchi no Yukiko hodo futotte inai*** (She is not as fat as my Yukiko). That would justify Yukiko's rage in the example! Remember that the verb or adjective to be compared (太っている in this case) must be in the negative. **Note:** ウチ (in kanji 内), is a multipurpose word that can be used when referring to oneself (particularly in the case of women), to one's family, or to close friends: it is the same concept of ***uchi*** that we analyzed in Lesson 45.



Hiroshi: ウチの雪子(ゆきこ)ほどじゃないけどな
inside POP Yukiko so much as not be but EP
Although she's not as much as my Yukiko.

Manga Example 5: The superlative *ichiban*

Let's review the superlative, expressions of "the most . . ." kind. There are two ways of forming superlative sentences: one is using 一番, like in this panel, and another is with 最も ***mottomo***. The basic structure is "Aは . . . の中で/で ***no naka de/de*** 一番 (adj.)."

In our sentence, それが一番大事なこと (That is the most important thing), the area the speaker is referring to is not mentioned, and the subject is replaced with the pronoun それ (that). To study this structure further, we could change the sentence to 合格するのは人生で一番大事なこと ***Gōkaku suru no wa jinsei de ichiban daiji-na koto*** (Passing the exam is the most important thing in life), that is, with a word naming a specific area (人生で, "in life"), and replacing the pronoun それ with 合格する (to pass an exam). **Note:** The adverb きっと (surely, undoubtedly) comes at the end of the sentence here. This is a common characteristic of the colloquial language (Lesson 53).



Yūji: それが一番大事(いちばんだいじ)なコトだよ、きっと
that SP the most important thing be EP, sure
That's the most important thing, surely.

Manga Example 6: Superlative words

Besides the superlatives 一番 ***ichiban*** and 最も ***mottomo***, there are compound words with superlative meaning, formed by the kanji 最 ***sai*** plus another kanji. Notice how 最も and 最 have the same kanji, but their reading is different. Other superlative words of this kind are 最良 ***sairyō*** (the best), 最悪 ***saiaku*** (the worst), 最新 ***saishin*** (the newest), 最高 ***saikō*** (the best / the tallest), 最愛 ***saiai*** (the most loved), 最強 ***saikyō*** (the strongest), 最終 ***saishū*** (the last / the final), 最適 ***saiteki*** (the most appropriate / the ideal), and many more. Also worth mentioning are 最初 ***saisho*** (the beginning), 最後 ***saigo*** (the end), as well as the adverb 最近 ***saikin*** (lately, recently).



Studio Kōsen

In this example we have the word 最低, which literally means "the lowest," but which is quite often used as an insult hurled mainly by women, with the meaning of "you are scum," "you are pathetic," or even "you are despicable."

Shigeko: 鈴木(すずき)さんなんか大(だい)ッキライ！　最低(さいてい)オトコです！

Suzuki SUF (emphasis) hate! the lowest man be!!

I hate you, Suzuki! You scumbag!

Manga Example 7: Too much

The final panel offers an instance of how to form sentences with the meaning of "too much." If we have the verb 知る and we want to say "to know too much," we must add the auxiliary verb ～すぎる to its root, thus obtaining the verb 知りすぎる. Compound verbs with ～すぎる can be conjugated just like any other verb: 知りすぎない (negative), 知りすぎなかった (past negative), 知りすぎて (***-te*** form), etc. Here, for example, we have the past form 知りすぎた, working as a relative clause that modifies the noun 男. Therefore, 知りすぎた男 means "The man who knew too much." Review Lesson 50 to brush up on the subject of relative clauses.



Gabriel Luque

Title: 第(だいよんしょう)４章　知(し)りすぎた男(おとこ)

number 4 chapter know too much man

Chapter 4: The man who knew too much

Exercises 練習

1 What differences of register and usage are there between the expressions ように and みたいに?

2 Translate: "This house is as big as a cathedral." (house 家(いえ) ; big 大(おお)きい ; cathedral 大聖堂(だいせいどう))

3 Translate: "This house is bigger than a cathedral."

4 Translate: "This house is not as big as a cathedral."

5 Translate: "This house is more or less as big as a cathedral."

6 Translate: "This house is much smaller than a cathedral."

7 Translate: "Between this house and a cathedral, which is bigger?"

8 Translate: "This cathedral is the biggest in the world." (world 世界(せかい))

9 Translate: "This house is too big."

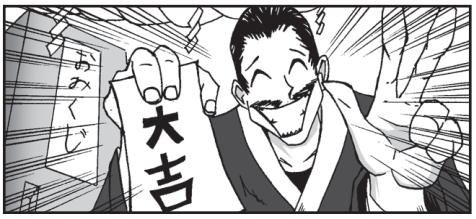
10 What do the following words mean? 最悪(さいあく) , 最初(さいしょ) , 最良(さいりょう) and 最低(さいてい) ? What do you think the words 最大(さいだい) and 最小(さいしょう) could mean?

— Answers to all the exercises can be found online by following the link on page 7. —

Lesson 55 • 第 55 課

Sightseeing

In this lesson we will introduce some language that is useful when sightseeing in Japan, and, in doing so, review some of the previous conversation-based lessons we have studied so far.



🎧 Asking for directions

In Lesson 51 we studied how to ask for directions at the 交番 ***kōban*** police box. Let's learn how to ask directions from people in the street:

- すみませんが、横浜ランドマークタワーへ行く道を教えていただけませんか？ Excuse me, how do I get to Yokohama Landmark Tower? (Lessons 45 and 54)
- 次の角を右へ曲がってください。そしてまっすぐ行ってください Turn right on the next corner. Then, go straight on. (Lesson 48)
- すみませんが、浅草寺は近いですか？ Excuse me, is Sensoji temple close by?
- 歩くには遠すぎるので、地下鉄に乗った方がいいですよ
  It's too far to walk, so I recommend taking the subway. (Lessons 48, 49 and 54)
- この近くにバス停はありますか？ Is there a bus stop near here?
- はい、あの映画館の隣にあります Yes, it is next to that cinema.
- 奈良の見所は何ですか？ What places are worth seeing in Nara?
- 東大寺には大仏があるし、それに春日大社と奈良公園も面白いですよ。
  There is the great image of Buddha in Todaiji temple, and then Kasuga-taisha shrine and Nara Park are also interesting. (Lessons 35 and 48)
- 市内地図をいただけますか？ Could you give me a map of the city? (Lesson 45)
- この辺には商店街がありますか？ Is there a shopping district around this area?
- 二番目の信号を左に曲がってください Turn left at the second traffic light.
- こちらの方向でいいですね？ This is the right way, isn't it?
- 東寺は京都駅の裏側にありますよ The Toji temple is behind Kyoto Station.

Giving and receiving directions			
behind	～の裏側(うらがわ)に	that way	あちらへ
to go straight on	まっすぐ行(い)く	to the left	左側(ひだりがわ)に
in front of . . .	～の前(まえ)に	to the right	右側(みぎがわ)に
next to . . .	～の隣(となり)に	to turn left	左(ひだり)へ曲(ま)がる
on the corner of . . .	～の角(かど)に	to turn right	右(みぎ)へ曲(ま)がる
on the opposite side of . . .	～の向(む)かい	to go 3 blocks	3 ブロック行(い)く

Taking photos

Sometimes we might want to ask someone to take our photo. Or we may want to take photos of other people—after asking their permission, of course!

- すみません、写真(しゃしん)を撮(と)っていただけますか？ Excuse me, could you take a photo (of me)? (Lesson 45)
- もう一枚(いちまい)お願(ねが)いします One more, please. (Lesson 40)
- (あなたの)写真(しゃしん)を撮(と)ってもいいですか？ Could I take a photo of you? (Lesson 32)
- あなたと一緒(いっしょ)に写真(しゃしん)を撮(と)りたいんですけど I'd like to have my photo taken with you.
- ここで写真(しゃしん)を撮(と)ってもいいですか？ Can I take photos here? (Lesson 32)

At the museum

The sentences below will help you when touring Japanese museums. You can expand them using words from the tables on these pages and grammar patterns we have studied. がんばってね!

- 東京国立博物館(とうきょうこくりつはくぶつかん)の開館時間(かいかんじかん)を教(おし)えていただけませんか？
  Could you tell me what time the Tokyo National Museum opens? (Lessons 45 and 54)
- 東京国立博物館(とうきょうこくりつはくぶつかん)は９時半(くじはん)から１７時(じゅうななじ)まで開(あ)いております
  The Tokyo National Museum opens from 9:30 am to 5 pm. (Lessons 41 and 52)
- しかし、休館日(きゅうかんび)は月曜日(げつようび)ですので、お気(き)をつけください
  However, please be aware that they are closed on Mondays. (Lessons 48 and 52)
- 入場料(にゅうじょうりょう)はいくらですか How much is it to get in?
- 学生割引(がくせいわりびき)はありますか？ Is there a student discount?
- 大人(おとな)２枚(にまい)と子ども１枚(いちまい)ください Two adult (tickets) and one child, please.

- 館内(かんない)ツアーはありますか？ Is there a guided tour of the museum?
- 江戸時代(えどじだい)の浮世絵(うきよえ)はどこにあるんですか？ Where are the Edo period ukiyo-e?
- 絵葉書(えはがき)を買(か)えますか？ Can I buy postcards? (Lesson 32)
- トイレを使(つか)ってもいいでしょうか？ Can I use the toilet? (Lesson 32)

Sightseeing vocabulary

In the city (市内で)

aquarium	水族館(すいぞくかん)	direction	方向(ほうこう)	Shinto shrine	神社(じんじゃ)
art museum	美術館(びじゅつかん)	garden	庭園(ていえん)｜庭(にわ)	shopping street	商店街(しょうてんがい)
botanical garden	植物園(しょくぶつえん)	market	市場(いちば)	statue	像(ぞう)
Buddhist temple	お寺(てら)	movie theater	映画館(えいがかん)	street	通(とお)り
castle	城(しろ)	museum	博物館(はくぶつかん)	theater	劇場(げきじょう)
city hall	市役所(しやくしょ)	monument	記念碑(きねんひ)	traffic lights	信号(しんごう)
corner	角(かど)	park	公園(こうえん)	zoo	動物園(どうぶつえん)

In the countryside (田舎で)

bay	湾(わん)	island	島(しま)	sea	海(うみ)
cape	岬(みさき)	lake	湖(みずうみ)	valley	谷(たに)
coast	海岸(かいがん)	mountain	山(やま)	volcano	火山(かざん)
harbor	港(みなと)	peninsula	半島(はんとう)	waterfall	滝(たき)
hill	丘(おか)	river	川(かわ)	wood	森(もり)

At the museum (博物館で)

adult	大人(おとな)	exhibition	展示(てんじ)	painting	絵画(かいが)
child	子(こ)ども	exit	出口(でぐち)	price of admission	入場料(にゅうじょうりょう)
entrance	入口(いりぐち)	guided tour	館内(かんない)ツアー	sculpture	彫刻(ちょうこく)

Mailing things

And last of all, some useful phrases for the post office:

- 切手はどこで買えますか？
  Where can I buy stamps? (Lesson 32)
- アメリカまで手紙を出したいが、いくらですか？
  I want to send some letters to the US. How much is it?
- １１０円です
  It is 110 yen.
- じゃ、１１０円の切手を５枚ください
  Then please can I have five 110-yen stamps.
- 航空便でお願いします
  By air mail, please.
- 船便でチリに着くまで何日ぐらいかかりますか？
  How many days will it take to Chile if I send it by sea mail?
- 中身は本だけですが、何かの割り引きはありますか？
  (The packet) only contains books, is there a discount?

Post office	
address	住所
envelope	封筒
fragile (item)	割れ物
mailbox	ポスト
packet	小包
postcard	絵葉書
post office	郵便局
registered mail	書留
special delivery	速達
stamp	切手
zip code	郵便番号

Cultural Note: Shrines and Temples

The various Buddhist temples (お寺 ***otera***) and Shinto shrines (神社 ***jinja***) dotting the most historical Japanese cities, such as 京都 ***Kyōto***, 奈良 ***Nara*** and 鎌倉 ***Kamakura***, are fascinating and exotic to Western eyes, but what are the differences between the places of worship of the two main religions in Japan, Buddhism (仏教 ***bukkyō***) and Shinto (神道 ***shinto***)?

There is a great difference in color: whereas お寺 are not painted and keep the original color of the wood, 神社 are often painted in bright red.

At 神社 we will see 鳥居 ***torii*** gates, which separate the earthly and spiritual worlds and which mark the entrance to sacred land, often protected by a fierce 狛犬 ***komainu*** watchdog on each side. You can go to the 神社 to pray for anything, such as success in your career or studies, finding a boyfriend or girlfriend, or recovery from illness. In fact, the sale of お守り ***omamori*** (amulets) and 絵馬 ***ema*** (votive tablets on which you write your wishes and then hang) are an essential source of income for the 神社. You'll also find おみくじ, little bits of paper that tell your fortune for a reasonable price.

To pray at a 神社 , first purify yourself (rinsing your mouth with water and washing your hands), sound a bell to alert the gods (神 ***kami***) to your presence, throw a coin into the offertory box (賽銭箱 ***saisenbako***), bow twice, clap twice, bow again, and finally pray.

お寺 are more frugal in appearance than 神社. Here we can find beautiful pagodas (塔 ***tō***) and huge bells (鐘 ***kane***), and people light aromatic incense (お香 ***okō***) to pray to the Buddha. There are many statues of the different Buddhas: (如来 ***nyorai***), the bodhisattva (菩薩 ***bosatsu***), the 明王 ***myōō*** (fierce beings who protect the teachings of the Buddhas), and the 仁王 ***niō***, two huge statues of angry warriors who guard the temple gates: the one called 阿 ***a*** has his mouth open, and the other called 吽 ***un***, has his mouth closed, as an allegory of the characters opening and closing the Sanskrit alphabet, "a" and "hum," and which, together, represent the beginning and end of all things.



A *torii* gate at Kasuga Jinja (Nara), guarded by a *komainu*
(Photo: M. Bernabé)

漫画例 Manga Examples

We will say goodbye to conversational lessons with a few manga panels, of course, where some of the topics we have seen in this lesson will be illustrated. We will also see quite a few new things related to Japanese culture, so be sure to read carefully.

Manga Example 1: Going to the post office

The panel opening the manga examples section shows us a boy going to the post office (郵便局) at his mother's request, to hand in a letter (手紙) for special delivery (速達). Ordinary mail would be 普通 ***futsū***, and registered mail 書留 ***kakitome***. Besides helping us review useful post-related vocabulary, this panel also reviews some grammar seen in previous lessons. For instance, the で in 速達で corresponds to the use of the particle で we studied in Lesson 38: it indicates "how." Likewise, take a look at the って placed just after the phrase in quotation marks (「」): it is the colloquial version of the "quote" usage of the particle と we studied on page 81, Lesson 41. **Note:** The boy repeats the sentence twice, but in his speech bubble no kanji are used. Sometimes, we will find words or sentences fully written in hiragana when children repeat them: this is a strategy to let the reader know that the child is only repeating sounds and doesn't really understand the meaning of what he's saying.



Kimie: 郵便局(ゆうびんきょく)の人(ひと)に「速達(そくたつ)でお願(ねが)いします」って言(い)うのよ

post office* POP *person* IOP *"special delivery* IP *please" say* EP *EP

And you tell the man at the post office "by special delivery, please," OK?

Kazuhiro: そくたつでおねがいします そくたつでおねがいします

special delivery* IP *please special delivery* IP *please

By special delivery, please. By special delivery, please.

Manga Example 2: Asking to have a photo taken

Here we find the most common sentence when asking someone to take a photo of us. Notice how questions with 〜ていただきます (Lesson 45) are often inflected in the potential form (Lesson 32), that is, 〜ていただけます, literally, "could you do me the favor of . . . ?" Peculiarities about photos in Japan: almost all Japanese have the odd habit of posing for photos making the V sign for victory (Vサイン) with the index and middle fingers, a truly compulsive habit. By the way, the word they use to urge someone to smile when taking their photo is チーズ (cheese), just like us in English. **Note:** The man's answer, somewhat unsociable, is へい, a distortion of はい, denoting certain indifference and even annoyance.



Gabriel Luque

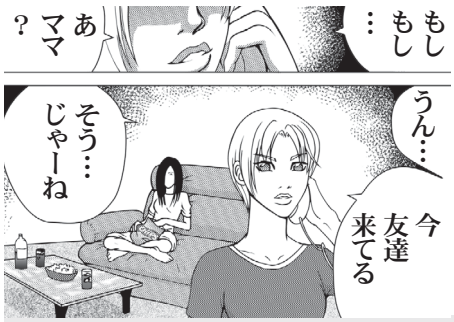
Couple: すみませーん　シャッター押(お)していただけます？

excuse me shutter press (do a favor)?

Excuse me, could you take a photo of us?

Manga Example 3: A telephone conversation

This is a telephone conversation between a mother and her daughter. As you can see, it is a short conversation: typical in Japan. We will highlight the もしもし, the Japanese equivalent to our "hello?" or "yes?," from the verb 申す ***mōsu*** ("to say," Lesson 52), which belongs to the formal language of modesty. Seemingly, when the telephone was first introduced in Japan, people needed to make sure they were being heard "from the other side" and so they repeated the verb 申す twice, obtaining something like "I say, I say." This expression has taken root and has become the actual もしもし used today. Notice, too, うん, a colloquial word used to say yes, and the じゃね at the end, used to say goodbye.



Studio Kōsen

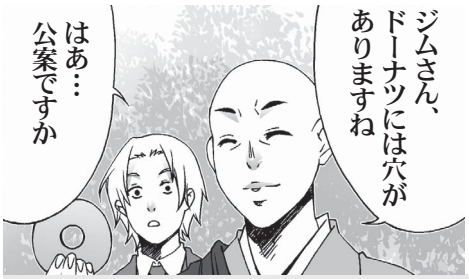
Yuki: もしもし… あ ママ？　うん… 今(いま) 友達(ともだち) 来(き)てる そう… じゃーね

hello . . . oh, Mom? yes . . . now friend come that's right . . . bye-bye

Hello? Oh, Mom? Yes . . . I have a friend over now. Yes . . . Bye-bye.

Manga Example 4: Zen Buddhism

In this example we have a conversation where a Buddhist monk (お坊さん ***obōsan*** or 坊主 ***bōzu***) remarks to Jim that "doughnuts have holes," and he replies asking whether it is a 公案. You probably know the word 禅 ***zen***, which designates a very widespread branch of Buddhism (仏教 ***bukkyō***) in Japan. Among the 禅 practices we have 座禅 ***zazen***, in which the student sits in meditation for hours (in an uncomfortable position) and contemplate riddles called 公案, which help the student reach enlightenment (悟り ***satori***). Probably, the most famous 公案 is the enigmatic 片手ではどんな音がする？ ***Katate de wa donna oto ga suru?*** (What is the sound of one hand clapping?) **Note:** In the next panel, the monk says that when you eat a doughnut, the hole disappears, and he wonders where that hole goes to. A very 禅 reflection, no doubt!



Xian Nu Studio

Monk: ジムさん、ドーナツには穴(あな)がありますね
Jim SUF, doughnuts PP TOP hole there is EP
Mr. Jim, doughnuts have holes, don't they?

Jim: はあ…公案(こうあん)ですか
ah . . . koan be Q?
Ah, is this a koan?

Manga Example 5: *Omikuji* fortune telling

We see in this panel a man in a Shinto shrine (神社 ***jinja***), who puts a coin in a box with a sign reading おみくじ, takes out a piece of paper reading 大吉, and rejoices at it. Why? Well, the おみくじ tells you what your fortune will be for the year, and there are several kinds. From the best to the worst: 大吉 (great good luck), 中吉 ***chūkichi*** (medium good luck), 小吉 ***shōkichi*** (little good luck), 末吉 ***suekichi*** (so-so luck), 小凶 ***shōkyō*** (little bad luck), 半凶 ***hankyō*** (medium bad luck), 大凶 ***daikyō*** (great bad luck). **Note:** Other typical things we can see here are a big rope of straw (しめなわ), zigzag-shaped paper decorations (四手 ***shide***), and 破魔矢 ***hamaya*** arrows, which frighten evil spirits and devils away, and are sold during 初詣 ***hatsumōde***, the first temple visit of the New Year.



Gabriel Luque

Man: 今年(ことし)のうんせいは…
this year POP fortune TOP . . .
Let's see my fortune for this year . . .

Box: おみくじ
fortunes
Fortunes

Paper: 大吉(だいきち)
great good luck
Great good luck

Manga Example 6: Praying at a Shinto shrine



In this example, which also takes us to a 神社 ***jinja***, we have a conversation between a mother and a daughter. The mother is praying before an offertory box (賽銭箱 ***saisenbako***), which is where prayer money is thrown and where the prayer ritual we saw in the Cultural Note on page 257 takes place. The daughter asks why she has donated so much as 1,000 yen to the gods (神様); because, usually, one throws in 10, or 50 or 100 yen coins, at the most. Larger offerings are only made when you are asking the 神 for something especially important. Notice the use of the particle も, which in this case indicates the idea of "no less than" (Lesson 37).

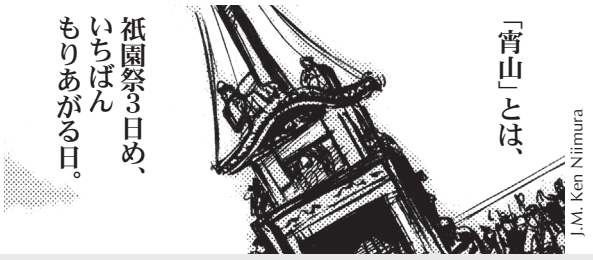
Michiko: 母(かあ)さん、神様(かみさま)に千円(せんえん)もふるまって、なに祈願(きがん)したの？

Mom, god SUF IOP 1000 yen very much donate, what prayer do EP?

Mom, you've just given 1000 yen to the gods, what have you prayed for?

Manga Example 7: Festivals

We could not conclude this lesson without mentioning the variety of bustling Japanese festivals (祭 ***matsuri***). In this example, we see an image of a 山鉾 ***yamaboko*** float, from one of the most famous festivals in Japan: the 祇園祭, held in the beautiful city of 京都 ***Kyōto*** throughout the month of July, with its main events on the 17th and 24th. They say this festival has a history of more than one thousand years! It is one of the three most famous festivals in Japan along with the 天神祭 ***tenjin matsuri*** (in the city of 大阪 ***Ōsaka***, on July 25), and the 神田祭 ***Kanda matsuri*** (in 東京 ***Tōkyō***, on May 15), which are all worth seeing. **Notes:** Here you can also see an example of the superlative 一番 ***ichiban*** (in hiragana here), which we saw in Lesson 54, in the relative clause いちばんもりあがる日 (Lesson 50).



Tomo: 「宵山(よいやま)」とは、祇園祭(ぎおんまつり)３日(みっか)め、いちばんもりあがる日(ひ)。

"Yoiyama" (definition), Gion festival day 3 (ordinal), the most liven up day

The "Yoiyama" is on the third day of the Gion Festival, the liveliest day.

Exercises 練習

1 Translate the following words: 動物園 (どうぶつえん), 切手 (きって), 城 (しろ), 展示 (てんじ), テレホンカード, 住所 (じゅうしょ) and 美術館 (びじゅつかん).

2 Translate the following words: "flash," "garden," "direction," "street," and "traffic lights."

3 You are heading for the Atsuta Jingu shrine (熱田神宮 (あつたじんぐう)) in Nagoya (名古屋 (なごや)), but you don't know how to get there. Ask somebody.

4 Translate the answer to the previous question:
この通 (とお) りをまっすぐ行 (い) って、そして右 (みぎ) へ曲 (ま) がってください。交番 (こうばん) の隣 (となり) にあります。

5 Translate: "Walk two more blocks, and then turn right before the third traffic lights."

6 Ask someone if you can take their photo. If they agree, don't forget to ask them to smile!

7 You are going to the museum, and you need to buy tickets for an adult and three children. What do you say?

8 Translate: スペインまで手紙 (てがみ) を出 (だ) すのに１１０円 (ひゃくじゅうえん) の切手 (きって) が必要 (ひつよう) です。(必要な necessary)

9 What is the process to follow when praying at a 神社 (じんじゃ)? What are 絵馬 (えま), and what are they for?

10 What are 禅 (ぜん), 公案 (こうあん), and the practice of 座禅 (ざぜん), and what is their aim?

— Answers to all the exercises can be found online by following the link on page 7. —


KAGE
影
五日目
大阪体験
ツヤ
間もなく
新大阪です。
楽印
Alice
プリコ
CCカード
CHINTA
道頓堀

づぼらや

〒556-0002 大阪府浪速区
恵比寿東2丁目5番地
℡ 06-6633-5529

お、このレストランはとても有名ですよ。

こんにちは、この住所にあるレストランへ行きたいのですが…

はい、お乗りになってください。

いや、お上手で！ところで、その店のふぐは、他の店のふぐよりおいしいと皆さんおっしゃいます。私も一回食べに参りましたが、やはりとておいしかったですよ。

あ、私はスペインから参りました。

いいえ、日本語は運転手さんが言うほど上手ではありませんよ。どこから来られましたか？日本語が本当にお上手ですね。

あ、もうお店に到着いたしました。1240円でございます。

そうですか、いいところですよ。

はい、行きたいですよ、もちろん。

え？行きたくないですか？

はい、行ってみたいですが、時間がありません。

ところで、大阪と東京ではどちらがお好きですか？

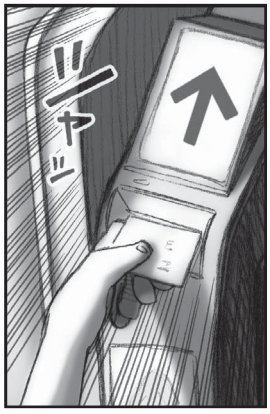
大阪は東京と同じぐらい好きだと思いますよ！

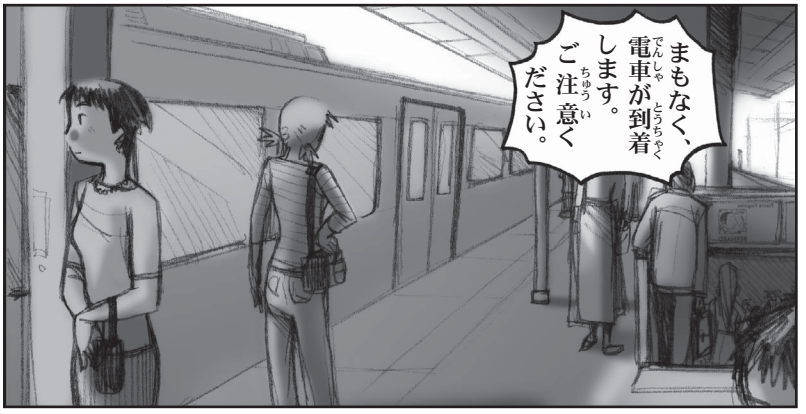
そうですか？大阪では住吉大社という神社をお勧めいたします。行ってみたくないですか？

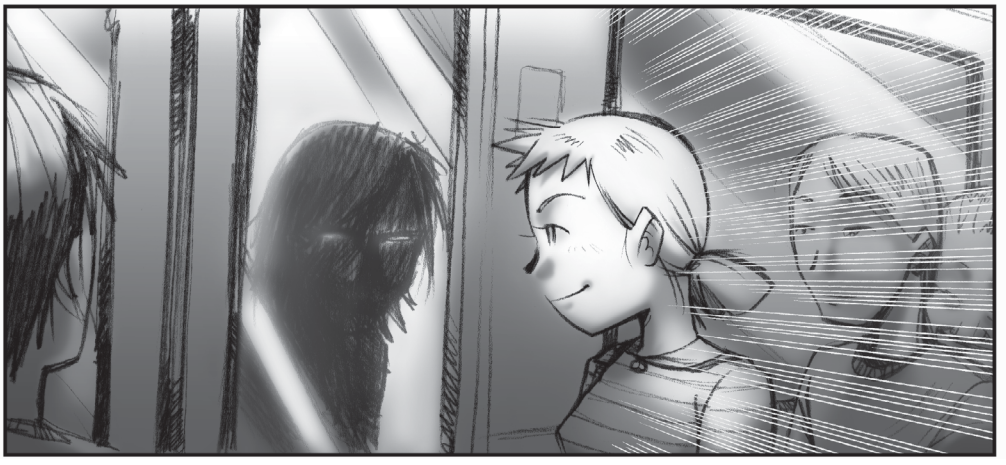

私の味は日本一
特選3本立
モグモグ

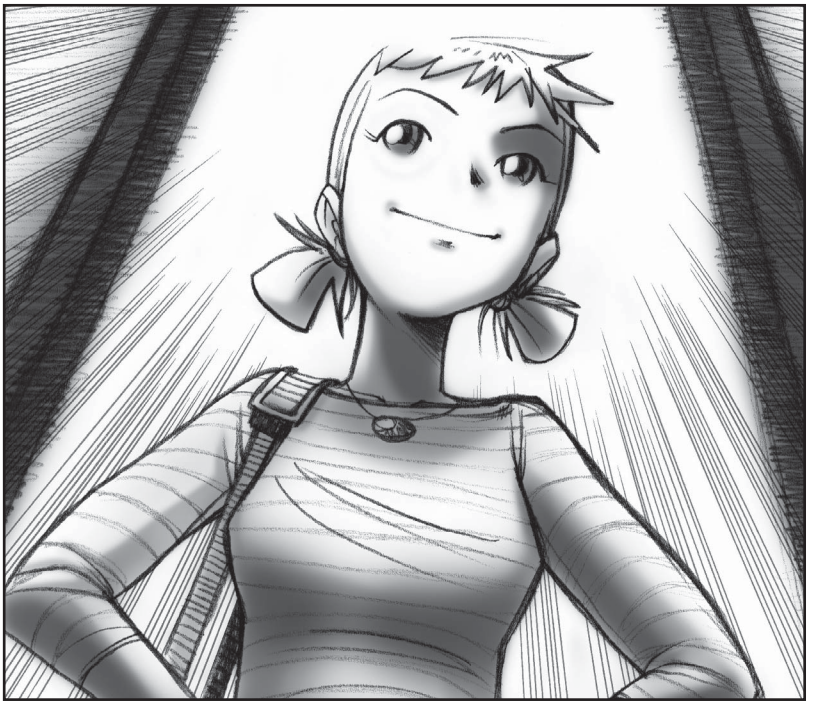

カラオケ
ああぁっ、カワのながれのようにいいいい
写真をとってもいいですか？
肝炎ですか？
うん。2年前、肝炎で入院したんだ。内科の医者さんは治してくれたはずだけど…
お腹がとても痛いよ。肝炎かもしれない。
深呼吸をしてください。どこが痛いですか？
あっ
ごみ箱にあったお弁当？じゃ、これは食中毒かもしれません。誰か、救急車を読んで！
ごみ箱にあったお弁当だけ…
けど、熱がありますね。昨日、何を食べましたか？


あ、あんたは上野でぶつかった奴だ！すげぇ偶然だな。ね、このダサいペンダント、あんたのもんだろう？
お！
ピーポー
ピーポー
あんた、何か怖いのか？いつも逃げちゃってるよ。何から逃げてるの!?問題から？
あたしは別に何も怖くないし、逃げてもいない。なんでそんなことを言うの？
あの時、お前が落としたので、オレ拾っといただけだ。
じゃ、ありがとう。
あたしのペンダントだ!!あなたが盗んだの!?
何言ってんだよ？盗んでねぇぞ、このきたねぇペンダント。
はい！分かりました！ありがとうございます!!
ペコリ
考えといてよ！問題をなめるんじゃねぇよ！
お前、問題から逃げてんだと思う。問題から逃げるのはやばいし、かっこわるいぜ。問題に立ち向かわなきゃ、解決しないんだよ。わかった？
問題に立ち向かう？そうだね…


ツーヤ


まもなく、
電車が到着
します。
ご注意
ください。





Review for Lessons 51–55

Answers to all the review exercises can be found online by following the link on page 7.

🎧 ***KAGE*** – New vocabulary 新しい単語

ふぐ	blowfish	汚い（きたな）	dirty
運転手（うんてんしゅ）	driver	拾う（ひろ）	to pick up
ごみ箱（ばこ）	trashcan	問題（もんだい）	problem
ぶつかる	to crash	立ち向かう（たむ）	to face
偶然（ぐうぜん）	chance, coincidence	解決する（かいけつ）	to solve

1. In this fifth episode of ***Kage***, what register of Japanese speech (vulgar, formal, etc.) does the taxi driver use? Why do you think he uses this register?

2. What register of speech does the beggar Nuria meets in the park use? Why do you think he uses this register?

3. What is the specialty of the restaurant Nuria wants to go to? According to the taxi driver, are dishes in this restaurant more delicious than in other restaurants or not?

4. Which city does Nuria like better, Tokyo or Osaka?

5. What illness is the beggar who faints in the park afraid of having? Does he have a fever? What illness does Nuria suggest he might have, and how does she deduce this?

6. Why is Nuria so happy after talking with the beggar? What has she discovered?

7. The taxi driver is visibly surprised when he asks Nuria 行ってみたくないですか？ and she answers はい、行ってみたいけど、あまり時間がない. What do you think causes the taxi driver's confusion and his subsequent repetition of the question?

8. What form of ***keigo*** is used in these phrases: ***sonkeigo*** (S), ***kenjōgo*** (K) or ***teineigo*** (T)?

a) お乗（の）りになってください (S / K / T)

b) 私も一回（いっかい）食べに参（まい）りました (S / K / T)

c) １２４０円でございます(S/K/T)

d) 住吉大社(すみよしたいじゃ)という神社(じんじゃ)をお勧(すす)めいたします(S/K/T)

e) どこから来られましたか？(S/K/T)

9. Change the following sentences from ***Kage*** into polite Japanese (***desu-masu*** form).

a) あんたは上野(うえの)でぶつかった奴(やつ)だ！すげぇ偶然(ぐうぜん)だな。

_____.

b) 何言ってんだよ？盗(ぬす)んでねぇぞ、このきたねぇペンダント。

_____.

c) お前(お)が落としたので、オレ拾(ひろ)っといただけ。

_____.

10. Change the address on the business card Nuria shows the taxi driver into Western style.

11. Choose three words from the box on the facing page, depending on what is asked.

a) 医者(いしゃ)が病気(びょうき)を治(なお)すために患者(かんじゃ)にどんなことをしますか？

_____ _____ _____

b) 手紙(てがみ)を書く時は、どんなものが必要(ひつよう)ですか？

_____ _____ _____

c) 買い物をしたいけど、どこへ行きますか？

_____ _____ _____

d) 今日(きょう)は変なものを食べちゃった！どういう病気(びょうき)になるだろう？

_____ _____ _____

e) 郵便局(ゆうびんきょく)で、手紙(てがみ)を送る時は、どんな送り方がありますか？

_____ _____ _____

f) 今日(きょう)はたくさん写真をとりたい！何を忘(わす)れてはいけない？

_____ _____ _____

g) すごく寒いのに、服を着ずに外へ出ました。どういう病気(びょうき)になるでしょう？

_____ _____ _____

切手(きって)	書留(かきとめ)	紙(かみ)	風邪(かぜ)	胃炎(いえん)	手術(しゅじゅつ)
消化不良(しょうかふりょう)		肺炎(はいえん)	注射(ちゅうしゃ)	スーパーマーケット	
市場(いちば)	検査(けんさ)	電池(でんち)	インフルエンザ		普通(ふつう)
商店街(しょうてんがい)	速達(そくたつ)	封筒(ふうとう)	フィルム	食中毒(しょくちゅうどく)	三脚(さんきゃく)

12. Find the word that doesn't belong in each one of these groups.

a) 湾(わん) ／ 岬(みさき) ／ 島(しま) ／ 神社(じんじゃ) ／ 半島(はんとう) ／ 海岸(かいがん)

b) 水族館(すいぞくかん) ／ 入場料(にゅうじょうりょう) ／ 美術館(びじゅつかん) ／ 劇場(げきじょう) ／ 植物園(しょくぶつえん) ／ 動物園(どうぶつえん)

c) 入院(にゅういん) ／ 医者(いしゃ) ／ 患者(かんじゃ) ／ 警察官(けいさつかん) ／ 包帯(ほうたい) ／ 病院(びょういん)

d) 財布(さいふ) ／ 心臓(しんぞう) ／ 腸(ちょう) ／ 肝臓(かんぞう) ／ 肺(はい) ／ 血管(けっかん)

e) 国番号(くにばんごう) ／ テレホンカード ／ 商店街(しょうてんがい) ／ 携帯電話(けいたいでんわ) ／ 公衆電話(こうしゅうでんわ)

f) 警察官(けいさつかん) ／ 泥棒(どろぼう) ／ 盗む(ぬすむ) ／ 血圧(けつあつ) ／ 交番(こうばん) ／ スリ

g) 住所(じゅうしょ) ／ 城(しろ) ／ ポスト ／ 絵葉書(えはがき) ／ 切手(きって) ／ 小包(こづつみ) ／ 郵便局(ゆうびんきょく)

h) フィルム ／ レンズ ／ 写真 ／ 現像(げんぞう) ／ フラッシュ ／ 彫刻(ちょうこく)

13. Link each illness with a part of the body, and the type of doctor needed.

a) 消化不良(しょうかふりょう)	腸(ちょう)	眼科医(がんかい)
b) 中耳炎(ちゅうじえん)	目	内科医(ないかい)
c) 盲腸炎(もうちょうえん)	胃(い)	内科医(ないかい)
d) 貧血(ひんけつ)	血液(けつえき)	耳鼻咽喉科医(じびいんこうかい)
e) 下痢(げり)	肝臓(かんぞう)	小児科医(しょうにかい)
f) 目の痛(いた)み	鼻	内科医(ないかい)

g)	肝炎	耳	内科医
h)	鼻炎	肺	外科医
i)	子どものぜんそく	腸	耳鼻咽喉科医

14. Choose the most suitable answer for each sentence.

a) 私の友達は仏教に興味があるので京都でたくさんの＿＿＿＿＿＿
に行きました。
1. 劇場　2. 動物園　3. 神社　4. お寺

b) 事故が起こりましたよ！けが人がいます！＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿
を呼んでください！
1. 郵便局　2. 目撃者　3. 救急車　4. 泥棒

c) 今日は＿＿＿＿＿＿へ行きましたよ！いろいろな魚を見てみました。
1. 水族館　2. 美術館　3. 映画館　4. 博物館

d) 神社にはお守りや絵馬や＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿がありません。
1. おみまい　2. おみくじ　3. おみあい　4. おみもの

e) 最近、デジカメがあるので、＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿はもう要らないね。
便利ですね！
1. フィルム　2. フラッシュ　3. レンズ　4. 三脚

f) 日本という国は＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿です。
1. 半島　2. 海岸　3. 島　4. 湖

g) あなたは熱があるかもしれません。＿＿＿＿＿＿を測りましょう。
1. 包帯　2. 体温　3. 呼吸　4. 血圧

h) 今、＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿がない若者はあまりいないですね。
1. 携帯電話　2. 公衆電話　3. 国際電話　4. 電話帳

15. Fill in the blanks with an adverb from the box overleaf.

a) 私は母より＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿背が高いです。私は１７０センチで、
母は１６９センチです。

b) ピーターは１０００円で、ジョンは１１００円を持っています。
ジョンはピーターより＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿お金を持っています。

c) あの１９歳の奥さんは８４歳のご主人より＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿若いです。

d) この青い車は１２０万円ですが、あの赤い車は２００万円です。
あの赤い車はこの青い車より＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿高いですね。

やや	ずいぶん	ずっと	少し

16. This conversation is out of order. Rewrite it in the correct order.

1) いらっしゃいませ！郵便局へようこそ。
2) ずっととは言えませんが、かなり高くなりますよ。どうなさいますか？
3) んん...しょうがないな...あまりお金がないので、船便で送ります。
4) そうですね。航空便って船便よりずっと高いですか？
5) おはようございます。実は、この小包みを送りたいんです。
6) カナダへ送りたいんですけど、かなり急いでいます。
7) この小包みですか？どちらへお送りになりたいのですか？
8) それでは、航空便で送った方がいいですね。

郵便屋さん：＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿
お客さん：＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿
郵便屋さん：＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿
お客さん：＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿
郵便屋さん：＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿
お客さん：＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿
郵便屋さん：＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿
お客さん：＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿

17. Complete this dialogue held at a hospital with the most suitable words.

Doctor: こんにちは。どうなさいましたか？

Patient: こんにちは。ちょっと気分が (1) _____です。

Doctor: そうですか？どんな症状(しょうじょう)ですか？

Patient: (2) _____が痛(いた)いです。しかし、病院(びょういん)に来る前に (3) _____を測(はか)ったけれど、熱はありませんでした。

Doctor: 胃潰瘍(いかいよう)か胃炎(いえん)ですかねぇ？

Patient: 痛(いた)みはそれほど激(はげ)しくないですけど。

Doctor: わかりました。まず (4) _____になってください。

Patient: このベッドでいいですか？

Doctor: はい。それでは、シャツを脱(ぬ)いで、(5) _____をしてください。

Patient: え？それは深(ふか)く呼吸(こきゅう)することですか？

Doctor: そうです。(he touches him on the stomach) ここが痛(いた)いですか？

Patient: はい、すごく痛(いた)いです、そこは！

Doctor: 血液(けつえき)を調(しら)べなければならないので、血液(けつえき) (6) _____が必要(ひつよう)です。

Patient: はい。何か悪い病気(びょうき)ですか？

Doctor: まだ分かりませんが、(7) _____ことはないと思いますよ。

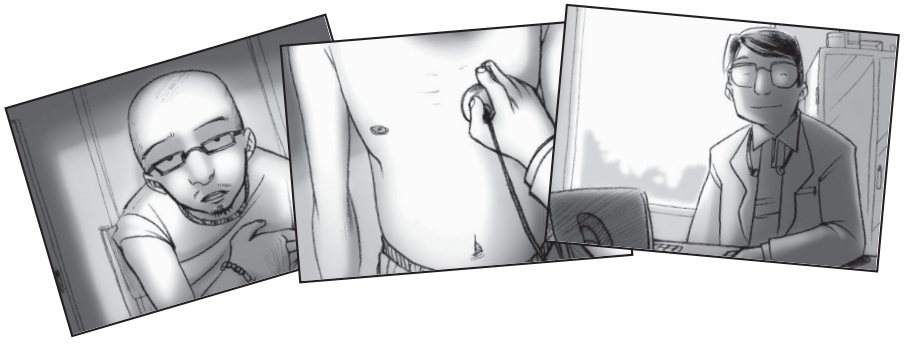
Patient: あ、よかった。何か薬(くすり)を飲まなきゃなりませんか？

Doctor: そうです。(8) _____はありますか？

Patient: はい、ペニシリンに...

Doctor: じゃ、この薬(くすり)を２週間の間 (9) _____ください。お大事に！

Patient: はい！ありがとうございます！



18. Identify what form of ***keigo*** each of the following sentences is: ***sonkeigo*** (S), ***kenjōgo*** (K) or ***teineigo*** (T). Then write each sentence in the ***-masu*** form, as in the example.

a) 先生はパソコンをお使いになっています。(S/K/T)

先生はパソコンを使っています。

b) あちらにいる方はとても有名(ゆうめい)な政治家(せいじか)でございますよ。(S/K/T)

_____。

c) 何かおっしゃいましたか、田中(たなか)先生？(S/K/T)

_____。

d) 社長に大切(たいせつ)な書類(しょるい)をお見せしたいのですが...(S/K/T)

_____。

e) あ、木村(きむら)さん、こんにちは！どちらへ行かれますか？(S/K/T)

_____。

f) すみませんが、あなたのかばんの中を拝見(はいけん)してもよろしいですか？(S/K/T)

_____。

g) 先生はビールを飲まれないと私は存(ぞん)じております。(S/K/T)

_____。

h) 社長、青山(あおやま)さんとお会いしてもよろしいですか？(S/K/T)

_____。

19. Choose the sentence with the correct ***keigo*** and same meaning as the first sentence.

a) 私は先生の本を借りました。

1. 私は先生の本をお借りました　2. 私は先生の本を借りられました
3. 私は先生の本を拝借(はいしゃく)しました　4. 私は先生の本をお借りになりました

b) 社長は福岡(ふくおか)に住(す)んでいます。

1. 社長は福岡(ふくおか)に住(す)まれています　2. 社長は福岡(ふくおか)に住(す)んでいたします
3. 社長は福岡(ふくおか)にお住(す)みしています　4. 社長は福岡(ふくおか)に住(す)んでくださいます

c) 池田さんは死にました。あなたは知っていましたか？

1. 池田さんは参りました。あなたはご存知でしたか？
2. 池田さんは死なれました。あなたは存じていましたか？
3. 池田さんはお死しました。あなたは存じていましたか？
4. 池田さんはお亡くなりになりました。あなたはご存知でしたか？

20. Answer the following questions using comparative expressions.

a) エベストと富士山ではどちらが高い山ですか？

エベレストは富士山より高い山です_____。

b) 日本と中国ではどちらが人が多いですか？

_____。

c) オレンジとりんごではどちらか大きいですか？

_____。

d)「人」という漢字と「龍」という漢字ではどちらやさしいですか？

_____。

e) 一週間と七日間ではどちらが長いですか？

_____。

21. Answer the following questions using comparative expressions.

a) エベストは富士山より高い山です。

富士山はエベレストほど高くない山です_____。

b) すいかはいちごより大きいです。

_____。

c) タイのご飯は日本のご飯ほどおいしくないと日本人はいつも言っています。

_____。

d) マリコちゃんはヒサコちゃんよりきれいな人です。

_____。

22. Unscramble the following superlative sentences.

a) です｜クラス｜マリコちゃんは｜の中で｜きれいな｜女の子｜最(もっと)も

_____。

b) 一番(いちばん)｜私の｜天ぷら｜料理は｜です｜好きな

_____。

c) の中で｜人｜一番(いちばん)｜旦那(だんな)は｜エッチな｜あたしの｜だよ！｜日本

_____。

d) 島(しま)｜大きい｜最(もっと)も｜です｜世界(せかい)で｜オーストラリアは

_____。

23. Change these informal sentences into the polite Japanese ***-masu*** form.

a) 何してんだよ、お前？早(はや)く行かなきゃ！

あなたは何をしていますか？早(はや)く行かなければなりません。

b) 言っとくけど、あいつはめっちゃ頭(あたま)いいのよ。

_____。

c) あのガキ、どっかへ行っちゃったぞ。

_____。

d) めっちゃたけえなぁ、フェラーリって車は...オレには買えんぜ。

_____。

e) お前、オレのビール飲んじゃったの？飲んじゃいけないよ、それ！

_____。

f) 彼(かれ)がお前にでかい車買ったげるって？マジの話なの、それ？

_____。

g) あっちでチャリに乗(の)ってる奴(やつ)のつら、おもしろいかもね！

_____。

h) あんた、もっとかいてくれよ、マンガ！すごいおもしろいんだ！

_____。

i) お金ねぇんだよ、オレ！これから働(はたら)かなきゃなんないよ。

_____。

24. Correct the mistakes in the following sentences.

a) A: あそこへ行きたくないの？ | B: いいえ、行きたくないよ！

b) 電車は飛行機(ひこうき)ほど速いです。

c) 私はあの書類(しょるい)をご覧(らん)になりたいです。

d) あの人は猿(さる)のように男だね。

e) 先生はお話しいたしております。

f) 猫(ねこ)は象(ぞう)より大きい動物です。

25. Choose the most suitable answer for each sentence.

a) マユミさんはエミカさん_____やさしくないですね。

1. ほど　2. と同(おな)じぐらい　3. より　4. ずっと

b) 先生はここに_____か？

1. おります　2. いたします　3. いらっしゃいます　4. なさいます

c) 彼(かれ)はすごく金持ちなのに、お金を使いたくないみたいだね。_____ _____奴(やつ)だね！

1. すごい　2. せこい　3. やばい　4. ださい

d) A: 今夜(こんや)、ご飯を食べたいの？ | B: _____、食べたくない。

1. はい　2. いいえ

e) 山本(やまもと)先生は新しい家を_____とおっしゃいました。

1. 買われる　2. 買える　3. 買えられる　4. 買わされる

f) センスがないね、彼女(かのじょ)。いつも_____服を着ているんだ。

1. すごい　2. せこい　3. やばい　4. ださい

g) 社長、私はあなたの娘(むすめ)さんと＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿です。

1. お話したい　2. お話になりたい　3. 話されたい　4. 申(もう)し上げたい

h) A: 土曜日、映画を見に行かない？ | B: ＿＿＿＿＿＿、見に行かないよ。

1. はい　2. いいえ

i) 日本とロシア＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿どちらが大きい国ですか？

1. では　2. は　3. が　4. のに

j) ロシアは日本＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿大きい国です。

1. ほど　2. かなり　3. と同じぐらい　4. より

k) この本は＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿ので買えない。

1. 高くすぎる　2. 高くなすぎる　3. 高すぎる　4. 高いすぎる

l) 小泉(こいずみ)社長は「明日(あした)は休みだ」と＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿。

1. おっしゃいた　2. おっしゃました　3. おっしゃった　4. おっしゃいました

m) あの人は手塚治虫(てづかおさむ)＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿おもしろいマンガをかける。

1. のように　2. のようの　3. ように　4. ような

Kanji

病 (139)	院 (182)	京 (233)	都 (234)	旅 (235)	医 (258)	以 (189)	業 (189)	有 (190)	町 (181)	同 (191)
貸 (230)	借 (231)	員 (229)	研 (207)	究 (208)	注 (217)	意 (218)	世 (211)	界 (212)	止 (202)	急 (216)

26. Link each kanji with its ***kun'yomi*** reading.

都	と(ぐ)	世	か(りる)
急	みやこ	病	おな(じ)
業	たび	同	よ
旅	そそ(ぐ)	町	やまい
注	いそ(ぐ)	止	と(まる)
研	わざ	借	まち

27. Choose the correct kanji or kanji combination for each reading.

a) 「とうきょうの人いがい、ここに誰(だれ)も入ってはいけないよ」とちゅういしました。

とうきょう：1. 東京　2. 京者　3. 京都　4. 陳京

いがい：1. 以外　2. 意内　3. 意外　4. 以内

ちゅうい：1. 注以　2. 注意　3. 住以　4. 住意

b) あの若いいしゃはこのびょういんで働(はたら)いている。

いしゃ：1. 意者　2. 以者　3. 医者　4. 病者

びょういん：1. 病院　2. 病気　3. 病医　4. 病人

c) 昨日(きのう)、ビデオ屋さんへ行って、かいいんになって、ビデオをかりた。

かいいん：1. 会院　2. 界院　3. 界員　4. 会員

かりた：1. 究りた　2. 貸りた　3. 質りた　4. 借りた

d) 寺田(てらだ)先生は海野(うみの)先生とおなじ　けんきゅうをなさっている。

おなじ：1. 同じ　2. 伺じ　3. 同なじ　4. 伺なじ

けんきゅう：1. 究明　2. 研究　3. 究研　4. 明究

e) 来週の北海道へのたびはちゅうしになりました。

たび：1. 族　2. 旅　3. 旗　4. 施

ちゅうし：1. 中上　2. 中止　3. 仲上　4. 仲止

28. Choose the correct reading for each kanji combination.

a) あの病人の借金は意外と少ないですね。

病人：1. びょうじん　2. びょうしん　3. びょうひと　4. びょうにん

借金：1. しゃっきん　2. しゃくきん　3. かりかね　4. かりがね

意外：1. いぞと　2. いそと　3. いがい　4. いかい

b) 町長はとても高い料理を注文した。

町長：1. ちょちょう　2. ちょうちょ　3. ちょうちょう　4. ちょちょ

注文：1. ちゅうもん　2. ちゅうぶん　3. ちゅもん　4. ちゅぶん

c) ベネディクト１６世は京都に行きたいらしいです。

１６世：1. じゅうろくせ　2. じゅうろくよ　3. じゅうろくせい　4. じゅうろくだい

京都：1. きょと　2. きょうと　3. きょとう　4. きょうとう

d) 黒川(くろかわ)先生は研究所で難(むずか)しい作業をなさっていました。

研究所：1. けんきゅじょ　2. けんきゅうじょう　3. けんきゅじょう　4. けんきゅうじょ

作業：1. さぎょう　2. さくぎょう　3. つくりわざ　4. さくごう

29. Write the kanji for the given ***furigana***.

a) あの(りょかん)_____の前で(と)_____まってくださいね。

b) 空手の(せかい)_____チャンピオンは(とうきょう)_____ へ(りょこう)_____しました。

c) この(じいん)_____の水は(ゆうりょう)_____です。

d) この(まち)_____にはたくさんの(いがく)_____を勉強している学生が住(す)んでいる。

e) 車をすぐ(か)_____してください！(いそ)_____いでいますから！

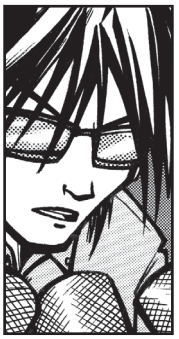
f) この作文の(いみ)_____を教えてくださいませんか？

Lesson 56 • 第 56 課

The Conditional Form

In this chapter we will study in depth the four different constructions that are used to express the conditional form in Japanese.

The conditional form with と



The expression と is used to indicate a natural relationship based on habit or logic (if / when X happens, then Y usually happens). It is often used in sentences expressing events derived from natural phenomena, habits, etc. After a と clause, we never express will, or a wish, order or request. This kind of sentence usually has the nuance of "whenever," rather than "if."

Usage: と is placed directly after verbs and ***-i*** adjectives. ***-na*** adjectives and nouns require だ .

- １５日になると、給料が振り込まれる When the 15th comes, my wage is transferred (to my account).
- 毎日仕事が終わると、ビールを飲む Every day, when I finish work, I have a beer.

A different usage of と expresses "discovery":

- あの橋を渡ると、学校があります When you cross that bridge, there is a school.

The conditional form with ば

The expression ～ば is used for sentences with the pattern "if X, then Y." It is similar to と in some ways, but has a stronger nuance of hypothesis or supposition. As with と, after a clause with ～ば we never express will, or a wish, order or request.

Verbs have a special conjugation with ～ば, so study the table opposite. For ***-i*** adjectives replace the last ～い with ～ければ: 甘い ***amai*** (sweet) ⇒ 甘ければ (if it is sweet). The negative is formed the same way: 甘くない(it is not sweet) ⇒ 甘くなければ (if it is not sweet). After ***-na*** adjectives and nouns, we use ならば: きれいならば (if she were pretty), 学生ならば ***gakusei naraba*** (if he were a student). In the negative, we need the verb です(ではない/じゃない), replacing the last ～い with ～ければ: きれいでなければ (if she weren't pretty), 学生じゃなければ (if he weren't a student).

- ワインを飲めば、気持ちよくなります If you drink some wine, you'll feel better.
- その本は安くなければ、買わないよ If that book isn't cheap, I won't buy it.
- 彼がもし親切ならば、助けに来ると思う If he were kind, he'd come to help me.

The conditional form with たら

The expression ～たら is versatile and can be used in most conditional cases. If you always use ～たら to form your conditional sentences, there is less possibility that you might make a mistake!

Unlike と and ～ば, after ～たら you can express will, a wish, an order or request.

Usage: Add ら after the past form of verbs (買ったら ***kattara***, if I bought), ***-i*** adjectives (甘かったらif it were sweet). With ***-na*** adjectives and nouns, use だったら (きれいだったら, if she were pretty), (学生だったら, if he were a student).

- もし、ハワイに行ったら, お土産を買って来てね If you go to Hawaii, buy me a souvenir, OK?
- 行きたくなかったら、家に残ってもいい If you don't want to go, you can stay home.
- 彼が父親じゃなかったら、殴ったのに！ If he wasn't my father, I'd have hit him!

Note: In the first sentence we use the word もし, an adverb similar in meaning to "if." もし isn't strictly necessary, but is used to emphasize the condition.

	Simple f.	Meaning	Rule	Conditional	Rule	Negative	Negative cond.
Group 1 Invariable	教える	to teach	–る→れば	教えれば	Negative form →なければ	教えない	教えなければ
	起きる	to wake up		起きれば		起きない	起きなければ
Group 2 Variable	貸す	to lend	–す→せば	貸せば		貸さない	貸さなければ
	待つ	to wait	–つ→てば	待てば		待たない	待たなければ
	買う	to buy	–う→えば	買えば		買わない	買わなければ
	帰る	to return	–る→れば	帰れば		帰らない	帰らなければ
	書く	to write	–く→けば	書けば		書かない	書かなければ
	急ぐ	to hurry	–ぐ→げば	急げば		急がない	急がなければ
	遊ぶ	to play	–ぶ→べば	遊べば		遊ばない	遊ばなければ
	飲む	to drink	–む→めば	飲めば		飲まない	飲まなければ
	死ぬ	to die	–ぬ→ねば	死ねば		死なない	死ななければ
Group 3 Irregular	する	to do	Irregular verbs: no rule	すれば		しない	しなければ
	来る	to come		来れば		来ない	来なければ

The conditional form with なら

The expression なら is used in conversation to reiterate what the other person has said, and then add data. なら can be used in to express will, or a wish, order or request. Its colloquial version is のだったら or んだったら. We will sometimes find の before なら; it adds the nuance of "in the case of." We place nothing between verbs, adjectives (***-i*** and ***-na***), nouns and なら. In the past form, nouns and ***-na*** adjectives need だった.

- A: 韓国に旅行したい | B: 韓国へ行く（の）ならビビンバを食べなきゃね
  A: I'd like to travel to Korea | B: If you are going to Korea, then you must eat bibimbap.
- 外に出るんだったら、ごみを捨ててきてね If you are going outside, then take out the garbage, OK?

Conditional forms		
と	雨が降ると、カエルが鳴く If (when) it rains, frogs croak.	Since what is said in the first clause always comes true naturally then what is said in the second clause will come true, as well.
～ば	雨が降れば、水不足が解決する If it rained, the drought would be solved.	If the condition in the first clause (to rain) comes true, the following action comes true too.
～たら	雨が降ったら、試合は中止になる If it rains, the match will be canceled.	Provisionally, the match will be held, but if in the future the condition in the first clause (to rain) comes true, then, in that hypothetical future, the match would be canceled.
なら	雨が降るなら、家にいよう If (what happens is that) it rains, I'll stay home.	The speaker indicates a condition that he himself imposes: the second clause can be an intention.

雨が降る ***ame ga furu*** to rain; カエル frog; 鳴く ***naku*** to croak, chirp, mew;
水不足 ***mizu buzoku*** drought; 解決する ***kaiketsu suru*** to solve; 試合 ***shiai*** match;
中止する ***chūshi suru*** to cancel; 家***ie*** house; いる to be

Hypothetical conditions: if / in case

For hypothetical conditions, we can use と, ～ば, ～たら or なら.

- 試験に合格すれば、卒業できます If I passed the exam, I'd be able to graduate.
- この本が好きだったら、あげるよ If you like this book, I'll give it to you.

In this kind of "pure" conditional sentence we can use ～たら most times without making a mistake. **Note:** ～ば is usually perceived as more formal than ～たら.

Whenever

When the second action always and unavoidably follows the first one, as in the case of a naturally occurring event or the force of habit ("whenever" / "on . . . –ing"), we use と.

- 夏になると、蛍が出てきます Whenever summer comes, fireflies appear.
- 国の経済が成長すると、豊かになる Whenever the economy of a country develops, it becomes rich.

When / As soon as

When an action immediately follows the first one, but not necessarily in a natural or predetermined way, we can use と or 〜たら.

- 彼女に会うと、いつも緊張する Whenever I come across her, I get nervous.
- 先生が呼んだら、すぐ行ってください When the teacher calls you, go at once.

Idiomatic usage

〜ば and 〜たら can be used idiomatically, without a conditional meaning.

- よかったら、今度家に来てください If you like, please come to my house sometime.
- 考えてみれば、私たちは長い付き合いだね Come to think of it, ours is a long relationship, isn't it?

Notice how in this case only, 〜ば can go before sentences expressing will, or a wish, order or request. **Note:** The conjugation of the adjective いい (good) is irregular: it becomes よかったら (〜たら form), and よければ (〜ば form).

When / As a result of / After

When something is learned or discovered as a result of a certain action, use と or 〜たら.

- 納豆を買いに行くと、もうなかった When I went to buy natto, there was no more left.
- 泳ぎに行ったら、プールには水がなかった When I went swimming, there was no water in the pool.

Regarding / As for

To introduce a specific topic in the conversation, use なら.

- 赤松さんなら、家に帰りましたよ As for Mr. Akamatsu, he's already come home.
- 旅行なら、インドがいいな Talking about trips, I'd like (to go to) India.

You need to / You should

Use 〜ばいい. This expression is used to clarify doubts and things we are not sure about.

- この書類に記入すればいいんですね I only need to fill in this document, right?
- こんなこと、誰にきけばいいの？ Who should I ask about this?

Making suggestions

Use 〜たらどうですか？

- 疲れているなら、休んだらどうですか？ If you're tired, why don't you rest?
- 彼女を誘ってみたらどう？ Why don't you try inviting her?

Making soft proposals

Use 〜ば or 〜たら at the end of the sentence. Used in spoken language only.

- 寝ないでよ！ちょっと勉強すれば？ Don't sleep! How about a little more study?
- 疲れている？休んだら？ Are you tired? Why don't you take a rest?

Showing annoyance

Use ったら and ってば (といえば). Used in spoken language, mainly by women to children. **Note:** ったら is not conjugated: it goes directly at the end of a sentence.

- ぐずぐずしないでよ！勉強しなさいったら！ Quit idling! Get on with your study!
- 君！こっちに来てってば You! Come here, come on!

Explaining and requesting (idiomatic)

言えば : "This way" (explanation) / できれば : "If possible" (request).

- 簡単に言えば、彼はバカだ In short / in a few words, he is stupid.
- そう言えば、美紀が来ていないね Now you mention it, Miki hasn't come, has she?
- できれば、あなたと結婚したいんです If possible, I'd like to marry you.

A final usage for それなら and すると

- 疲れている？それなら、休んでよ Are you tired? If so, take a rest.
- 彼に会った。すると、彼は太っていた I came across him. That's when (I saw) he had put on weight.

漫画例 Manga Examples

The manga examples in this section will help you review and consolidate the conditional forms you've studied in this lesson.

Manga Example 1: The conditional *to*

As in this example, we often find と combined with a verb in the negative, with the negative conditional meaning of "if I don't do X, then Y." Other examples might be 食べないと大きくならないよ ***tabenai to ookikunaranai yo*** (If you don't eat, you won't grow); 行かないと死ぬ, ***ikanai to shinu*** (If I don't go, I'll die). We also often find と combined with だめだ or いけない, as in the sentences 食べないとだめだ or 行かないといけない. This construction has the same meaning as 〜なければならない and similar expressions studied in Lesson 32, that is "I must . . ." "I have to . . ." These sentences, then, would be "I must eat" and "I have to go," respectively. **Note:** 勝てそうにない (it doesn't look like we can win) is a kind of negation of the conjecture そうだ (2) (Lesson 43), linked to 勝てる, the potential form (Lesson 31) of the verb 勝つ (to win.)



Gabriel Luque

Jun: これはウチとやる時(とき)にはボクがフルタイム出場(しゅつじょう)しないと勝(か)てそうにないな

this TOP "uchi" CP do time TP TOP full time participate not do (conditional) win not EP

Seeing this, when we play against them, if I don't play full time, I don't think we will be able to win.

Manga Example 2: The conditional *-ba*



J.M. Ken Niimura

Here is an example of the ～ば construction: うまくいけば literally means "if it goes well." 行けば ***ikeba*** is the conditional conjugation of the verb 行く (to go) (see table, page 283). For this conjugation, the last ***-u*** in the simple form of all verbs in all groups (including the irregular verbs) is replaced with an ***-e*** and then we add ば. Thus, ***iku*** ⇒ ***ike*** ⇒ ***ikeba***. The only exception, as usual, are verbs ending in ***-tsu***, which don't become ***-tseba***, but change to ***-teba***. **Notes:** もの means "thing" (we will study this in depth in the next lesson). Notice the usage of the conjecture はずだ (Lesson 43), which indicates a supposition that is almost a fact.

Lee: そんなものがうまくいけばビルに飛行機(ひこうき)は突(つ)っ込(こ)まないはずだ

that thing SP well go (conditional) building PP plane TOP crash look like

If that worked out, nobody would think of crashing planes into buildings.

Manga Example 3: The conditional *nara*

Here, the expression なら is used to reiterate a topic of conversation which has already been raised, and then add more information (see **Regarding/As for**, page 285). The sentence in the example is probably the answer to something like (彼女を) 助けたほうがいいよ ***Kanojo o tasuketa hō ga ii yo*** (She had better be saved). The speaker reiterates this piece of information, transforms it into a conditional clause with the expression なら and then adds his own reply or opinion at the end. A more colloquial version of this sentence would be 助けたほうがいいんだったら助けよう. **Notes:** Review here the usage of the strong recommendation ～ほうがいい (Lesson 49), and the "let's" form (Lesson 34) 助けよう (I'm going to save her), indicating purpose or intention.



Xian Nu Studio

Yūma: 助(たす)けたほうがいいんなら助(たす)けよう！

save be recommended (conditional) save!!

If she had better be saved, then I'll save her!

Manga Example 4: An idiomatic usage of *yokattara*

We go back to ～たら, used here combined with the adjective いい (good) to indicate "If you like," which is useful when you want to invite somebody or offer something. The past conjugation of いい is irregular (よかった), so its ～たら conjugation is よかったら.



Xian Nu Studio

Notice the adverb もし, translated as our conditional "if." In Japanese we don't need to place もし in every conditional clause; it is more often used when we want to emphasize a condition, or to introduce a conditional sentence. **Note:** The ～てちょうだい construction means the same as ～てください (Lesson 35).

Man: もしよかったら、今度(こんど)ママとパパと三人(さんにん)でお芝居(しばい)を観(み)に来(き)てちょうだいよ
if well, next time mom CP and dad CP the three theater DOP come to see please EP
If you like, come to the theater next time with mom and dad, please.

Manga Example 5: Another conjunction

There are several kinds of conjunctions—words that connect the clauses of a sentence—that are based on conditional expressions. Besides those we saw earlier in this chapter (それなら and すると), we also have そうしたら, そうすれば, だとしたら, and, as in this example, だとすれば.

Technically, だとすれば is not a conjunction, but the sum of だ (to be), the particle と (Lesson 41) plus すれば (the ば conditional of the verb する). Literally, it means "if (that) is done," i.e., "If that is the way it is," "in that case," "then . . ." **Note:** This manga has a clear example of a relative clause: 左足が動かない原因 (cause for the left leg not to move). (Lesson 50.)



J.M. Ken Niimura

Shōji: だとすれば左足(ひだりあし)が動(うご)かない原因(げんいん)は一(ひと)つ
be CP do (conditional) leg left SP move cause TOP one
Then, there is one cause for the left leg not to move.

Manga Example 6: A "smart aleck" usage of the conditional *-ba*

Let's look at an amusing usage of the conditional ～ば to give a "smart aleck" answer of the kind "I'm hungry" | "Then eat," or "I'm tired" | "Then sleep." It is simple to obtain the "smart aleck" effect of "then X" using the conditional ～ば and an interrogative intonation, as in the following examples:

お腹がすいている ***Onaka ga suite iru*** I'm hungry
食べれば？ ***Tabereba?*** Then eat

眠いなぁ ***Nemui naa*** I'm tired
寝れば？ ***Nereba?*** Then sleep

Notes: 面倒を見る ***Mendō o miru*** (lit. "To look at a problem") means "to take care of." 父ちゃん and 母ちゃん are childish distortions of お父さん and お母さん.



Hina: ふえぇ～ん
hueeennn
Waaah!

Ken: ふん 父(とう)ちゃんと母(かあ)ちゃんにめんどう見(み)てもらえば？
hum dad CP mom IOP problem look (receive)
Humph! Then, let mom and dad take care of you.

Exercises 練習

1 Conjugate the conditional of the words 飛ぶ (to fly) and 元気な (healthy) in each of the four forms.

2 Conjugate the verbs 歩く (to walk), 寝る (to sleep), 頑張る (to hang on), 来る (to come), and 泳ぐ (to swim) ～ば form of the conditional.

3 Conjugate the negative of the verb 運転する (to drive), the ***-i*** adjective 長い (long), and the noun 本 (book) in the conditional ～ば .

4 Translate: ドアを開けると、犬が入ってしまう。
(ドア door; 開ける to open; 犬 dog; 入る to go in)

5 Translate: 背が高くなければ、彼氏にはしない。
(背が高い tall; 彼氏 boyfriend)

6 Translate: もし 授業 が嫌だったら、廊下に出てください。(授業 class; 嫌 dislike; 廊下 corridor; 出る to go out)

7 Translate: 学校へ行くなら、先生によろしく伝えてね。(学校 school; 行く to go; 先生 teacher; よろしく伝える to give one's regards)

8 Translate: すみません、誰に 注文 すればいいんですか？(すみません excuse me; 誰 who; 注文 order)

9 Translate: もし、私が君ならこんなことをしないってば！(私 I; 君 you; こと thing)

10 Translate: ギリシャへ行きたいなぁ 。今年の夏に行けば？(ギリシャ Greece; 行く to go; 今年 this year; 夏 summer)

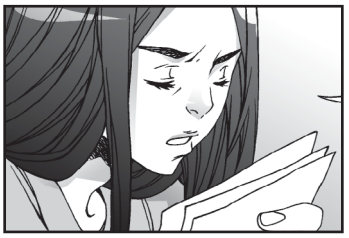
— Answers to all the exercises can be found online by following the link on page 7. —

Lesson 57 • 第 57 課

Koto and Mono

In this lesson we will learn to distinguish between こと and もの, two different Japanese concepts which are both translated as "thing."

こと and もの



First let's clarify the difference between こと and もの. Although both mean "thing," their usage is different.

こと (sometimes written in kanji: 事) designates a non-physical thing, something intangible, like thoughts, concepts or words.

- 大事(だいじ)なことを君(きみ)に言(い)いたいんです I would like to tell you an important thing.
- とても悲(かな)しいことが起(お)こりました A very sad thing happened.

こと is also used in noun + のこと constructions, which emphasize the noun.

- 君(きみ)のことが大好(だいす)きだよ I like you very much.
- 大学(だいがく)のことを忘(わす)れてくれよ Forget about university, come on.

As for もの (which can also be written in kanji: 物), it designates a physical "thing":

- そっちにある物(もの)を持(も)ってきてくれない？ Can you bring me that thing over there?
- 今日(きょう)、どんな物(もの)を買(か)いたいの？ What kind of thing do you want to buy today?

Note: Don't mistake 物 (tangible thing) for 者, which has the same pronunciation but is a humble word for "person" or "member of," to refer to oneself or someone in the ***uchi*** group:

- はじめまして。星野(ほしの)という者(もの)です Pleased to meet you. I'm (somebody called) Hoshino.

こと as a nominalizer

In Lesson 40 we talked about "nominalizing": the process of transforming a verb, adjective, or a sentence into a noun phrase, so that it works exactly like any other noun. Japanese has two nominalizers: の and こと. Go back to Lesson 40 to review the nominalizer の. **Note:** Noun phrases (underlined in the examples) with の and こと are subordinate clauses, so their subject will never be marked with the topic particle は: always use が (Lesson 37).

- 彼(かれ)が (no は) スキーをすることは皆(みな)が知(し)っている Everybody knows he skis.

🎧 の as a nominalizer

Nothing is placed after the verb and ***-i*** adjective. After a ***-na*** adjective or noun, we place either な or である in the present tense, or だった in the past tense. Let's see a few examples now to refresh your memory:

- 映画(えいが)を見(み)るのは大好(だいす)きです I like watching movies very much.
- 佐藤(さとう)さんがゲイだったのはよく知(し)っている I know very well Mr. Sato was gay.

こと is used just like の, in the same position and has the same usage with verbs, adjectives and nouns, with one exception: after ***-na*** adjectives and nouns in the present tense, we can only have である, **never** な.

- 映画(えいが)を見(み)ることは頭にいいです Watching movies is good for your brain.
- 佐藤(さとう)さんがゲイであることはよく知(し)っている I know very well Mr. Sato is gay.

🎧 Differences between the nominalizers の and こと

の and こと are often used to nominalize a sentence. We use の when the noun phrase expresses something subjective or something the speaker feels "close" to. We use こと when talking about something objective, or general, which doesn't imply any kind of emotion.

- 寝(ね)る前(まえ)に本(ほん)を読(よ)むこと / のは楽(たの)しいです Reading books before sleeping is fun.

With こと, we are simply stating that reading books before going to sleep is fun. Whereas, with の, we add emotion, implying it is fun for us and it affects us specially.

When to use の: Use の when the verb in the main sentence is either a verb of perception such as見る ***miru*** (to see), 見える (to be able to see), 聞く ***kiku*** (to hear), 聞こえる (to able to hear), 感じる ***kanjiru*** (to feel), etc., or one of the following verbs: 待つ ***matsu*** (to wait), 手伝う ***tetsudau*** (to help), 邪魔する ***jama suru*** (to bother), やめる (to stop doing, to cease) or 止める ***tomeru*** (to stop).

- その時(とき)、あの人(ひと)が死(し)ぬのを見(み)た At that time, I saw that person's death.
- 大学(だいがく)の宿題(しゅくだい)が終(お)わるのを待(ま)ってね Wait till I finish my university homework, OK?
- あの子(こ)どもをいじめるのはやめてください Please stop picking on that boy.

When to use こと: Use こと when the main verb indicates verbal communication, for example, 話す ***hanasu*** (to speak), 命じる ***meijiru*** (to command), 伝える ***tsutaeru*** (to report), きく ***kiku*** (to ask), 約束する ***yakusoku suru*** (to promise), etc., or when the last verb after the nominalizer is です or だ. Don't mix it up with のです (Lesson 40).

- 息子(むすこ)が病気(びょうき)だったことを彼(かれ)に伝(つた)えてください Tell him my son was sick.
- 私(わたし)の一番好(いちばんす)きな運動(うんどう)は走(はし)ることです Running is the exercise I like most.

🎧 Expressions with こと

こと and もの are used as components in some grammatical constructions in the Japanese language without their meaning as a tangible or intangible thing. Let's see some expressions with こと, of which we already know one: the potential ことができる (Lesson 32).

- 私(わたし)はバイクを運転(うんてん)することができる I can drive motorcycles.

The first of the new expressions with こと that we will study is ～たことがある, used frequently to indicate "I have the experience of having done X thing." **Usage:** Verbs and adjectives are always conjugated in the past. Nouns require だった.

～たことがある can be conjugated in the negative (～たことがない, not have the experience of), past (～たことがあった, had the experience of), and past negative (～たことがなかった, didn't have the experience of).

- 彼(かれ)はエベレストに登(のぼ)ったことがある He has climbed Mount Everest.
- 僕(ぼく)はアメリカに行(い)ったことがない I have never been to the United States.
- 私(わたし)は十年前先生(じゅうねんまえせんせい)だったことがある 10 years ago, I was a teacher.
- 彼(かれ)のギャグは面白(おもしろ)かったことがなかった His gags were never funny.

An expression that is very easy to mistake for ～たことがある is ことがある, which has the meaning of "now and then." Verbs, adjectives, etc., preceding こと are in the present infinitive. ***-na*** adjectives require な and nouns require の or である.

- 弟(おとうと)は働(はたら)くことがある Sometimes, my younger brother works (he usually doesn't).
- スイカはバカ高(たか)いことがある Sometimes, watermelons are ridiculously expensive.

Note: When negative, は is used instead of が with this expression:

- 彼女(かのじょ)が黙(だま)ることはない There are no occasions when she keeps quiet. | She never keeps quiet.

Decisions

The expression ことにする indicates "a decision taken by oneself or someone in the ***uchi*** group." It comes after verbs in the present infinitive (affirmative or negative).

- 日本語(にほんご)を学(まな)ぶことにします (I've decided that) I'm going to learn Japanese.
- 先生(せんせい)と話(はな)さないことにしたそうだ It looks like he's decided not to speak with the teacher.
- 来年(らいねん)、大阪(おおさか)へ行(い)くことにしました I have decided that next year I'll go to Osaka.

The second expression is ことになる, which indicates "a decision which affects oneself or someone in the ***uchi*** group, but which has been made by someone or something external." It is often used for demands or commands. **Usage:** The same as ことにする.

- 私(わたし)は英語(えいご)を勉強(べんきょう)することになっている I must (I've been told to) study English.
- パーティーはバーでしないことになった It has been decided that the party won't be held at the bar.
- 仕事(しごと)をやめることになりそうだ Apparently, I'll have to (they're demanding that I) quit my job.
- 来年(らいねん)、大阪(おおさか)へ行(い)くことになりました It's been decided that next year I'll go to Osaka.

The final sentence is very clear: with ことにする it is obvious that the decision to go to Osaka has been taken by the speaker himself, whereas with ことになる the speaker implies that the decision has been made by someone else.

Expressions with もの

The first もの we will see is used to give a kind of excuse. The effect is almost the same as "the thing is . . ." or "because . . ." in English and it is mainly used by children and women in colloquial Japanese. **Usage:** もの is always placed at the end of a sentence. Verbs and ***-i*** adjectives go in the infinitive, while ***-na*** adjectives and nouns need だ. The construction んだもの is very common. **Note:** もの can be contracted into もん.

- 今行(いまい)けないの。とても忙(いそが)しいもの I can't go now. The thing is I'm very busy.
- 幼稚園(ようちえん)、行(い)きたくないもん！ It's just that I don't want to go to kindergarten!
- どうして食(た)べないの？ Why won't you eat it? | だって、まずいんだもん Because it's bad.

The second expression is ものですか, which we often see as ものか or even もんか. This construction, always at the end of a sentence, is quite rough and indicates a very strong refusal to do something. Although it ends with か, it is not a question. **Usage:** Verbs and ***-i*** adjectives go in the infinitive. ***-na*** adjectives and nouns need な and である, respectively.

- あの男と付き合うものですか！ There's no way I'm going out with that man!
- お前に１００万円を払うものか I'm not paying you a million yen (not on your life).
- あんたとは旅行に行くもんかよ！I'm not going on a trip with you (under any circumstances)!

Expressions with *koto* and *mono*			
こと	こと（事）	Intangible thing (concept)	どんなことを言いたいの？ What kind of thing do you want to tell me?
	こと	Nominalizer: used to transform full clauses into nouns	運動をすることは体にいいです (The fact of) doing exercise is good for your health.
	～たことがある	To have the experience of	ハワイに行ったことがあります I have been (I have the experience of going) to Hawaii.
	ことがある	Sometimes . . . Now and then X happens	彼は運動をすることがある He sometimes exercises (though he usually doesn't).
	ことにする	To decide something by oneself	ハワイに行くことにしました I decided to go to Hawaii.
	ことになる	Something external to the speaker makes a decision that affects the speaker	ハワイに行くことになりました It's been decided that I'll go to Hawaii.
もの	もの（物）	Tangible thing (object)	その物を持ってきてくれる？ Can you bring me that thing?
	もの（もん）	At the end of a sentence, childish or female expression implying "excuse"	今行けないの。忙しいんだもん！ I can't go now. The thing is I'm busy!
	ものか（もんか）	At the end of a sentence, it emphasizes a categorical refusal	ハワイに行くものか！ There's no way I'm going to Hawaii!

言う ***iu*** to say; 運動 ***undō*** exercise; 体 ***karada*** body; いい good; ハワイ Hawaii; 行く ***iku*** to go; 彼 ***kare*** he; 持ってくる ***motte kuru*** to bring; 今 ***ima*** now; 忙しい ***isogashii*** busy

漫画例 Manga Examples

Let's go on now to illustrate with a few manga panels some of the language points we have covered in this lesson. The subject we are focusing on is the usage of こと and もの: both when they are used with their original meaning of "thing," and when they are part of set constructions.

Manga Example 1: *Mono* for tangible things and excuses

We start with a very peculiar example that is a great way to see two very different usages of the word もの. Look at the あなたのもの[1]だもの[2] part (we have underlined and numbered both もの so that you can see them more clearly).

The first もの (物 in kanji) is a word designating our concept of "thing," but it refers to something palpable, physical. 私はあなたのものだ, then, means "I'm a thing of yours" (I'm yours): notice how the girl speaks about herself as if she were an object. Here, she does so because she is speaking in terms of her physical body.

We have just seen the second もの at the top of the facing page: it is always placed at the end of a sentence and it indicates a sort of excuse or is used to draw attention. This expression is almost always used by children and women, although now young men are also using it more and more. Often, we will see もの together with the emphatic のだ we studied in Lesson 40: のだもの (like in the example). The の can be contracted into ん (んだもん). Likewise, this expression often comes with だって at the beginning of the sentence. だって is an expression that could be translated as "the fact is." **Note:** The last でしょ is a shortened and colloquial version of でしょう/だろう, the tag meaning "am I not?," "isn't it?," etc., which we studied in Lesson 43.



Ryanki: だって 私(わたし)はあなたのものだもの 〜でしょ？

the fact is I TOP you POP thing (emphasis) (excuse) be?

The fact is I'm yours (your thing) . . . am I not?

Manga Example 2: The emphatic usage of *koto*

This time we will study a special usage of こと, which means "intangible thing." The construction "noun + のこと" we find in this panel and which we studied on the first page of this chapter, is mainly used with personal pronouns: 私のこと ***watashi no koto*** (I), 君のこと ***kimi no koto*** (you), etc. It has no specific meaning, it just emphasizes the personal pronoun. In the example, 僕のこと(を)愛している (she loves me), could perfectly well be 僕を愛している, but the first sentence has a stronger meaning. **Note:** って is the contraction of という ("says that," Lesson 41), and そりや of それは ("that," Lesson 53).



Kazuki: 母(かあ)ちゃんは僕(ぼく)のこと愛(あい)してるって
Mommy TOP I POP (thing) love do says
Mommy says she loves me.

Man: そりゃよかったね
that thing good EP
Isn't that great?

Manga Example 3: *Koto* for intangible things and nominalizers

This panel offers us two very different こと: the first one, in かわったこと, indicates an "intangible thing," like a thought, a concept, words, etc. かわったこと literally means "thing that has changed," talking about something abstract rather than something physical, which requires こと instead of もの. The second こと is a nominalizer: it transforms the previous clause into a noun phrase. In this case, the girl's sentence would finish with です if it hadn't been cut off: 大学生になったことです (the fact of becoming a university student). **Note:** Look at the いえば, which we saw at the end of Lesson 56 as an idiomatic usage of the conditional ～ば. In the example, いえば is used to introduce an explanatory sentence.



Mariko: かわったことといえば、俊(しゅん)さんが大学生(だいがくせい)になったことくらい…
change thing say (conditional), Shun SP university student become NOM approx
Talking about changes, the only thing that has changed is that Shun has become a university student.

Manga Example 4: To have the experience of . . .

In the next three examples, we will slightly change subjects, and we will go on to comment on some grammatical expressions that use こと. Remember that sometimes, like in this panel, こと is written in kanji: 事.



Gabriel Luque

This manga example contains the expression ～たことがある, which means "having the experience of having done something." We must bear in mind that this expression is only used with relatively uncommon actions (things we don't do every day): for example, we can't say 呼吸をしたことがある ***kokyū o shita koto ga aru*** (I have the experience of having breathed). The ある in ～たことがある can be conjugated: in this example we find it in the interrogative ***-masu*** form.

Abeno: あなたは人(ひと)を傷(きず)つけた事(こと)がありますか？

you TOP person DOP wound put (have the experience of) Q?

Have you ever hurt anybody?

Manga Example 5: To decide something by oneself

This is a good example of ことにする, which means "to decide that" and is used when one makes a decision for oneself. In the example, it is the speaker himself who decides, on his own initiative, to make up with Professor Ozu; in theory, no one is forcing him to do it, he is doing it because he wants to. Notice how the sentence is dislocated (the correct order would be 小津先生と和解することにしたんです: this is a typical characteristic of the spoken language (Lesson 53).



J.M. Ken Niimura

Note: Notice how the speaker says 小津先生. The correct reading of these characters would obviously be おづせんせい (Professor Ozu). The provided reading, カレ, is for the kanji 彼 (he). This kind of strategy is used sometimes in written Japanese to indicate to the reader that the speaker says 彼 but he is really referring to 小津先生.

Ishibashi: 和解(わかい)することにしたんです　小津先生(カレ)と

reconcile with (decide) be that man CP

I've decided to make up with him (Professor Ozu).

Manga Example 6: An outsider makes a decision

Here we have ことになる, which indicates "it has been decided that" (the decision has been taken by someone else). This implies that somebody (or circumstances) determine something that affects the speaker (often in a negative way), for instance, in the sentence 僕はレポートを書くことになった ***Boku wa repōto o kaku koto ni natta*** (It has been decided that I will write a report). This denotes the idea that we are not too happy about it, but that there is a certain obligation to do it. Our example here is somewhat special. Although it can be interpreted as "The circumstances have prompted the decision that we marry," the construction ことになる is also occasionally used in a "humble" way to refer to one's own decision and to downplay its importance.

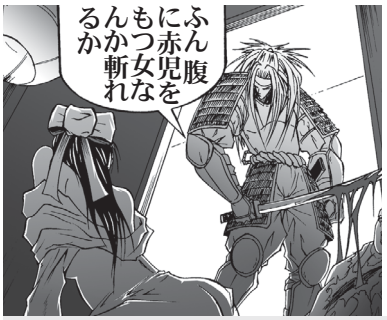


Studio Kōsen

Hanako: 私(わたし)この人(ひと)と結婚(けっこん)することになりました
I this person CP marry (it has been decided)
I'm going to marry this man.

Manga Example 7: Categorical refusal

We will finish with a slightly complicated example. The expression ものか, as we studied earlier in the lesson, implies a categorical refusal to do something. It can be contracted into もんか, and even into a simple か, as in the example. Confusing it with the interrogative particle か (Lesson 17) is very easy, and there is no way to distinguish them, except by deducing it from the context. Don't worry, this か with the meaning of categorical refusal of ものか is not used too profusely. **Notes:** 赤児 is an archaic word for 赤ちゃん ***akachan*** or 赤ん坊 ***akanbō*** (baby). 斬る like 切る ***kiru***, means "to cut," but the kanji 斬 implies "cutting with a sword" and, by extension, in the language of the 侍 (samurai), "to kill."



Gabriel Luque

Shigekatsu: ふん 腹(はら)に赤児(あかご)をもつ女(おんな)なんか斬(き)れるか
humph belly PP baby DOP have woman (emphasis) cut (negative)
Humph! I could never kill a woman with a baby in her belly.

Exercises 練習

1 Translate: "What sort of thing are you thinking about?" (what sort of どんな ; to think 考(かんが)える)

2 Translate: "Put this thing on the table, please." (to put 置(お)く ; on 上(うえ) ; table テーブル)

3 What two "nominalizers" are there in Japanese?

4 Nominalize the clause 彼(かれ)は行(い)く, and use it to replace the ○ in: 私(わたし)は○を命(めい)じた。(彼 he; 行く to go; 私 I; 命じる to command)

5 Translate: "I have never read (I don't have the experience of reading) Tezuka's manga." (to read 読(よ)む ; manga マンガ ; Tezuka 手塚(てづか))

6 What is the difference between 美香(みか)は酒(さけ)を飲(の)んだことがない and 美香(みか)は酒(さけ)を飲(の)むことがない？
(美香 Mika; 酒 sake; 飲む to drink)

7 Translate: "It was decided that I will translate a novel." (I 私(わたし) ; to translate 翻訳(ほんやく)する ; novel 小説(しょうせつ))

8 What is the difference between 美香は酒を飲むことにした and 美香は酒を飲むことになった？

9 Translate: このバッグが欲(ほ)しいんだもん！ What is the nuance of もん？(バッグ handbag; 欲しい to want).

10 Translate: "There's no way I'm going to drink sake!" in four possible ways.

— Answers to all the exercises can be found online by following the link on page 7. —

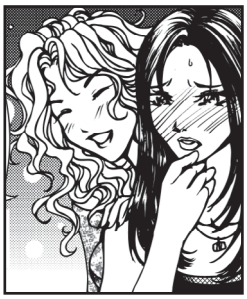
Lesson 58 • 第 58 課

Grammar Scramble

Let's use this lesson to touch on a few useful grammatical constructions that will enhance your everyday Japanese, namely だけ, しか, ばかり, ところ, せい and おかげ.

The expression だけ

だけ means "only" and is simple to use:



- 昨日はコーラだけ(を)飲みました Yesterday I only drank cola.
- 関西といえば、大阪だけ(は)「都会」だと言えるだろう
  Regarding Kansai, only Osaka could be called a "big city."
- 僕にだけ教えてくださいよ Say it only to me, please.
- 毎日、図書館でだけ勉強している Every day, I study only in the library.

だけ comes directly after verbs, nouns *-**i*** adjectives and *-**na*** adjectives, usually in the same position as a grammatical particle. While it can precede を and は, it may also replace them completely. However, it may not replace other particles (に, で, の, へ, etc.), and they will remain in the sentence, preceding or following だけ. The phrase できるだけ means "as much as one can" / "as much as possible."

- できるだけ英語で話してください Speak in Japanese as much as possible.

Xだけで(は)なく、Y(も) means "not only X, but also Y." **Usage:** As for だけ.

- 彼はハンサムなだけでなく、頭がいい He's not only handsome, but intelligent.
- 楽しいだけでなく、役にも立つホームページを作りたい
  I want to create a web page that is not only fun, but also useful.
- 能はおもしろいだけの芸能ではなく、歴史的でもある
  Noh (theater) is not only an interesting performing art, it is also historical.

The expression しか

しか also means "only" but with a different nuance to だけ. While だけ means "only" in a neutral way, しか has a more "negative" nuance, closer to "nothing but." **Usage:** しか is used only after nouns. The verb in the sentence must be in the negative. Regarding particles,

しか completely replaces が and を, and can replace に and へ. The particles で, の, と, から and まで remain in the sentence together with しか.

- こんなことは先生(せんせい)しか知(し)らないと思(おも)う I think the teacher alone knows this.
- 龍彦(たつひこ)はラーメンしか食(た)べない Tatsuhiko only eats / eats nothing but ramen.
- 大学(だいがく)へはバスでしか行(い)けないよ You can only go to university by bus (and by no other means).
- 昨日(きのう)は吉田(よしだ)さんとしか会(あ)わなかった Yesterday, I met nobody but Mr. Yoshida.

The end-of-sentence expression しかない has to be mentioned separately as it has the meaning of "to have no choice but to." **Usage:** It always goes after a verb in the infinitive.

- これから勉強(べんきょう)するしかないな From now on, I have no choice but to study.
- 岡山(おかやま)に行(い)くしかないと思(おも)うよ I think we have no choice but to go to Okayama.

The expression ばかり

ばかり is a multipurpose expression of which we will study five usages. Although its basic meaning is "only," it has a nuance of excess.

ばかり meaning "only": The usage is similar to that of だけ and しか.

- 彼(かれ)はビールばかり飲(の)んでいる He drinks nothing but beer (excessively, I think).
- あの女(おんな)は文句(もんく)ばかり言(い)う That woman does nothing but complain (and she's annoying).
- 図書館(としょかん)でばかり勉強(べんきょう)している I only study in the library (and I study there a lot).

Notice that ばかり replaces the particles は, が and を. The particles へ and に are optionally replaceable, while other particles must go together with ばかり in the sentence.

ばかり meaning "not only, but also": The usage X ばかりで(は)なく、Y (も), is almost the same as X だけで(は)なく、Y (も), which means "not only X, but also Y,"

- 彼(かれ)はハンサムなばかりでなく、頭(あたま)がいい He's not only handsome, he's also intelligent.
- このロックバンドはいい音楽(おんがく)を作るばかりではなく、スタイルもすごい That rock band not only creates good music, it also has great style.

ばかり meaning "do nothing but": Placing ばかり in the middle of a gerund ～ている (Lesson 35), we obtain ～てばかりいる, "to do nothing but," with a negative nuance.

- その時(とき)、母(はは)は泣(な)いてばかりいたよ That time, my mother did nothing but cry.
- 彼女(かのじょ)は食(た)べてばかりいて働(はたら)かない She does nothing but eat and she doesn't work.
- 美根子(みねこ)ちゃん、遊(あそ)んでばかりいると試験(しけん)に落(お)ちるぞ
  Mineko, if you do nothing but play (have fun), you will fail your exams.

ばかり meaning "to have just finished doing": The expression ～たばかりだ, that is, ばかり after a verb conjugated in the past, means "to have just finished doing something."

- 今(いま)、ご飯(はん)を食(た)べたばかりだよ I have just finished eating lunch now.
- 授業(じゅぎょう)が終(お)わったばかりだよ The class has just finished.

ばかり meaning "more or less": After a counter (Lesson 25), ばかり means "more or less" or "about," quite like ぐらい/くらい (Lesson 40), but more formal.

- バナナを１０本(じゅっぽん)ばかりください Give me about 10 bananas, please.
- 彼(かれ)は車(くるま)を３台(さんだい)ばかり持(も)っているかもしれません He might have 3 cars more or less.

🎧 The expression ところ

ところ, like ばかり, is a multipurpose expression.

ところ meaning "place":

- おばのところへ行ってきます I will go visit my aunt (at her place).

ところ meaning "state" or "moment": ところ can mean "state" or "moment" when it modifies a verb, adjective or noun. It goes directly after verbs, ***-na*** and ***-i*** adjectives. With ***a*** noun, it requires の.

- ２人(ふたり)でラブラブしていたら、一番盛(いちばんも)り上(あ)がっているところに母(はは)が部屋(へや)に入(はい)ってきた The two of us were making out when, at the most exciting moment, Mom came into the room.

- お忙(いそが)しいところお邪魔(じゃま)してしまって、本当(ほんとう)にごめんなさい
  Please excuse me for bothering you when you are so busy (in such a busy state).

ところ meaning "just about to do something": Infinitive + ところだ

- 手紙(てがみ)を書(か)くところだ I'm just about to (start writing) write a letter.

ところ meaning "to be in the process of doing something": ～ているところだ

- 手紙(てがみ)を書(か)いているところだ I'm in the middle of writing a letter.

ところ meaning "to have just finished doing something": ～たところだ means "to have just finished doing something." ばかり (page 303) has a similar usage.

- 手紙(てがみ)を書(か)いたところだ I have just finished writing a letter.

🎧 The expressions せい and おかげ

せい or せいで (で is optional) means "because of" with negative nuances. It comes directly after verbs and *-i* adjectives. With *-na* adjectives, it needs な and, with nouns, の.

- 太郎(たろう)のせいで試合(しあい)に負(ま)けた It is because of Taro that we lost the match.
- 友達(ともだち)が死(し)んだのは彼(かれ)のせいだよ It was his fault that my friend died.
- 昨夜(ゆうべ)、あまり眠(ねむ)れなかったせいで、今日(きょう)は仕事(しごと)に集中(しゅうちゅう)できない
  Because I couldn't sleep much last night, today I can't concentrate on my work.

おかげ or おかげで has the opposite meaning, "thanks to." We use it just like せい.

- 太郎(たろう)のおかげで試合(しあい)に勝(か)った Thanks to Taro we won the match.
- 石原(いしはら)さんに数学(すうがく)を教(おし)えてもらったおかげで、高校(こうこう)を卒業(そつぎょう)できた
  Thanks to Ishihara teaching me math, I could graduate from senior high school.

🎧 A couple of conjunctions: ところで and ところが

ところで can be translated as "by the way" or "now then."

- ところで、哲治(てつはる)は来(き)てない？ By the way, hasn't Tetsuharu arrived?

ところが is like けれども (Lesson 49), meaning "but," "however," "nevertheless," etc.

- お母(かあ)さんは東京(とうきょう)では元気(げんき)だった。ところが、尾道(おのみち)に帰(かえ)ると、重病気(おもびょうき)になった Mom felt well in Tokyo. But on going back to Onomichi, she fell seriously ill.

Grammar scramble			
だけ	だけ	Only	私の猫は魚だけ食べる My cat only eats fish.
	だけでなく	Not only X, but also Y . . . (similar to ばかりでなく)	私の猫は魚を食べるだけでなく、 肉も食べる My cat not only eats fish, it also eats meat.
しか	しか+ neg.	Only / Nothing but . . .	私の猫は魚しか食べない My cat eats nothing but / only eats fish.
	Inf. + しかない	To have no choice but . . .	今は魚を食べるしかないね Now, we have no choice but to eat fish, don't we?
ばかり	ばかり	Only (similar to だけ)	私の猫は魚ばかり食べる My cat only eats fish.
	ばかりでなく	Not only X, but also Y . . . (similar to だけでなく)	私の猫は魚を食べるばかりでなく、 肉も食べる My cat not only eats fish, it also eats meat.
	～てばかりいる	To do nothing but X	私の猫は魚を食べてばかりいる My cat does nothing but eat fish.
	Past + ばかりだ	To have just finished doing X (similar to Past + ところだ)	今、食べたばかりです I have just finished eating now.
	ばかり	More or less / about (similar to ぐらい, Lesson 40)	私の猫は毎日、魚を五匹ばかり食べる My cat eats about five fish every day.
ところ	ところ	Place	ここは食べるところです This is the place to eat.
	Inf. + ところだ	To be just about to do X	今、食べるところです I'm just about to start eating now.
	Ger. + ところだ	To be in the process of doing X	今、食べているところです I'm eating now.
	Past + ところだ	To have just finished doing X (similar to Past + ばかりだ)	今、食べたところです I have just finished eating now.
せい	せい（で）	Because of . . .	私の猫は食べすぎたせいで、 太ってしまった Because my cat ate too much, it got fat.
おかげ	おかげ（で）	Thanks to . . .	私の猫は魚を食べるおかげで、 とても元気だ Thanks to the fact that my cat eats fish, he's very healthy.

私 ***watashi*** I; 猫 ***neko*** cat; 魚 ***sakana*** fish; 食べる ***taberu*** to eat; 肉 ***niku*** meat; 今 ***ima*** now; 毎日 ***mainichi*** every day; 匹 ***hiki*** counter for small animals; 太る ***futoru*** to get fat; 元気な ***genki-na*** healthy

漫画例 Manga Examples

So far in this lesson, we have seen a great number of new expressions, some of them very easy to confuse with each other. So there is nothing better than analyzing a few manga examples to get a clearer idea of some of these constructions!

Manga Example 1: Usages of *tokoro*

From the first manga example we can get quite a lot of information, even though this may not seem likely at first glance. The most obvious point to highlight is, of course, ところが, a sentence connector we have just studied (page 305), and which has the meaning of "however." Something less obvious, as it is concealed in its kanji form is 所, the word meaning "place" or "spot," whose synonym is 場所 (***basho***). In fact, 所 and 場所 can be used equally in any sentence without any change in nuance; notice how 所 and the second kanji in 場所 are the same, and they are only pronounced in a different way because of the 音読み ***on'yomi*** and 訓読み ***kun'yomi*** readings (Lesson 3).



J.M. Ken Niimura

Finally, it is worthwhile mentioning that the ほど in the example means "more or less" or "about," like ぐらい/くらい (Lesson 40) and ばかり (page 303): this excerpt could be １０キロぐらい or １０キロばかり. Bear in mind that ほど is perceived as more formal than ぐらい but less so than ばかり. **Note:** The translation of the sentence in this panel has been adapted to sound more "natural." Perhaps a more literal translation, more in keeping with what it really says, will help you understand the meaning better: "However, in this house that is in a place about 10km away from there . . ."

Jun'ichi: ところが そこから１０キロほど離(はな)れた所(ところ)にあるこの家(いえ)では…

however there from 10 km approximately separate place PP be house PP TOP

However, in this house situated about 10km from there . . .

Manga Example 2: *Tokoro* as "state"

Let's continue analyzing the usages of ところ. In this case we have an instance of the usage we saw on page 304: as a verb, adjective or noun modifier with the meaning of "state" or "moment." In the case of 機関車の答えにおかしいところはない, the expression ところ is modifying the ***-i*** adjective おかしい (unusual, strange). A more literal translation of the sentence in the example would be "In the response of the locomotive there is nothing (no state / point) unusual." **Note:** In colloquial registers, the word 所 ***tokoro*** (place) and the expression ところ are usually contracted into とこ, so that this sentence would become 機関車の答えにおかしいとこはない.



Mina: 機関車(きかんしゃ)の答(こたえ)えにおかしいところはないわ 機能(きのう)はすべて完全(かんぜん)よ

***locomotive* POP *answer* PP *unusual place* TOP *there is* EP *function* TOP *all perfect* EP**

There's nothing unusual in the locomotive's response. All its functions are perfect.

Manga Example 3: *Tokoro* for "about to"

Here we have yet another usage of ところ. Be careful with this one, because it is the easiest to confuse, since, depending on the conjugation of the verb preceding ところ, the meaning of the sentence changes.

In the example ジャマするところだった, the verb する is in the infinitive, which indicates the usage shown at the top of page 305 (to be about to do something). Thus, ジャマするところだった means "I was about to intrude." If we had found ジャマしているところだった, that is, with the verb in the gerund, the sentence would have mean "I was in the process of intruding" (page 305). Last of all, if we had found ジャマしたところだった, then its meaning would have been "I had just intruded" (page 305). **Note:** As we saw in Manga Example 5, Lesson 57, sometimes the author takes the license of imposing the reading of some kanji. Here, 他人 (another person) is read ヒト (person, 人).



Naoya: あやうく他人(ヒト)の恋路(こいじ)をジャマするところだった！

dangerously others* POP *romance* DOP *intrusion do (about to) be!

I have been about to intrude in someone else's love life!

Manga Example 4: To have no choice but . . .

After all these ところ expressions, we will move on to look at a different one: しか (nothing but). In this panel we have an example of one of the variations of しか: the end-of-sentence expression しかない. As we saw earlier in the lesson, this expression means "to have no choice but" and its usage merely consists of placing it at the end of a sentence; simple and effective. **Notes:** やっぱり is the colloquial version of やはり, an adverb without direct translation and with the nuance of "I knew it" or "just as I thought," although it has very different usages and its meaning changes depending on the context.



Take the opportunity as well to review the usage of the expression ～てもらう ("to receive a favor," Lesson 45).

Shin'ichi: やっぱり医者(いしゃ)に見(み)てもらうしかないかなァ

after all doctor by see receive (nothing but) EP

After all, I will have no choice but to go and have a doctor see me.

Manga Example 5: An emphatic "only"



The expressions だけ and しか mean "only," and despite both having slightly different nuance and usage, they can be used together emphasize the negative: 山歩きに行くとだけしか言っていない (I have told her nothing but that I was going hiking.). The word order is always だけしか, and the verb must be in the negative. The sentence could be expressed neutrally (with だけ only): 山歩きに行くとだけ言っている (I have only told her that I was going hiking); or with a negative nuance (with しか only): 山歩きに行くとしか言っていない (I've told her nothing but that I was going hiking.)

Man: 妻(つま)にはただ山歩(やまある)きに行(い)くとだけしか言(い)っていない

my wife TOP only mountain walk go SBP only only say

I've told my wife nothing but that I was going hiking.

Manga Example 6: The usage of *bakari*

We will now look at ばかり, an expression with lots of meanings depending on the context, as you saw earlier in the lesson. In this particular panel we have an instance of a very similar usage to that of だけ or しか (meaning "only"), but with a slight nuance of "excess." **Notes:** In the colloquial register, ばかり is usually pronounced ばっかり, and there are some who even use ばかし or ばっかし. Take the opportunity to review the expressions "noun + のこと" (織田さんのこと) and だって ("the thing is") in Lesson 57.



Studio Kōsen

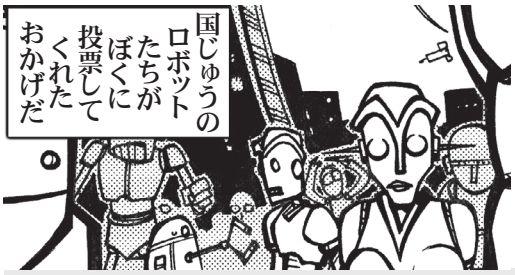
Rena: だって、あなた　いつも織田(おだ)さんのことステキってばかり言(い)ってる

the thing is, you always Oda SUF POP thing adorable SBP only say

The thing is you do nothing but say that Mr. Oda is adorable.

Manga Example 7: Thanks to . . .

Here we have an example of the expression おかげ (thanks to). The 投票してくれたおかげだ part is "Thanks to them voting for me." The opposite is せい, which has the negative meaning of "because of" and lays blame on someone or something. If we change the sentence a little into 投票してくれたせいだ, this acquires the negative nuance of "Because of them voting for me (something bad happened)." Both expressions are very useful and easy to use. **Notes:** We add ～中 (be careful, here it is read じゅう, and not ちゅう as usual) after some words indicating time or place to give them the meaning of "throughout": 国中 ***kunijū*** (throughout the country), 家中 ***iejū*** (throughout the house), 一年中 ***ichinenjū*** (all year round), 冬中 ***fuyujū*** (all winter), etc. The suffix ～たち indicates plural after some nouns: ロボットたち (the robots), 君たち ***kimitachi*** (you, plural), 学生たち ***gakuseitachi*** (the students), 美穂たち ***Mihotachi*** (Miho and friends), etc.



J.M. Ken Niimura

Daneel: 国(くに)じゅうのロボットたちがぼくに投票(とうひょう)してくれたおかげだ

country all POP robots (plural) SP I IOP vote do (favor) thanks be

This is thanks to all the robots in the country voting for me.

Exercises 練習

1 What are the three expressions that convey the meaning "only"? What are their differences in nuance and how do we use them?

2 Translate: "I only read novels." Give two versions, one with だけ and one with しか. (to read 読(よ)む; novel 小説(しょうせつ))

3 Translate: 私(わたし)は女(おんな)が好(す)きなだけではなく、お金(かね)も好(す)きだ。(私 I; 女 woman; 好きな that one likes; お金 money)

4 Translate: 山本(やまもと)くんはゲームをやってばっかりいるぞ。(山本 Yamamoto; ゲームをやる to play videogames)

5 Translate: "I have just turned the TV off." (to turn off 消(け)す; TV テレビ) Give two possible versions.

6 Translate: この映画(えいが)の一番(いちばん)おもしろいとこはどれですか？(映画 movie; 一番 the most; おもしろい interesting, fun)

7 Translate: "Now, I'm just about to watch a movie." (now 今(いま); movie 映画(えいが); to watch 見(み)る)

8 Translate: "Now, I have just seen a movie" and "Now, I'm watching a movie."

9 Translate: "Because my motorcycle broke down, I couldn't go." (motorcycle バイク; 壊(こわ)れる to break down; to go 行(い)く)

10 Translate: ところで、街(まち)じゅうにいた猫(ねこ)たちは大丈夫(だいじょうぶ)ですか？(街 town; 猫 cat; 大丈夫な to be well)

— Answers to all the exercises can be found online by following the link on page 7. —

Lesson 59 • 第 59 課

Dialects and Proverbs

Japanese has hundreds of dialects, among which the Kansai dialect stands out the most. In this lesson we will see the characteristics of the best known dialects.

The Kansai dialect

The region of 関西 ***Kansai***, which has the official name of 近畿 ***Kinki*** is, together with the 関東 ***Kantō*** region around Tokyo, a driving force of the Japanese economy. The most important cities in 関西 are 大阪 ***Ōsaka***, 神戸 ***Kōbe*** and 京都 ***Kyōto***. A very distinct dialect called 関西弁 ***Kansai ben*** (弁means dialect) is spoken in the region, with slight differences from place to place. We will study some 大阪弁 ***Ōsaka ben*** in this lesson.

- 儲かりまっか？ | ぼちぼちでんなぁ Are you making a profit? | Well, more or less.

It is a widely held belief in Japan that this is an everyday greeting and response in 関西. The truth is that it is not used at all nowadays, but you can use it when joking!

- 大阪弁はよう分からんわ！ (大阪弁はよく分からないぞ！) I don't understand the Osaka dialect very well!
- 何や、めっちゃ上手やで、あんた！ (何だ、とても上手だよ、君！) What! You are great at it!

Kansai dialect: Vocabulary

Kansai ben	Standard	Meaning
あほ	ばか	stupid
ええ	いい	good
おおきに	ありがとう	thank you
おもろい	おもしろい	funny
けったいな	変な	odd, peculiar
しゃあない	しょうがない	can't be helped
しんどい	つかれる	tired
ちゃう	違う	you are wrong
なんぼ？	いくら？	how much?
べっぴん	美人	beautiful woman
ほかす	捨てる	to throw
ほな	それじゃ	well, then
ほんま	本当	truth / really
まいど	こんにちは	hello / welcome
えらい	とても	very / much
ごっつい	すごく	very / much
めっちゃ	ちょう〜	very / much

The Osaka dialect has particular intonation, vocabulary (take a look at the table on the facing page) and grammar (see table on page 314). Using や instead of the verb だ and the negative verb ending 〜へん or 〜ん instead of 〜ない are the two most prominent features. There are different end-of-sentence particles, like で instead of よ or ぞ and ねん instead of んだよ. The particle わ, only used by women in standard Japanese, is in 関西弁 used by men with a similar meaning to the standard よ. The Kansai-ben counterpart to the profusely used ね is な at the end of a sentence, with many different nuances, from invitation to surprise.

We will now see a sample conversation. Referring to the vocabulary and grammar tables in this chapter, "translate" it into standard Japanese. You will find the solution in the online **Answers to the Exercises** by following the link on page 7.

- 浩二はん、来られへんかった？ Koji couldn't come?
- はい、ミナミの方で仕事があったさかい Yes (no), he had a job in Nanba.
- 残念やわ！ほな、ビール買うとこか What a pity! Well, shall we buy some beer?
- あかん、あかん！お酒飲めへんわ No, no! I can't drink alcohol!
- ほんまに？なんでやねん？けったいやなぁ！ Really? Why's that? How strange!
- コーラでええで。えらいうまいもん I'm fine with cola. The fact is it's delicious!
- しゃあないなぁ！ほな、おごるわ Well, then! Come on, I'm buying.
- おおきに！なんぼやろ、これ？ Thanks a lot! How much will that be?

Other dialects

Let's look at other Japanese dialects, using this general guide that covers some of the main sub-dialects and variations. We'll use this sentence as our model:

- 彼は毎日、村へ洗濯に行っているよ He goes into town every day to do the laundry.

Tōhoku ben 東北弁: Tohoku covers the north of Honshu. The main cities include 仙台 ***Sendai*** and 秋田***Akita***. 東北弁 is the most different dialect from standard Japanese: ***t*** and ***k*** sounds become ***d*** and ***g*** respectively, and せ is pronounced しぇ. Instead of the direction particles へ and に (Lesson 38), さ is used. The end-of-sentence particle べ is used with a similar meaning to よ.

- 彼は毎日、村さ洗濯に行っでるべ

Kansai dialect: Grammar				
Standard	**Standard example**	***Kansai* ben**	***Kansai ben* example**	**Translation**
だ (verb です)	行かないだろう？	や	行かへんやろう？	You're not going, are you?
～ない	大阪へ行かない	～へん ～ん	大阪へ行かへん 大阪へ行かん	I'm not going to Osaka.
んだよ	彼女はきれいんだよ	ねん	彼女はきれいやねん	She is beautiful (really).
よ/ぞ	彼女はきれいだぞ	で	彼女はきれいやで	She is beautiful (really).
~att~	車を買ったぞ!	***～ō～***	車を買うたで！	I bought a car!
いる	彼女、いる？	おる	彼女、おる？	Is she (here)?
～ていらっしゃる	どこへ行ってらっしゃる？	～はる	どこへ行ってはる？	Where are you going?
～てしまった	車を買ってしまった	～しもた	車を買うてしもた	I bought a car.
さん	香里さんはいない	はん	香里はんはおらん	Kaori is not (here).
から/ので	忙しいから、行かないよ	さかいに	忙しいさかいに、行かへんで	Since I'm busy, I'm not going.
だめ	これを使ってはだめだよ	あかん	これを使こうてはあかんやで	You can't use this.
行く ***iku*** to go; 彼女 ***kanojo*** she; きれいな beautiful; 車 ***kuruma*** car; 買う ***kau*** to buy; 忙しい ***isogashii*** busy; 使う ***tsukau*** to use; 香里 Kaori				

Kyūshū ben 九州弁: Kyushu is the furthest west of the main Japanese islands. Major cities include 福岡 ***Fukuoka*** and 長崎 ***Nagasaki***. This dialect uses な instead of the particle は, and じゃ instead of だ (to be). It also uses ～ちょる instead of the gerund ～ている.

- 彼な毎日、村へ洗濯に行っちょるばい

Okinawa ben 沖縄弁 or ***Okinawa go*** 沖縄語 ***Okinawa go***: Specialists can't agree if what is spoken in Okinawa, in Japan's tropical south, is a separate language or a dialect. Expressions include ***mensooree*** (welcome), ***mata yaasai*** (goodbye), ***nifee deebiru*** (thank you).

Ainu go アイヌ語: The ancient settlers of Japan, the Ainu, have their own language. Nowadays, there are very few Ainu left and most of them live in Hokkaido. Some expressions: ***irankarapte*** (hello), ***apunno paye yan*** (goodbye), ***iyayraykere*** (thank you).

Proverbs

Many Japanese proverbs (ことわざ, or in kanji, 諺) come from ancient China or from Buddhism. The table below lists ten common ones. Here are some examples of daily use:

- 娘さんも医者になりたいそうですね It seems your daughter wants to be a doctor too.
- そうよ。カエルの子はカエルだもんね That's right. "Like mother, like daughter."

In Japanese there are four-character sayings, called 四字熟語 ***yojijukugo***, most of which were borrowed from China many centuries ago. Some have a literal meaning, such as 東西南北 ***tōzainamboku*** (east-west-south-north = in all directions), but many are far from obvious. In the table below you have the ten most frequent 四字熟語. An example of usage:

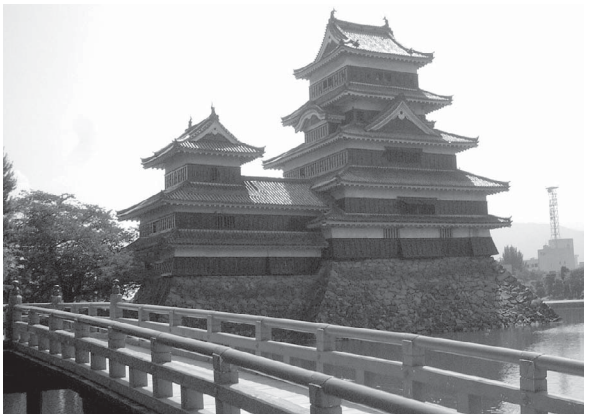
- 臼井さんはチョコレートが嫌いって！ Mr. Usui says he doesn't like chocolate!
- ま、十人十色だよね Well, "so many men, so many minds."

Proverbs and sayings			
ことわざ (諺) **Proverbs**		四字熟語 ***Yoji-jukugo***	
猿も木から落ちる	Even monkeys fall from trees (Nobody is perfect)	一石二鳥	One stone, two birds (To kill two birds with one stone)
カエルの子はカエル	The frog's child is a frog (Like father, like son)	弱肉強食	Weak meat is food for the strong (The law of the jungle)
花より団子	Dumplings rather than blossoms (Bread is better than the songs of birds)	自業自得	One does, one earns (One reaps what one sows)
後の祭り	The day after the festival. (The doctor after death)	自由自在	Freedom-freedom (With perfect freedom)
ウソも方便	A lie is also expedient (White lie)	日常茶飯	Every day, tea and rice (An everyday affair)
郷に入っては郷に従え	When you enter a village, obey the village (When in Rome, do as the Romans do)	十人十色	Ten people, ten colors (So many men, so many minds)
出る釘は打たれる	The nail that sticks out gets hammered (A tall tree catches much wind)	一期一会	One's lifetime, one meeting (A chance in a lifetime)
仏の顔も三度まで	Buddha (gets mad if you touch) his face 3 times (There are limits to one's endurance)	花鳥風月	Flower, bird, wind, moon (The beauties of nature)
鬼のいぬ間に洗濯	To do the laundry while the ogre is out (When the cat's away, the mice will play)	順風満帆	Favorable wind, full sail (Smooth sailing)
能ある鷹は爪を隠す	The clever hawk hides its talons (He who knows most, speaks least)	天下無双	No twin under the heavens (Unique in the world)

Cultural Note: The Language of the Samurai

All languages in the world evolve and, of course, 日本語 ***nihongo*** is not an exception, in fact the Japanese language has evolved at a frenzied pace, proof of which lies in literature. The language has changed so much since the 平安 ***Heian*** period (794–1192), when the ひらがな and カタカナ syllabaries were invented, that there are many (very thick!) 古語辞典 ***kogo jiten*** ancient-language dictionaries.

There are several interesting things about ancient Japanese: for example, there are two kana which are not used nowadays: the hiragana letter ゐ (romanized ***wi***, but pronounced ***i***,) and the katakana letter ヱ (romanized ***we***, but pronounced ***e***). Other changes are that は was read ***wa*** (hence the present pronunciation of the topic particle は), ひ was read ***i***, and を was not only used as direct object particle, but also in words, such as をとこ (男 ***otoko*** "man").


Matsumoto Castle is a great example of samurai architecture (Photo: M. Bernabé)

The type of archaic Japanese you will mostly come across, especially when reading books and マンガ or watching movies and TV series set in the 江戸 ***Edo*** period (1603–1867), will be the dialect used by the 武士 ***bushi***, usually called 侍 ***samurai***. Although the dialect of the ancient 武士 is not radically different from present-day Japanese, you will find some aspects that may surprise or perplex you, such as:

- Usage of first person pronouns (I) such as 拙者(せっしゃ), 某(それがし) or 我(われ).
- Usage of the verbs なり and, especially, でござる instead of です.
- Extensive usage of the honorific suffixes ～様(さま) and ～殿(どの) (e.g., 徳川殿(とくがわどの) Lord Tokugawa).
- Today's negative ～ない was ～ぬ (e.g., 行(い)かない not to go ⇒ 行かぬ).
- Today's ～ないで used to link sentences was ～ず (e.g., 行かないで ⇒ 行かず)
- **An example:** 拙者(せっしゃ)は忍(しの)びの者(もの)でござる I am a fellow of stealth (I'm a 忍者(にんじゃ)).

Finally, some numbers were also written in a different way, for instance, 壱 (***ichi***), 弐 (***ni***), 参 (***san***), 伍 (***go***), 拾 (***jū***). And they are still sometimes used . . . Take a look at the 10,000 yen note: it says 壱万円 ***ichi man en***!

漫画例 Manga Examples

We hope the following manga examples will deepen your understanding of the diversity of Japanese dialects and give a broader idea of what Japanese constitutes.

Manga Example 1: Osaka dialect

This example has someone talking in a dialect of Kansai: Osaka dialect (大阪弁 ***Ōsaka ben***), to be precise. Notice the negative 〜へん (せえへん=しない), the emphatic particle で and the や instead of だ. やせたる is a typical 大阪弁 contraction of やせてやる (Lesson 53). This sentence, in standard Japanese, would be 今からぜったい間食しないよ！ぜったいやせてやるんだ！

大阪弁 is often used by merchants, yakuza and comedians. Why? Osaka has long been known as a city of merchants, where money always comes first (hence the greeting 儲かりまっか？ ***Mōkarimakka?*** you saw on page 312). Certain areas of the city are reputed to be swarming with yakuza and other organized criminals. Osaka is also the capital of 漫才 ***manzai***, a kind of popular stand-up comedy. All these clichés are exploited in novels, comic books, movies and TV series. Mastering some 大阪弁 will help you enjoy all this!



Sakie: もー 今(いま)からぜったい間食(かんしょく)せえへんで！ぜったいやせたるんや

(exclamation) now from swear snack do EP! swear lose weight be

Grrr! From now on, no more snacks! I'm definitely going to lose weight!

Jirō: 何(なん)で関西弁(かんさいべん)になるの？

why Kansai dialect become Q?

Why are you speaking in the Kansai dialect?

Manga Example 2: Kansai dialect for business



This example exploits the "commercial" or even "criminal" aspect of 大阪弁 ***Ōsaka ben***. The man talking is the president of Shiba, a company that has murky dealings with the local mafia.

Here you can see the word あかん (だめ in standard Japanese); the negative ending 〜へん (おまへん is the equivalent of ない, the negative of ある); and the emphatic particle わ, which is used by both men and women in Kansai.

Man: あかん　あかん　シバではそんな高(たか)いもん必要(ひつよう)おまへんわ！

no no Shiba PP TOP as that expensive thing need there is EP!

No way! No! In Shiba we don't need anything as expensive as that!

Manga Example 3: Kyoto dialect

This example shows us a woman speaking in 京都弁 ***Kyōto ben***. As you can see, she uses the negative ending 〜へん, a feature you find all over Kansai, although in Kyoto 〜ひん is sometimes used. Notice, too, the どす, the equivalent of the verb です. Generally, 京都弁 is perceived as soft and melodic. The most typical phrase in this sub-dialect is おいでやす (welcome).



Ai: 今(いま)　私(わたし)が好(す)きなのは島(しま)さんしかいてしまへん　これも真実(しんじつ)どす

now I SP like NOM TOP Shima only there is this too truth be

Now I like nobody but Mr. Shima. This is also true.

Manga Example 4: Does the Hokkaido dialect exist?

The northern Japanese island of 北海道 ***Hokkaidō*** was practically ignored until the beginning of the 明治時代 ***Meiji jidai*** Meiji era (1868–1912), when the repopulation of the island started. Most settlers came from the 関東 ***Kantō*** area (Tokyo and its surroundings), so the language spoken in 北海道 nowadays is similar to standard Japanese. However, over the years, traces of the old 北海道弁 ***Hokkaidō ben*** have permeated 東北弁 ***Tōhoku ben***, for example the emphatic particle べ, or words like こっこ (egg; child) or めんこい (handsome; beautiful).



Kimie: 「シンちゃんのこっこがほしいべぇ…」
"Shin SUF POP egg SP want EP . . ."
"I want a child by Shin . . ."

Manga Example 5: A *yoji-jukugo* proverb



Here is an example of a 四字熟語 ***yojijukugo***, a kind of compact proverb with four kanji, in this case 海千山千, literally "sea-thousand-mountain-thousand." Apparently, this comes from a popular Chinese saying "a snake who lives a thousand years in the sea and a thousand years in the mountain ends up becoming a dragon." 海千山千 is used, then, to describe someone with a lot of experience and wisdom, hardened in all aspects of life; in English we might say a "sly old fox." **Note:** This panel uses an example of the construction "ほど + neg." (Lesson 54) meaning "not as . . . as."

Midori: あたし、若い(わか)女性(じょせい)ってほどでもありませんから　海千山千(うみせんやません)ですから
I, young woman say not so much be as sea-1000-mountain-1000 be because
I'm not what you would call a young woman. I'm a sly old fox.

Manga Example 6: The language of the samurai

Finally, an example of the language of the ancient samurai. Notice the use of the first person pronoun 拙者 and the verb でござる (the modern です), two stereotypical characteristics of what is supposed to be the warriors' ancient dialect. The other social classes in the ancient feudal system of the 士農工商 ***shinōkōshō*** ("warriors-farmers-artisans-tradesmen," by order of importance) did not use the speech patterns of the samurai class, nor could they carry swords. We say that the usage of 拙者 and でござる is stereotypical because there is a tendency to use them in works of fiction. The samurai dialect was actually more complex, but it is now simplified to make its comprehension easier.



Maruo: 拙者(せっしゃ)は今(いま)も昔(むかし)も変(かわ)わらないでござるよ

I TOP now too before too change be EP

I haven't changed, I'm the same now as in the past.

Exercises 練習

1 What is 関西弁 and in which region is it used? What are the main sub-dialects of 関西弁？

2 What is the set answer to the greeting 儲かりまっか What clichés are there about 大阪弁？

3 Translate into standard Japanese and into English:
しんどい仕事はめっちゃ嫌やなぁ。(仕事 work; 嫌 disliked)

4 Translate into standard Japanese and English:
キタは人がごっつい多いさかいに、歩かれへんで。(人 people; 多い many; 歩く to walk)

5 Change this sentence into 大阪弁：
光彦さんがまだいないので、行ってはだめだよ。
(光彦 Mitsuhiko; まだ still; 行く to go)

6 To what dialect does this sentence belong, and what does it mean? 行かへんやろう？

7 What does the following proverb mean?
郷に入っては郷に従え？

8 What is a 四字熟語？What does the expression 一石二鳥 mean?

9 Translate into modern Japanese and English:
某は織田殿のところへ行かぬ。
(織田 Oda; ところ place; 行く to go)

10 Does 北海道弁 exist? If so, could you name its main characteristics?

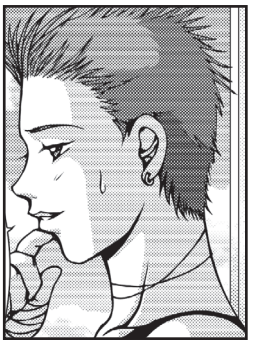
— Answers to all the exercises can be found online by following the link on page 7. —

Lesson 60 • 第 60 課

The Passive and Causative Forms

Welcome to the last lesson in of our two-volume course! We are going to end by taking a look at two of the most complicated constructions in Japanese: passive and causative sentences.

What is the passive verb form?



The passive verb form is used to show the point of view of the recipient of an action. That is, the subject receives the action of the agent, taking no part in performing the action. In the sentence "Paul was fired by the president," we are showing the action from the point of view of Paul (the subject), although he doesn't take part directly in the firing process. The person performing the act of firing is the president (the agent). The table on page 324 shows the conjugation of passive verbs in Japanese. As a general rule for Group 1 verbs, the last る is replaced by られる: 見る ***miru*** (to see) ⇒ 見られる (to be seen). For Group 2 verbs the last ***-u*** is replaced by ***-a***, and we add れる: 抱く ***daku*** (to embrace) ⇒ 抱かれる (to be embraced). Group 3 verbs are irregular.

To make the passive form in English, we might change a sentence as follows: *The woman scolded Meg* ⇒ *Meg was scolded by the woman*. Let's do the same in Japanese:

- あの女性(じょせい)はメグをしかった That woman scolded Meg.
- メグはあの女性(じょせい)にしかられた Meg was scolded by that woman.

As you can see, the process is similar to English, in the way that both place the recipient of the action as the subject. Thus, Meg (the direct object marked with を in the regular sentence), becomes the topic of the passive sentence and is marked with は. The agent (performing the action) is almost always marked with the particle に.

- 警察(けいさつ)は老人(ろうじん)に棒(ぼう)で叩(たた)かれた The policeman was hit with a stick by the old man.
- 洋子(ようこ)ちゃんは彼氏(かれし)にとても愛(あい)されている Yoko is much loved by her boyfriend.

Passive sentences without a specific agent also exist in Japanese:

- このビルは５０年前(ごじゅうねんまえ)に造(つく)られました This building was built fifty years ago.
- この間(あいだ)、あの犯人(はんにん)は投獄(とうごく)にされた The other day, that criminal was jailed.

The construction によって is used instead of the particle に in passive sentences of a "historical" kind, where the action of somebody important is described.

- 「源氏物語」は紫式部によって書かれた *The Tale of Genji* was written by Murasaki Shikibu.
- アメリカはコロンブスによって発見された America was discovered by Columbus.

The "victim" passive

In Japanese the passive form is sometimes used to describe an action that affects the subject and is performed by someone else. Almost always the effect is negative, so this construction is called the "victim passive." For example, in the first sentence the passive indicates that my brother drinking the cola I considered mine affected me in a negative way.

- 私は兄にコーラを飲まれた (Lit: I had my cola drank by my elder brother).
  My elder brother drank (my) cola (and I didn't like that at all).
- (私は)隣の人にタバコを吸われたよ The person next to me smoked (and I don't like it).
- (私は)娘に秘密を知られた My daughter discovered my secret (and I wasn't pleased).
- 百合子は犬に死なれそうだよ Yuriko's dog is about to die.

For Group 1 verbs, the passive conjugation is the same as the potential (Lesson 32) and the the formal ***sonkeigo*** form (Lesson 52). We can usually infer the meaning from the context:

- 社長は窓を閉められた This sentence can be potential (The president could close the window), respectful (The president closed the window), or victim passive (Someone closed the window [and the president didn't like that]).

What is the causative verb form?

The causative is used to express "making" or "letting" someone do something. The table on page 324 shows the conjugations of causative verb forms. As a general rule, for Group 1 verbs, replace the last る with させる. 見る ***miru*** (to see) ⇒ 見させる (to let / make see). For Group 2 verbs, replace the last ***-u*** with ***-a***, and add せる. 抱く ***daku*** (to embrace) ⇒ 抱かせる (to let / make embrace). Group 3 verbs are irregular and must be learned by heart.

	Simple f.	Meaning	Passive	Causative	Causative-passive
Group 1 Invariable	教える	to teach	教えられる	教えさせる	教えさせられる
	見る	to look	見られる	見させる	見させられる
Group 2 Variable	貸す	to lend	貸される	貸させる	貸させられる
	待つ	to wait	待たれる	待たせる	待たせられる
	買う	to buy	買われる	買わせる	買わせられる
	帰る	to return	帰られる	帰らせる	帰らせられる
	書く	to write	書かれる	書かせる	書かせられる
	急ぐ	to hurry	急がれる	急がせる	急がせられる
	遊ぶ	to play	遊ばれる	遊ばせる	遊ばせられる
	飲む	to drink	飲まれる	飲ませる	飲ませられる
	死ぬ	to die	死なれる	死なせる	死なせられる
Group 3 Irregular	する	to do	される	させる	させられる
	来る	to come	来られる	来させる	来させられる

When using the causative to indicate permission, the particle に is usually used to mark the one receiving permission.

- お母さんは子どもにプールへ行かせた The mother let the boy go to the pool.
- 徹は犬に公園でいっぱい走らせた Toru let his dog run a lot in the park.

In a sentence of obligation, the particle を is usually used to mark the person being forced to perform the action.

- 先生は学生たちを走らせた The teacher made the students run.
- 母は私をむりやり勉強させた My mother made me study.

However, if the verb is transitive and the sentence has a direct object marked with を, we use に for the person who is forced or allowed to do something: thus we avoid having two を in the sentence. These sentences are ambiguous and their meaning must be inferred from the context.

- ベロニカは弟にケーキを食べさせた Veronica let my brother eat the cake.
- 母は私にお風呂の掃除をさせた My mother made me clean the bath.

- 私(わたし)は森(もり)さんにメッセジを聞(き)かせた I let / made Mr. Mori listen to the message.
- 社長(しゃちょう)は社員(しゃいん)に酒(さけ)を飲(の)ませた The president let / made his employees drink sake.

The first two sentences are clear, but the latter two are ambiguous, and their meanings must be inferred from the context. **Note:** When an object or an inanimate being takes part in the sentence, を must always be used.

- 僕(ぼく)は車(くるま)を愛媛(えひめ)まで走(はし)らせた I made the car go to Ehime / I drove the car to Ehime.
- 社長(しゃちょう)はあの土地(とち)を遊(あそ)ばせている The president is letting that land lie idle.

The causative form can be combined with ～てください or ～ていただく to form sentences such as "let me do X" and "you let me do X," often used in formal contexts.

- この映画(えいが)を見(み)させてくださいよ Let me watch that movie, please.
- この会社(かいしゃ)を辞(や)めさせていただきたいです I want to leave this company. (Lit. I want to be allowed to leave this company.)

The causative-passive

The causative-passive is used to mean "being forced to do something (that one doesn't like)." That is, the causative is combined with the victim passive. The table on page 324 shows the conjugation of causative-passive verb forms. As a general rule for all verb groups, the last る of the causative form is replaced by られる: 抱く ***daku*** (to embrace) ⇒ 抱かせる (to let / make embrace) ⇒ 抱かせられる (to be made to embrace). Take a look at these examples:

- 学生(がくせい)たちは先生(せんせい)に走(はし)らせられた The students were forced to run by the teacher.
- 私(わたし)は母(はは)にお風呂(ふろ)の掃除(そうじ)をさせられた I was forced to clean the bath by my mother.
- 僕(ぼく)は会社(かいしゃ)を辞(や)めさせられた I was forced to leave the company (I was fired).
- 彼(かれ)は彼女(かのじょ)に告白(こくはく)させられそうだね He seems to feel forced to declare his love to her.

Note: Causative-passive sentences only have the connotation of "obligation," never that of "permission" as in causative sentences.

Other constructions

Let's finish with three new expressions について, ずつ and こそ.

について meaning "about": This expression is the Japanese version of our "about" or "concerning." It is extremely easy to use and, needless to say, very useful in any context or situation. It is worthwhile remembering.

- 日本の歴史について話してください Talk about Japanese history, please.
- あの男について何か知っていますか？ Do you know anything about that man?
- 禅について書くことが大好きです I love writing about Zen Buddhism.
- 彼について言えば、とても親切な人です Concerning him, I'll say he is a very kind person.

ずつ meaning "each": This expression is used to indicate that something is distributed in an equal way (similar to "each" or "X by Y" in English). ずつ can only go after counters (Lesson 25) and some adverbs. Take a look at the examples and you will get a clearer idea:

- オレンジを２個ずつ食べてください Eat two oranges each, please.
- 各家にパソコンが１台ずつあればいいのに It'd be nice if there was a computer in every house.
- 漢字を毎日六つずつ覚えることにした I decided to memorize six kanji a day.
- 俳句が少しずつ上手になってきた Little by little I have improved in (the composition of) haiku.

こそ for emphasis: This expression is quite common in written and spoken Japanese, and is used to emphasize the word preceding it. There is no exact translation in English, so take a look at the example sentences to understand how it works.

- 真理子はきれいだね ｜ 違う、公江こそきれいだよ
  Mariko is beautiful, isn't she? | No, Kimie is the one who is beautiful.
- 今年こそ東大に入るぞ！ This is the year I'll get in to the University of Tokyo!
- 今度こそダイエットしてやせるぞ！ I swear next time, for sure, I'll go on a diet!
- どうもありがとうございました ｜ いいえ、こちらこそ
  Thank you very much. | No, I'm the one (to thank you).

漫画例 Manga Examples

The passive, causative, and causative-passive conjugations are very easy to confuse due to their similarity, as you have probably realized. But don't worry, with practice, you will get used to them. Let's now see a few examples (the last in the book!) to clarify the concepts we have been studying.

Manga Example 1: Victim passive

We start with an example of one of the so called victim passive sentences, a very particular usage of the Japanese passive that you will find quite often. The part we will take into consideration is 自分の名前が歌われる. The verb 歌われる is the passive form of 歌う, (to sing). Remember the rule for the conjugation of verbs in Group 2: the last ***-u*** is replaced with ***-a***, and we add れる. With verbs ending in ***-u***, the conjugation is somewhat special, because, for example, the passive form of 歌う is not 歌あれる, but 歌われる. The same happens with other verbs ending in ***-u***, like 買う ***kau*** (to buy) ⇒ 買われる (to be bought).

The so called "victim" passive is used to indicate an action performed by someone else which affects (negatively most of the time, hence the name "victim") the subject of the sentence. 自分の名前が歌われる, then, would literally mean "my name is sung (and this affects me)." In this specific case, we can't say the effect is a negative one, although the usage of ビックリする (to be surprised) right after, denotes that the fact of hearing his name "being sung" has affected the speaker. **Note:** The usage of the conditional ～たら in トイレに行ったら (when I went to the toilet) is the one we saw on page 285, Lesson 56: to learn or discover something as a result of a certain action ("when," "as a result of," "after").



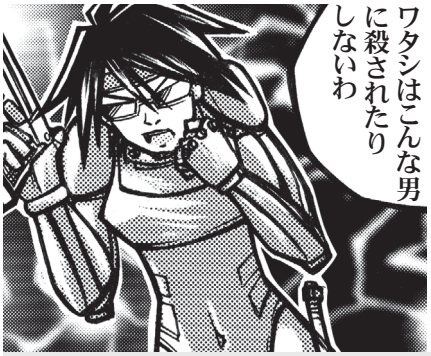
Yama: ちょうどトイレに行(い)ったら自分(じぶん)の名前(なまえ)が歌(うた)われてビックリしましたよ

just toilet DP go (conditional) I POP name SP sing surprise do EP

When I went to the toilet, I heard my name being sung and I was surprised.

Manga Example 2: The passive

In this panel we have an instance of a "normal" passive sentence, where a subject (ワタシ) receives the action (殺す) from an agent (こんな男) without taking part in it. The usage of grammatical particles is noteworthy: the passive subject is marked with the topic particle は or the subject particle が, while the agent is followed by に. The literal translation of this sentence would be "I won't be killed by a man like this," although we propose a more natural translation in English, below. **Note:** There is an example of the usage of 〜たり to make a non-exhaustive list of actions (Lesson 46). 殺されたりしない literally means "I won't be killed (or anything like that)."



J.M. Ken Niimura

Yoshiko: ワタシはこんな男(おとこ)に殺(ころ)されたりしないわ

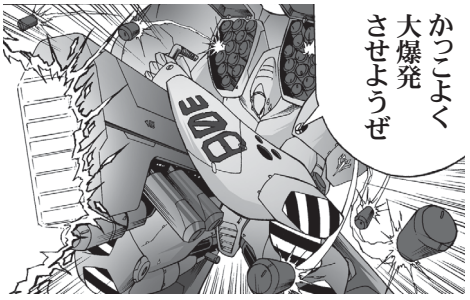
I TOP this kind of man SBP kill or something do EP

A man like him won't kill me.

Manga Example 3: The causative for obligation

Let's see an example of the causative (used to give the idea of "making" or "letting" do something). Here, the verb is 爆発する (to explode.) Since する is an irregular verb, we must learn the conjugation by heart: the causative form of する is させる.

Thus, we have 爆発させる (to make explode), here conjugated in the ***-ō*** form (爆発させよう, Lesson 34), giving the nuance "let's make it explode." Although the sentence doesn't show who or what is receiving the obligation, we will imagine it is a 戦車 ***sensha*** (tank) that, being an inanimate object, must be marked with を. Therefore, we would have 戦車を爆発させよう (Let's make the tank explode.).



Gabriel Luque

Sally: かっこよく爆発(ばくはつ)させようぜ

nice big explosion do EP

Let's blow it to smithereens!

Manga Example 4: The causative for permission

While in the previous panel we saw the causative of "obligation" (the tank is made to explode), we now have an instance of the causative of "permission." The verb here is 出す, a transitive verb (Lesson 44) that means "to take out." The causative form is, then, 出させる (to let take out). 犠牲者を出す has the meaning of "causing victims," therefore 犠牲者を出させない would literally be "not to allow to cause victims." In this case, there is no agent specified but, if there was one, it would be introduced with に, because there can't be two を in the sentence. An example: ジョンに犠牲者を出させない (Not to allow John to cause victims).



Xian Nu Studio

Kishida: もうこれ以上(いじょう)犠牲者(ぎせいしゃ)は出(だ)させない！

any more this more victim TOP take out!

I won't allow there to be any more victims!

Manga Example 5: Causative + *morau*

In formal contexts we often find a combination of the causative with the 〜ていただく or 〜てもらう constructions (Lesson 45). In this case, やらせてもらう comes from やる (to do), which is conjugated in the causative form (やらせる), which in its turn is conjugated in the ***-te*** form (やらせて) so that it can link to もらう. The literal translation of やらせてもらう would be "To receive the favor of being allowed to do." This form, like in the sentence 日光へ行かせていただきたいのです ***Nikkō e ikasete itadakitai no desu*** ("I would like to be allowed to go to Nikko" or "I want to go to Nikko"), is used to make sentences of request or action that sound humble and indirect at the same time.



Xian Nu Studio

Kumasaka: 第一外科(だいいちげか)の熊坂俊介(くまさかしゅんすけ)だ

num. 1 surgery POP Kumasaka Shunsuke be

I'm Shunsuke Kumasaka, from the first section of surgery.

君たち２人(ふたり)の指導医(しどうい)をやらせてもらう事(こと)になっている

you 2 POP supervisor doctor DOP do receive (it has been decided)

I have been appointed as the medical supervisor for both of you.

Manga Example 6: The causative-passive

Let's look at the causative-passive. In the example we have やめさせられた, which comes from the verb 辞める ***yameru*** (to leave a job). To obtain a causative-passive form, we must first conjugate a verb in the causative and then in the passive, for example: 辞める (to leave a job) ⇒ 辞めさせる (causative, to force to leave) ⇒ 辞めさせられる (causative-passive, to be forced to leave). Compare the following sentences:

1. 信夫は千草にお酒を飲ませた ***Nobuo wa Chigusa ni osake o nomaseta.***
   Nobuo made / let Chigusa drink sake
2. 信夫は千草にお酒を飲まれた Nobuo had his sake drunk by Chigusa = Chigusa drank Nobuo's sake (and Nobuo didn't like that)
3. 信夫は千草にお酒を飲ませられた Nobuo was forced by Chigusa to drink sake.



Xian Nu Studio

Jack: やあ伊東先生(いとうせんせい) あなたは病院(びょういん)をやめさせられたんですってね

hey Itō-professor you TOP hospital DOP abandon be say EP

Hi, Dr. Ito. I've been told that you have been forced to leave the hospital . . .

Manga Example 7: The usage of *koso*

And we finally arrive at the last example in the lesson and, by extension, in the course. Here we see an example of the usage of こそ, an adverb used to emphasize the word preceding it. In this case, 今こそ has the meaning of "now is indeed . . ." An example: Imagine you are on a diet, and you can't eat chocolate. You finally reach your ideal weight: this is the moment to say 今こそチョコレートが食べられるぞ! ***Ima koso chokoretto ga taberareru zo!*** (Now, indeed, I can eat chocolate!) **Notes:** ラジコン is the contraction of ラジオコントロール, that is, "device controlled by radio," although the word in Japanese designates "radio-controlled toys." 活躍する ***katsuyaku suru*** is a difficult verb to translate: we could say it indicates "to be active," "to take active part in."



Gabriel Luque

Emika: 今(いま)こそあなたのラジコンがかつやくするときよ

now yes you POP radiocon SP activity do moment EP

Now is indeed the moment to get your models to perform.

Exercises 練習

1 Conjugate the passive form of the verbs 踊る (to dance), 招く (to invite), 食べる (to eat), and 払う (to pay).

2 Translate: "Ken was praised by the teacher." (Ken 健 ; to praise ほめる ; teacher 先生)

3 Translate: 私は里奈に泣かれた。What is the nuance of the passive conjugation here? (私 I; 里奈 Rina; 泣く to cry)

4 Conjugate the causative form of the verbs in question 1.

5 Translate: "The editor made the writer go to a hot spring." (editor 編集者 ; writer 作家 ; to go 行く ; hot spring 温泉)

6 Translate: 先生は俺にマンガを描かせた。 (先生 teacher; 俺 I; マンガ comic book; 描く to draw)

7 Conjugate the causative-passive form of the verbs in question 1.

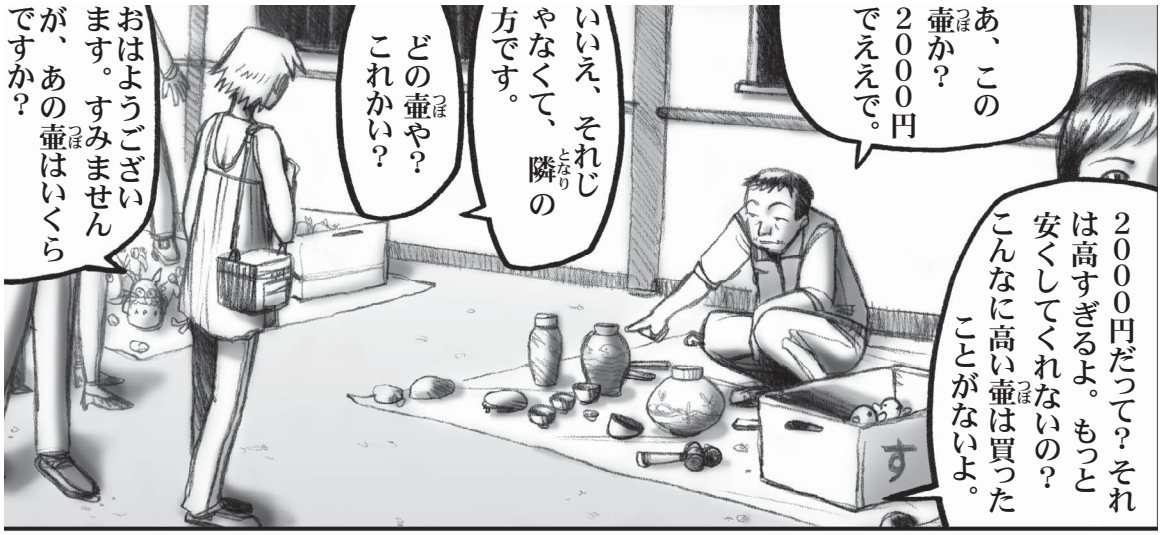
8 Translate the following sentence: 私は彼女に指輪を買わせられた。(私 I; 彼女 she; 指輪 ring; 買う to buy)

9 Translate: 日本について作文を一人ずつ書いてください。(日本 Japan; 作文 composition; 一人 one person; 書く to write)

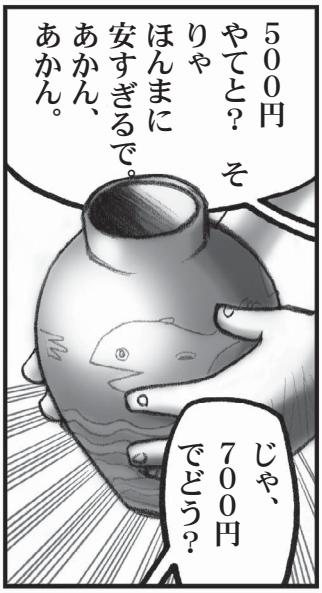
10 Translate: 読者がいたからこそ、この本ができた。 (読者 reader; 本 book)

— Answers to all the exercises can be found online by following the link on page 7. —


KAGE
影
最終日
仲直り
ガシャッ
ポンポン菓子
ガシャッ
ガシャッ
ガシャッ
ガシャッ


2000円だって？それは高すぎるよ。もっと安くしてくれないの？こんなに高い壷は買ったことがないよ。
あ、この壷か？2000円でええで。
いいえ、それじゃなくて、隣の方です。
どの壷や？これかい？
おはようございます。すみませんが、あの壷はいくらですか？


もし、この壷を買うたら、この茶碗もあげるで。1500円でどう？


500円やてと？そりゃほんまに安すぎるで。あかん、あかん。
じゃ、700円でどう？

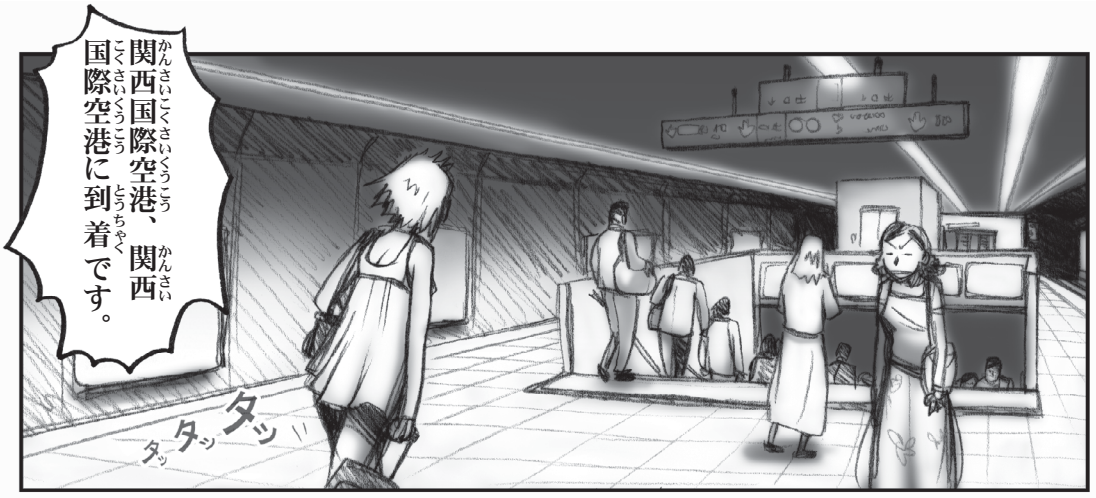

500円。
そうやな…なんぼ払うの、あんた？


ま、「郷に入っては郷に従え」っていうんだもの。


おおきに！しかし、あんた、上手やなぁ、日本語！
それなら、お願いします。


けったいな外人やな、あんた。けどな、こんな茶碗は一つしかあらへんで。もう一つあったけ、ど盗まれたんや。他の茶碗でどう？えらいお得やで!!
茶碗を一つだけでなく、二つ売ってくれれば、考えてみるよ。お母さんとおばあさんのプレゼントになるので、一石二鳥だね。


いらっしゃいませ！
ありがとう。壊れやすいものですね。気をつけます。
壷と茶碗です。
中身は何ですか？
この荷物をスペインまで送りたいのです。
飛行便 船便
あ、大切なことを忘れるところでした！この三枚の絵葉書も送りたいです。
２４００円です。
いいえ、普通の航空便でいいです。いくらですか？
最も早い方法はＥＭＳですが、それはもう少し高くなります。
少し急いでいるので、航空便でお願いします。
航空便と船便がございます。どちらで送ればいいですか？
どうぞ。
絵葉書は80円ずつですから、全部で２６４０円です。
OSAKA


関西国際空港、関西国際空港に到着です。
タッ
タッ
タッ
タッ


はい、元気です！今、関西空港にいるんだけど…
ヌリアさん？谷村です。お元気ですか？


美奈
話通信
りんりん

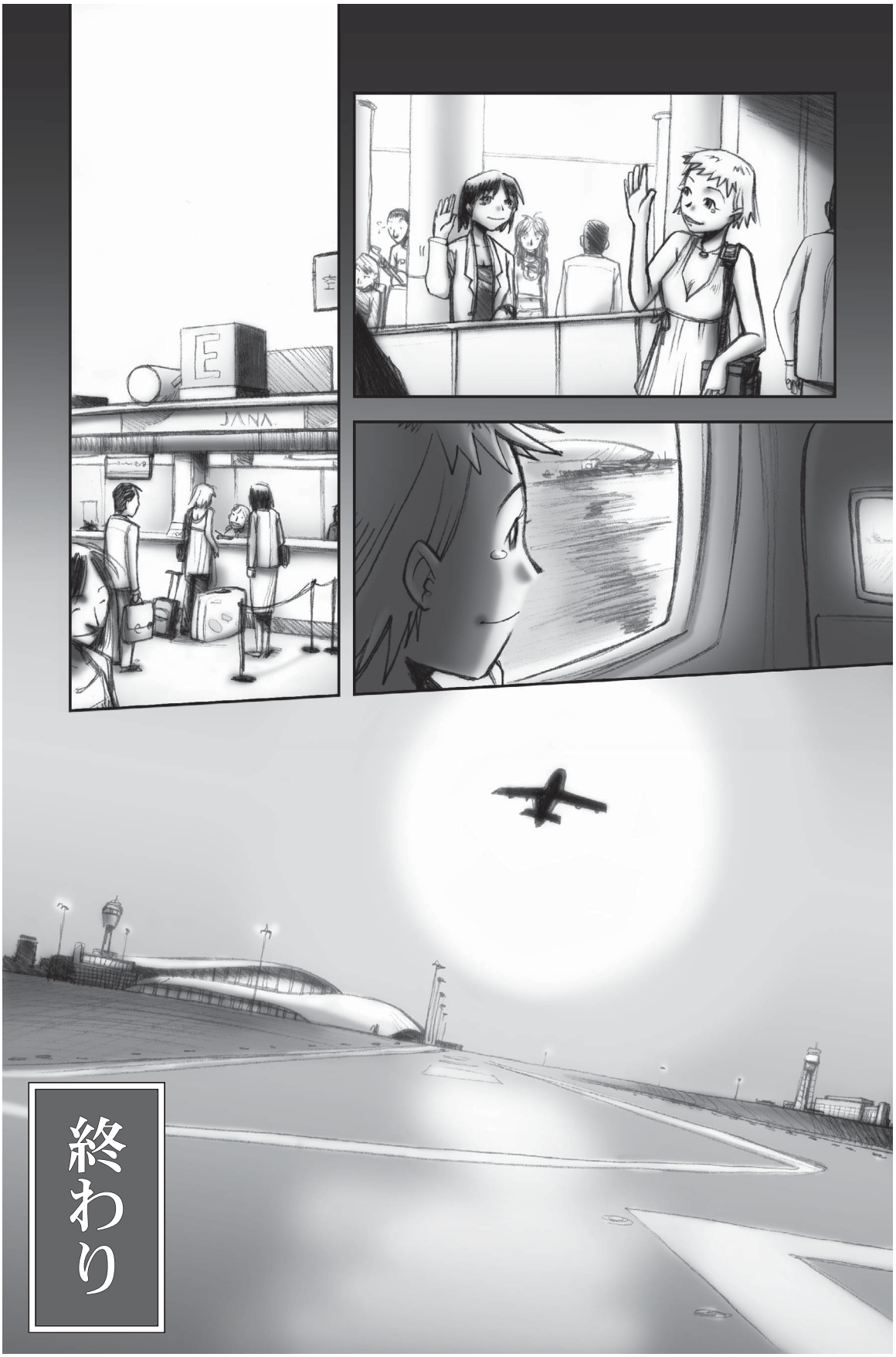

そういえば、美奈にひどいことを言っちゃったな…彼女はいつも優しくしてくれたし、彼女のおかげで東京でいい写真をとれたのに…あたしって、本当にバカだった。帰る前に電話してみようかな…


それじゃ…


はい、行きます！


本当ですか？どこにいるの、今？
三階の喫茶店です。こちらへ来ませんか？
私もですよ。ヌリアさんの荷物がやっと届いたので、持って来しました。


ごめんなさい。
ごめんなさい!!!
この間は、本当にごめんなさい。すごくイライラしていて、美奈さんにひどいことを言っちゃた!
謝らせてください!
今は「影」が怖くないよ!
この間気付かせられたんだ、ある人に!もう問題から逃げずに、向き合うことにした!ありがとう!実は、問題から逃げてばかりいたんだよ、あたし!
いいですよ、本当に。ヌリアさんがイライラしていたことが分かっていましたし、許します。ヌリア さんは私の友達 ですもの!


E
JANA
終わり

Review for Lessons 56–60

Answers to all the review exercises can be found online by following the link on page 7.

🎧 ***KAGE*** – New vocabulary 新しい単語

壷（つぼ）	jar, pot	方法（ほうほう）	method, way
イライラする	to be annoyed		

1. According to what you have read in the sixth episode of ***Kage***, how much does the street vendor first ask Nuria for the object she wants to buy, and how much does Nuria end up paying? Does she only buy the object she has asked about?

2. As you have probably noticed, the vendor at the street market speaks in a Japanese dialect; what region does it belong to, and what is it called?

3. At the post office, how does Nuria choose to mail her package, by airmail or sea mail? Special delivery or standard?

4. In the end, Nuria decides to call Mina. Why?

5. Why is Mina at Kansai airport?

6. Where in the airport is Mina? Does she go to meet Nuria, or is it the other way around?

7. In Nuria's conversation with the market vendor, there are two conditional sentences. Find them and give their translation into English.

8. Translate the following sentences from the text of ***Kage***, which have several idiomatic uses of the conditional.

a) どちらで送ればいいですか？ _____

b) そう言えば、美奈（みな）にひどいことを言ったね _____

c) 三階（がい）にある喫茶店（きっさてん）です。来ませんか？ _____

9. Translate these sentences, which differ only in the conjugation of the verb.

a) パソコンが壊(こわ)れるところだった _____

b) パソコンが壊れているところだった _____

c) パソコンが壊れたところだった _____

10. Change the following sentences from ***Kage*** into polite Japanese (***-masu*** form).

a) なんぼ払(はら)うの、あんた？

_____.

b) そりゃほんまに安すぎるで。あかん、あかん。

_____.

c) こんな茶碗(ちゃわん)は一つしかおらへんで。

_____.

11. The verbs 謝(あやま)らせてください and 気付(きづ)かせられる appear in the text. In what form has each verb been conjugated? Give the translation of both sentences.

12. A proverb and a ***yoji-jukugo*** appear in the text. Find them and explain their meanings in English.

13. Translate the following sentences written in Kansai dialect into standard Japanese, as in the example.

a) あしたは京都(きょうと)で買い物をするんやで！
あしたは京都(きょうと)で買い物をするんだぞ！。

b) これをほかすなよ！なんぼやと思っとるんや？

_____。

c) たこ焼(や)きを食べへんか？ほんまに？

_____。

d) ミナミへ行ったんやけど、けったいな外人に会ってしもたわ！

_____。

e) あのべっぴんはほんまにやばいで！話したらあかんで！

_____。

f) まいど、元気かい？ところで、この間買うてくれたバッグ、大好きやねん！

_____。

g) 今日はしんどかったなぁ...ええ仕事をできへんかったし...

_____。

h) 青木さんはおらへんわ。「買い物をしてくる」って言いはったんや。

_____。

14. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences with the most appropriate 四字熟語 from the box below. (Watch out, two of them cannot be used!)

a) A: 彼はいつも女性に失礼だね。お尻に触ったりするし...

B: そうだけど、この間ミホちゃんに殴られたよ。_____だよ！

b) A: ミサエさんは納豆が大好きで、チョコレートが嫌いって。信じられない！

B: ま、_____だもんね。

c) A: 彼は金持ちの女と結婚したし、会社でえらくなったし、ポルシェも買ったし...

B: そうだね、彼の人生は_____みたいだね。

d) A: マンガが好きで、翻訳することも大好きだよ、オレ。

B: そうだよね！じゃ、マンガの翻訳家になれて、_____だったね！

一石二鳥　一期一会　十人十色　順風満帆　自由自在　自業自得

15. Choose the most suitable answer for each sentence.

a) 「＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿」というのは夏用の着物のような服ですね。

1. Tシャツ　2. 動物　3. 浴衣　4. 下駄

b) ハハハ！日本語の先生が間違えたよ！「緊張している」と言いたかったのに、「浣腸している」と言ってしまったよ！「＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿」んだよね！

1. ウソも方便　2. 猿も木から落ちる 3. 鬼のいぬ間に洗濯　4. 花より団子

c) 彼はドイツ語が話せないのに、よくドイツへ＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿しようとしているね。

1. 見学　2. 留学　3. 数学　4. 大学

d) 私は辛い料理が好きだから、＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿をたくさん入れてください。

1. こしょう　2. だし　3. きゅうり　4. ごま

e) 下着をはいたまま、＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿って無理だよ、アホ！

1. ナンパする　2. びびる　3. むかつく　4. エッチする

f) 遅くまで遊んだので＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿に間に合わなかった。タクシーで帰るしかなかった。

1. 駅　2. 運賃　3. 終電　4. 始発

g) A: 川内さんはあまりかっこよくないけど、すごい美人と結婚したよね。

B: そうだね、「＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿」というのは本当だろうね。

1. 出る釘は打たれる　2. 後の祭り 3. 能ある鷹は爪を隠す　4. 花より団子

h) 日本の夏はすごく暑いので、ホテルの部屋に＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿がないとだめだね。

1. 冷房　2. たんす　3. 暖房　4. 鍵

i) マドリッドのプラド美術館へ行けば、レンブラントの＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿が見られるぞ。

1. 写真　2. 歌　3. 浮世絵　4. 絵画

j) この手紙を早く届けさせたかったら、＿＿＿＿＿で送った方がいいよ。
1. 速達　2. 郵便局　3. ポスト　4. 書留

k) 日本人はよく「＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿」というスープを飲みますね。
1. 醤油　2. サラダ　3. あんこ　4. 味噌汁

l)「ありがとう」というのは関西弁で＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿と言います。
1. おおきに　2. サンキュー　3. ありごう　4. まいど

16. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences, choosing from だけ , しか or ばかり .

a) 昨日のパーティーに来たのは黒沢＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿だったよ。
b) あいつは歌を歌って＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿で、何も仕事をしないんだよ！
c) 彼は日本語が上手な＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿でなく、中国語も上手だ。
d) 今、お風呂に入った＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿だから、家を出られないよ。
e) この間、ＤＶＤを５枚＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿買ってしまいました。
f) 昨日のパーティには黒沢先生＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿来ませんでしたよ。
g) クラスの中で、オレ＿＿＿＿＿＿がポルシェを持っているよ！ハハハ！
h) お母さんに呼ばれたから、今は家に帰る＿＿＿＿＿＿ないね。ごめん！
i) あいつは授業中に寝て＿＿＿＿＿いるよね！本当にだめなやつだなぁ！

17. This conversation is out of order. Rewrite it in the correct order.

1) それほどでもありませんよ . . . 上手になったかもしれないけど、関西弁はまだですよ。
2)「郷に入っては郷に従え」ってどういう意味ですか？
3) こんにちは！お元気ですか、おばさん？
4) そうですね。普通の日本語と大阪弁を両方習えて、一石二鳥ですものね！
5) 関西弁を習った方がええで！「郷に入っては郷に従え」やもん！
6) 大阪に来たなら、大阪の話し方を習わなあかんという意味やわ。
7) ハハハ！ほんまや！よう言ったな、あんた！ほな、大阪弁、がんばりや！

8) はい、元気やで。あんた、日本語が上手(じょうず)になったなぁ、外人さんやのに！

外国人：＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿

おばさん：＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿

外国人：＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿

おばさん：＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿

外国人：＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿

おばさん：＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿

外国人：＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿

おばさん：＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿

18. Complete this dialogue with the words from the box on page 344, bearing in mind that seven of the words in the box cannot be used.

Minako: マリーさん、こんにちは。何を (1) ＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿ いるの？

Marie: あ、美奈子(みなこ)ちゃん、こんにちは。これは (2) ＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿ だよ。

Minako: 手紙(てがみ)に使うために？たくさんの手紙(てがみ)を書くの？

Marie: そうじゃないよ、これは (3) ＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿ だけだよ。

Minako: あ、そうか？私は派手(はで)な服を買うことが大好き。同(おな)じようなことなの？

Marie: はい、そうだね。ところで、何をしにきたの？

Minako: ちょっと (4) ＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿ なので、どこかへ行きたい。一緒(いっしょ)に行こうよ！

Marie: 私？すみません、今はかなり (5) ＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿ ので、出来ないよ。

Minako: 残念(ざんねん)だね！じゃ、あたし一人で行くわ。

Marie: どこへ行くの？渋谷(しぶや)？

Minako: うん、渋谷(しぶや)！ (6) ＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿ に乗(の)っていくつもりよ。

Marie: じゃ、ここから３０分 (7) ＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿ かかるよね。

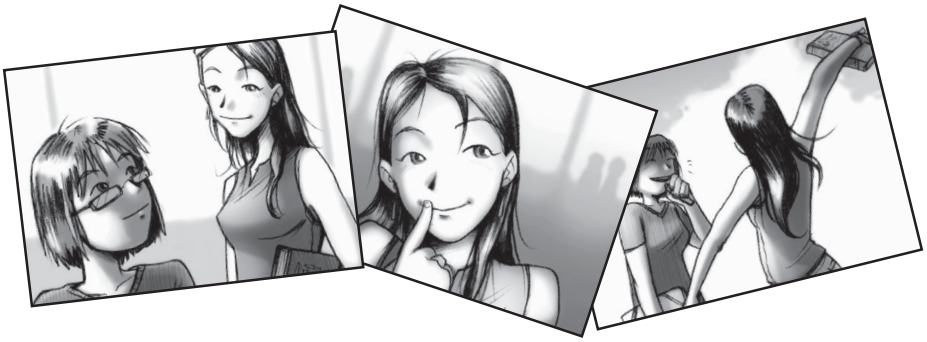
Minako: うん！で、渋谷(しぶや)でかっこいい男に (8) ＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿ されちゃおう！

Marie: ええ？かっこいい男の人がいるの？

Minako: そうよ！たくさんいるよ！マリーさんも来れば！？

Marie: じゃ...かっこいい男がいるなら、あたしも行くわ！

Minako: よし！二人で渋谷(しぶや)へＧＯ(ゴー)！



忙(いそが)しい	えんぴつ	趣味(しゅみ)	切手(きって)	飛行機(ひこうき)	暇(ひま)	集(あつ)めて	悲(かな)しい
集(あつ)まって	つまらない		やや	ナンパ	電車	ぐらい	チャリ

19. Complete the following table as in the example.

食(た)べる	食べれば	食べたら	食べさせる	食べられる	食べさせられる
動く					
転(ころ)ぶ					
行(い)く					
死(し)ぬ					
走る					
洗(あら)う					
持(も)つ					
来る					
落(お)とす					
教(おし)える					
飛(と)ぶ					
住(す)む					

20. Combine the two sentences, using the conditional form indicated in the brackets.

a) あした、彼(かれ)は行かない。僕(ぼく)らも行かない。(～ば)
あした、彼(かれ)が行かなければ、僕(ぼく)らも行かない＿＿＿＿＿。

b) このラーメンはおいしい。お姉さんにも食べてもらいたい。(～たら)

＿＿＿＿＿

22. As in the example, write the verb in parentheses in the past tense of the given form (except f, which goes in the infinitive). Also, translate the resulting sentence.

a) あの家は有名な漫画家(まんがか)に(買う passive) 買われた。

That house was bought by a famous manga artist。

b) 彼女(かのじょ)は子どもにボールを(取(と)る causative) _____。

_____。

c) この映画は小津安二郎監督(おづやすじろうかんとく)によって(作る passive) _____。

_____。

d) 私は彼女(かのじょ)に２時間も(待つ passive) _____。

_____。

e) あの家に行けば、掃除(そうじ)を(する caus-pas) _____ので、行きたくない。

_____。

f) あの人はかわいそうな犬(いぬ)を何時間も(走る causative) _____。

_____。

g) オレは彼女(かのじょ)に高いプレゼントを(買う causative-passive) _____。

_____。

h) 冷蔵庫(れいぞうこ)にあった私の牛乳(ぎゅうにゅう)が全部(ぜんぶ)(飲む passive) _____。

_____。

23. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences with こと or もの, as appropriate.

a) 昨日(きのう)、スーパーマーケットへ行って、いろいろな_____を買いました。

b) 私はアクション映画を見る_____はあまり好きじゃない。

c) 無理(むり)だ！あなたと結婚(けっこん)する_____ですか！

d) 彼は富士山(ふじさん)に登(のぼ)った_____があるらしいよ。

e) すみませんが、来週からアメリカへ行く_____になりました。

f) A: どうして宿題(しゅくだい)をしなかったの？ | B: だって、難(むずか)しいんだ_____！

g) はじめまして。私は諸星(もろぼし)アタルという_____です。

h) あしたからダイエットをする_____にしたよ、あたし。

i) 彼女(かのじょ)は掃除(そうじ)をする_____がある。

24. Conjugate the verb into its infinitive, gerund, or past form, as appropriate.

a) このりんごはおいしそうだね。今_____ところだった。(食べる)

b) このりんごはおいしい！今、_____ところだから、分かる。(食べる)

c) このりんごはおいしかった！今、_____ところだ。(食べる)

d) 今、マンガを_____ところだ。５０ページぐらい読みましたけど、まだ１５０ページぐらい残(のこ)っている。終わったら、行くね。(読む)

e) A: ジョンさん、いる？ | B: 今、_____ところなので、いないよ。(出る)

f) うぉっ、やばいな！うんこを_____ところだった！(踏(ふ)む)(うんこ : poop)

g) A: 宿題(しゅくだい)、終わった？ | B: いいえ、まだだ。今、_____ところだ。(やる)

25. Correct the mistakes in the following sentences.

a) 彼(かれ)は日本語しか出来るよ。

b) あの人にバイクを運転(うんてん)することを教えば、すぐ覚(おぼ)えると思いますよ。

c) 本田(ほんだ)さんは新しい本を書くものにしました。

d) おじいさんは君(きみ)のおかげで死んだよ！許(ゆる)せない！

e) 私はお父さんに田舎(いなか)に住(す)めらせされた。

f) マサコさんはお金がないのに、高いものを買ってだけいるよ！

26. Choose the most suitable answer for each sentence.

a) ここにえんぴつやペンや紙がある。一つ＿＿＿＿＿＿取ってください。

1. もの　2. ところ　3. こそ　4. ずつ

b) 先生、お忙しい＿＿＿＿＿＿を邪魔して、すみません。今、少し時間がありますか？

1. もの　2. こと　3. ところ　4. もし

c) 彼はスペイン語を先生に＿＿＿＿＿＿ので、今、彼はスペイン語が出来る。

1. 教えられた　2. 教えさせた　3. 教えさせられた　4. 教えれば

d) アフリカへ行きたい＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿、航空券を買ってください。

1. ければ　2. なら　3. ったら　4. と

e) アフリカへ行きた＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿、航空券を買ってください。

1. ければ　2. なら　3. ったら　4. と

f) アフリカへ行きたか＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿、航空券を買ってください。

1. ければ　2. なら　3. ったら　4. と

g) ＿＿＿＿＿＿、パーティーに誰もいなければ、映画館へ行きますか？

1. すると　2. もし　3. こそ　4. ところに

h) 先生の＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿、試験に合格した。ありがとう、先生！

1. おかげで　2. ところ　3. せいで　4. ところで

i) この本は１００年前に＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿。

1. 書かせられた　2. 書きられた　3. 書かれた　4. 書かせた

j) このボタンを押す＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿、窓が開くんだ。

1. ければ　2. なら　3. ったら　4. と

k) 彼はロック＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿聞かないね。

1. しかだけ　2. だけ　3. だけしか　4. しかし

l) A: なんで怒っているの？ | B: だって、自転車が＿＿＿＿＿＿んだもん！

1. 盗められた　2. 盗みられた　3. 盗まれた　4. 盗れた

m) 君はいい学生だから＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿、この練習帳を全部終わることができたよ！

1. こそ　2. ぐらい　3. ばかり　4. ずつ

Kanji

試 (209)	験 (210)	問 (213)	題 (214)	答 (215)	回 (221)	転 (222)	族 (236)	親 (237)	主 (238)	住 (239)
考 (240)	死 (241)	別 (242)	計 (243)	英 (197)	集 (245)	歌 (246)	切 (248)	去 (249)	運 (253)	建 (256)

27. Link each kanji with its ***kun'yomi*** reading.

住	はか(る)	集	かんが(える)
試	き(る)	運	あつ(まる)
切	おも	問	と(う)
計	さ(る)	考	た(てる)
主	す(む)	建	はこ(ぶ)
去	こころ(みる)	答	こた(える)

28. Choose the correct kanji or kanji combination for each reading.

a) きょねん、サチコさんはごしゅじんにえいごを教えていました。

きょねん：1. 去年　2. 法年　3. 年去　4. 年法

しゅじん：1. 住人　2. 王人　3. 主人　4. 玉人

えいご：1. 映語　2. 英語　3. 央語　4. 瑛語

b)「ししょく」という言葉は「ためし」に何かを食べること」という意味です。

ししょく：1. 式食　2. 試食　3. 式飲　4. 試飲

ためし：1. 試し　2. 式し　3. 試めし　4. 式めし

c) このしつもんのせいとうは何ですか？

しつもん：1. 質問　2. 質間　3. 貸問　4. 貸間

せいとう：1. 止合　2. 正合　3. 正答　4. 止答

d) この荷物（にもつ）はここに書いているじゅうしょにうんそうしなければならない。

じゅうしょ：1. 主所　2. 玉所　3. 王所　4. 住所

うんそう：1. 蓮逆　2. 運逆　3. 蓮送　4. 運送

e) このもんだいはとくべつにやさしくしますね！

もんだい：1. 門題　2. 問題　3. 間題　4. 閉題

とくべつ：1. 特別　2. 持別　3. 待別　4. 侍別

29. Choose the correct reading for each kanji combination.

a) その時計とあの自転車は英国で作られた物でございます。

時計：1. ときけい　2. とけい　3. じけい　4. とうけい

自転車：1. じてんしゃ　2. じどうしゃ　3. してんしゃ　4. しどうしゃ

英国：1. えいぐに　2. えいごく　3. えいこく　4. えいくに

b) ヒデオくんの父親と一緒に回転寿司（ずし）の店へ行きました。

父親：1. ちちおや　2. ふしん　3. ちちしん　4. ふおや

回転：1. がいでん　2. かいてん　3. がいてん　4. かいでん

c) あなた！運動のために郵便局（ゆうびんきょく）まで歩いて切手を買ってきてくださいね。

運動：1. うんど　2. れんどう　3. うんどう　4. れんど

切手：1. せっしゅ　2. きりしゅ　3. せって　4. きって

d) 来週、考古学の集会があるので、たくさん勉強しなければなりません。

考古学：1. ここがく　2. ここうがく　3. こうこがく　4. こうこうがく

集会：1. しゅかい　2. しゅうかい　3. じゅかい　4. じゅうかい

30. Write the kanji for the given ***furigana***.

a) ＿＿＿＿＿＿のために勉強に＿＿＿＿＿＿＿＿しなければならない。
（し けん／しゅう ちゅう）

b) 昨日（きのう）、あの有名な＿＿＿＿＿＿は＿＿＿＿にました。
（か しゅ／し）

c) この＿＿＿＿＿＿にはマサオさんのご＿＿＿＿＿＿が＿＿＿んでいる。
（たて もの／か ぞく／す）

d) あの＿＿＿＿＿はかわいそうだ...＿＿＿＿＿＿ばかりあるんだよね...
（おや こ／もん だい）

e) この車は、＿＿＿＿＿に物を＿＿＿＿＿ぶのに使われている。
（おも／はこ）

f) おねがい！＿＿＿＿＿＿の＿＿＿＿＿を＿＿＿＿＿ってくださいよ！
（えい ご／うた／うた）

31. There are some mistakes in these words, either in the kanji or in the matching hiragana. Can you correct them?

試めす　ためす	別れる　かわれる	親友　おやとも
休験　たいけん	考思　しこう	運行　うんこ
話題　だいわ	口転　かいてん	住食　しゅしょく

"Books to Span the East and West"

Tuttle Publishing was founded in 1832 in the small New England town of Rutland, Vermont [USA]. Our core values remain as strong today as they were then—to publish best-in-class books which bring people together one page at a time. In 1948, we established a publishing outpost in Japan—and Tuttle is now a leader in publishing English-language books about the arts, languages and cultures of Asia. The world has become a much smaller place today and Asia's economic and cultural influence has grown. Yet the need for meaningful dialogue and information about this diverse region has never been greater. Over the past seven decades, Tuttle has published thousands of books on subjects ranging from martial arts and paper crafts to language learning and literature—and our talented authors, illustrators, designers and photographers have won many prestigious awards. We welcome you to explore the wealth of information available on Asia at **www.tuttlepublishing.com**.

Published by Tuttle Publishing, an imprint of Periplus Editions (HK) Ltd.

www.tuttlepublishing.com

Originally published as JAPONÉS EN VIÑETAS: VOLUMES 2 and 3
Copyright © 2023 by Marc Bernabé / Represented by NORMA Editorial S.A. Translation rights arranged by Sandra Bruna Agencia Literaria SL.

All rights reserved, including the right to reproduce this book or portions thereof in any form without the written permission of the publisher. All rights reserved.

Library of Congress Control Number: 2022940733

ISBN 978-4-8053-1694-8
ISBN 978-1-4629-2338-0 ebk, 1(2301IN)
First edition, 2023

26 25 24 23 5 4 3 2 1

Printed in Singapore 2301MP

TUTTLE PUBLISHING® is a registered trademark of Tuttle Publishing, a division of Periplus Editions (HK) Ltd.

Distributed by

North America, Latin America & Europe
Tuttle Publishing
364 Innovation Drive
North Clarendon,
VT 05759-9436 U.S.A.
Tel: 1 (802) 773-8930
Fax: 1 (802) 773-6993
info@tuttlepublishing.com
www.tuttlepublishing.com

Japan
Tuttle Publishing
Yaekari Building, 3rd Floor,
5-4-12 Osaki, Shinagawa-ku,
Tokyo 141 0032
Tel: (81) 3 5437-017
Fax: (81) 3 5437-0755
sales@tuttle.co.jp
www.tuttle.co.jp

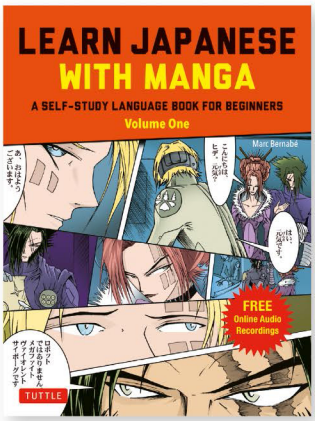
Asia Pacific
Berkeley Books Pte. Ltd.
3 Kallang Sector #04-01
Singapore 349278
Tel: (65) 6741-2178
Fax: (65) 6741-2179
inquiries@periplus.com.sg
www.tuttlepublishing.com

LEARN TO READ, WRITE AND SPEAK EVERYDAY JAPANESE WITH MANGA COMIC STRIPS!

In *Learn Japanese with Manga*, the language lessons are interwoven with an entertaining manga story, which makes it easy to learn and remember the key vocabulary and grammar. You can achieve fluency in speaking, reading and writing Japanese very quickly this way! This second volume of a two-volume course is aimed at post-elementary-level students, or those who have already studied *Learn Japanese with Manga Volume 1*.

- **Designed for self-study use by adult learners**
- **Develop fluency in hiragana and katakana plus 260 basic kanji**
- **Teaches you the vocabulary and sentences needed to communicate in Japanese!**
- **Includes hundreds of exercises and audio recordings by Japanese native speakers**
- **Comes complete with online answer keys, dictionary, and glossaries**
- **A comprehensive course of study in two volumes**

MARC BERNABÉ, the author of the two-volume course *Learn Japanese with Manga*, is a manga and anime translator who teaches Japanese language and etiquette courses for non-Japanese. He is the co-founder of the manga- and anime-specialized translation agency Daruma Serveis Lingüístics SL and the Japan culture center Espai Daruma. He has also published several Japan-related books.



TUTTLE

www.tuttlepublishing.com

Printed in Singapore